

710.6
P. 3. 13

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

A
GRAMMAR
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE:

For the Use of Schools and Colleges.

WITH EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES

BY

WM. BINGHAM, A.M.

SUPERINTENDENT OF THE BINGHAM SCHOOL.

AUTHOR OF

BINGHAM'S LATIN READER, BINGHAM'S CÆSAR, BINGHAM'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR, ETC.



PUBLISHED BY E. H. BUTLER & CO.

1871.

760
B 613

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by

WILLIAM BINGHAM,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Pamlico
District of North Carolina.

35628

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1870, by

WILLIAM BINGHAM,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Pamlico
District of North Carolina.



CAXTON PRESS OF
SHERMAN & CO., PHILADELPHIA.

PA2087
B63
1871
MAIN

P R E F A C E

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

IN preparing the accompanying work, it has been the aim of the author to supply what he has felt in his own experience to be a great desideratum,—a *practical first book in Latin*, simple enough for beginners, and yet full enough for more advanced students. Free use has been made of the works of the best German, English, and American authors, and no pains has been spared to produce a book adapted to the wants of our youth.

It will be observed that the paradigms have been syllabicated with reference to the English method of pronunciation; but the teacher can without difficulty use either the Roman or the Continental method.

Madvig's system of gender in the third declension has been adopted, as the most philosophical and the shortest, all the rules and exceptions occupying but two pages; and, though teachers will find it inconvenient to have old associations broken up, the author is convinced that a

fair trial will satisfy all that this system is the best. The gender of nouns is purposely omitted in the vocabularies, to compel the pupil to apply the rules, which will be found to cover all cases.

The exercises have been taken, for the most part, from classical authors, and are so arranged as to constitute a continual review of what precedes. Those teachers who prefer the synthetic method of instruction, to the exclusion of the analytic, can omit the exercises, as the work is complete without them.

Many facts of the language, which the pupil will readily find out for himself, have been omitted; also a number which properly pertain to the subject of Latin prose composition, on which subject the author proposes to prepare a work for the use of schools.

In revising for a second edition, great care has been taken to remedy all defects discovered in the practical working of the book as at first presented to the public; and the author commends it to teachers with the hope that they will find it a valuable auxiliary in their noble work of developing mind.

BINGHAM SCHOOL, MEBANEVILLE, N.C.

October 30, 1866.

CONTENTS.

ETYMOLOGY.

	PAGE		PAGE
LETTERS.....	9	Irregular Nouns, Third Decl....	55
DIPHTHONGS	10	Summary of Rules of Gender..	57
PRONUNCIATION	10	Masculines.....	57
SYLLABLES.....	10	Feminines.....	58
EXPLANATION OF MARKS.....	11	Neuters.....	59
QUANTITY, ACCENT.....	11	Peculiar Case-Endings.....	59
DIVISION OF WORDS	12	Fourth Declension.....	64
NOUNS.....	12	Fifth Declension.....	67
Gender	13	Variable Nouns.....	69
General Rules.....	13	Heterogeneous Nouns.....	69
Number	14	Heteroclites.....	70
Case	14	Defective Nouns.....	70
Person.....	14	ADJECTIVES.....	75
Inflection	15	Adjectives of First and Second	
First Declension.....	15	Declension	75
Second Declension.....	25	Adjectives of Third Declension..	80
Stems in <i>ēr</i>	28	Numeral Adjectives.....	85
Dative Case	23	Cardinals.....	86
Ablative Case	31	Ordinals, Distributives, and Ad-	
Third Declension	32	verbs.....	88
Class I.....	34	Comparison of Adjectives	93
Class II.....	37	Formation of Comparative and	
Class III.....	41	Superlative.....	94
Class IV.....	43	Irregular Comparison	98
Class V.....	45	Defective Comparison.....	100
Masculine Forms	45	PRONOUNS	105
Neuter Forms	47	Substantive Personal Pronouns..	106
Class VI.....	48	Adjective Personal, or Possessive,	
Masculine Forms.....	49	Pronouns.....	109
Feminine Forms.....	51	Demonstrative Pronouns.....	112
Neuter Forms.....	53	<i>Is, Idem</i>	114
		<i>Hic, Iste, Ille</i>	116

	PAGE		PAGE
Intensive Pronoun.....	118	Irregular Verbs.....	174
Relative Pronouns.....	121	Defective Verbs.....	184
Interrogatives.....	124	Impersonal Verbs.....	187
Indefinites	127	Endings of	187
Correlatives.....	130	PARTICLES.....	189
VERBS.....	19, 133	Adverbs	189
Moods.....	19, 134	Comparison of Adverbs.....	193
Tenses	20, 61, 134	Prepositions	193
Voices.....	136	Prepositions in Composition ..	195
Persons and Numbers	136	Conjunctions.....	197
The Indefinite Verb.....	137	Copulative.....	197
Conjugation.....	138	Disjunctive	198
Conjugation of <i>Esse</i>	139	Adversative	199
First Conjugation.....	20, 141	Causal	200
Second Conjugation.....	71, 149	Conclusive.....	201
Third Conjugation.....	102, 154	Final	202
Fourth Conjugation.....	102, 159	Conditional	202
Table of Endings	164	Concessive	202
Verbs in <i>io</i> of the Third Conju-		Temporal.....	202
gation.....	167	Comparative.....	202
The Passive Construction.....	169	Interjections.....	203
Deponent Verbs.....	170		

SYNTAX.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE	203	Dative of Purpose or End.....	221
AGREEMENT	204	Dative of the Agent.....	222
APPOSITION.....	206	Dativus Ethicus	222
ADJECTIVES.....	207	ACCUSATIVE CASE.....	225
RELATIVES.....	209	Direct-Object.....	225
NOMINATIVE CASE.....	210	Accusative of Time and Space ..	227
GENITIVE CASE.....	211	Accusative of Place whither.....	227
Genitive of Quality.....	212	Accusative of Limitation	228
Genitive of Property	212	VOCATIVE CASE.....	231
Partitive Genitive	212	ABLATIVE CASE.....	231
Objective Genitive with Adjec-		Ablative of Cause, etc.....	231
tives and Verbs.....	213	Ablative of Limitation.....	233
Genitive of Crime.....	214	Ablative of Price.....	233
Genitive of Price.....	215	Ablative of Separation.....	233
DATIVE CASE.....	220	Ablative of Quality.....	233
Dative of Indirect Object.....	220	Ablative of Comparison.....	234
Dative of Advantage or Disad-		Ablative of Place where.....	235
vantage	220	Ablative of Time when.....	235
Dative of Reference.....	221	Ablative of Difference.....	236
Dative of Possession	221	Ablative with Prepositions.....	236
		THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.....	241

	PAGE		PAGE
THE INDEFINITE VERB.....	242	INFINITIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	255
Infinitive.....	242	CAUSAL PROPOSITIONS.....	259
Subject Infinitive.....	242	FINAL PROPOSITIONS.....	262
Complementary Infinitive.....	242	CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS.....	269
Historical Infinitive.....	243	CONCESSIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	272
Gerund and Gerundive.....	243	COMPARATIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	274
Supine.....	245	TEMPORAL PROPOSITIONS.....	276
PROPOSITIONS, SYNTAX OF.....	248	RELATIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	281
THE MOODS.....	249	INTERROGATIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	286
TENSES.....	250	ORATIO OBLIQUA.....	289
Succession of Tenses.....	250		
PARTICIPIAL PROPOSITIONS.....	251		
Ablative Absolute.....	252		

APPENDICES.

I.—GREEK NOUNS OF THE FIRST DE- CLENSION.....	292	VII.—THE VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.....	304
II.—GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.....	292	First Conjugation.....	304
III.—GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DE- CLENSION.....	293	Second Conjugation.....	305
IV.—DERIVATION OF NOUNS.....	293	Third Conjugation.....	308
Denominative Nouns.....	294	Inceptive Verbs.....	313
Abstract Nouns.....	294	Deponent Verbs, Third Conju- gation.....	315
Verbal Nouns.....	294	Fourth Conjugation.....	315
DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.....	295	Deponent Verbs, Fourth Conju- gation.....	316
Denominative Adjectives.....	296	VIII.—ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.....	317
Verbal Adjectives.....	296	IX.—PROSODY.....	318
DERIVATION OF VERBS.....	297	Quantity.....	318
V.—ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATION....	298	Increments.....	321
Personal Endings.....	299	Singular Increments.....	321
Mood-Signs.....	299	Plural Increments.....	322
Tense-Signs.....	300	Increment of Verbs.....	322
Parts on the Present-Stem... 300, 302		Penults.....	323
Parts on the Perfect-Stem... 301, 302		Antepenults.....	326
VI.—PECULIARITIES OF TENSE-FORM- ATION.....	303	Final Syllables.....	326
Tenses formed on the Present- Stem.....	303	Monosyllables.....	326
Tenses formed on the Perfect- Stem.....	303	Polysyllables.....	326
Compound Verbs.....	304	Versification.....	328
		Metre and Verses.....	329
		Figures of Prosody.....	330
		Rhythm.....	331

PROSODY (continued).	PAGE		PAGE
Dactylic Metre.....	332	Stanzas	339
Anapæstic Metre.....	334	Horatian Metres	339
Iambic Metre.....	334	Metrical Key to the Odes of	
Trochaic Metre.....	336	Horace.....	341
Choriambic Metre.....	337	X.—FIGURES	342
Ionic Metre.....	338	Figures of Etymology.....	342
Compound Metres.....	338	Figures of Syntax.....	343
		XI.—MODELS OF ANALYSIS.....	345

VOCABULARIES.

LATIN-ENGLISH	345	ENGLISH-LATIN	372
---------------------	-----	---------------------	-----



LATIN GRAMMAR.

§ 1. LATIN GRAMMAR is the science of the Latin language. It treats of the words of the language, and of the laws by which they are combined into sentences.

It is divided into Etymology and Syntax.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 2. Etymology treats—1. Of the letters which make up words, and their pronunciation; 2. Of the changes which words undergo; 3. Of their derivation.

LETTERS.

§ 3. A letter is a mark used to represent a sound of the human voice.

In the Latin alphabet there are twenty-five letters. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

Remark.—I and J were originally the same letter; so also were U and V. K, Y, and Z are used only in words derived from the Greek. H is a breathing. The Romans used only the capital letters.

§ 4. Letters are divided into vowels and consonants. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, y.

Of the consonants, { four are liquids, l, m, n, r;
 { three are c sounds, c, g, q;
 { four are p sounds, p, b, f, v;
 { two are t sounds, t, d;
 { two are double consonants, x, z.

DIPHTHONGS.

§ 5. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one sound. The diphthongs are ae, oe (often written together, æ, œ), ai, au, ei, eu, oi.

PRONUNCIATION.

§ 6. *Continental Method.*

Short <i>a</i> , as in <i>hat</i> .	Long <i>o</i> , as in <i>no</i> .
Long <i>a</i> , as in <i>father</i> .	<i>u</i> , as <i>o</i> in <i>do</i> .
Short <i>e</i> , as in <i>met</i> .	æ and œ, as <i>a</i> in <i>made</i> .
Long <i>e</i> , as <i>a</i> in <i>made</i> .	<i>au</i> , as <i>ou</i> in <i>our</i> .
Short <i>i</i> , as in <i>sit</i> .	<i>eu</i> , as in <i>feud</i> .
Long <i>i</i> , as in <i>machine</i> .	<i>ei</i> , as <i>i</i> in <i>ice</i> .
Short <i>o</i> , as in <i>not</i> .	

§ 7. *English Method.*

The letters are pronounced as in English.

Exc. 1. Final *a* has the broad sound, as in *ah*. Other final vowels have the long sound.

Exc. 2. *Es* final is pronounced like the English *ease*.

Exc. 3. *Os* final in plural cases is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*.

Exc. 4. *C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs æ, œ, and *eu*. Otherwise it has the sound of *k*.

Exc. 5. *Ch* has the sound of *k*.

Exc. 6. *G* has the sound of *j* before *e*, *i*, *y*, æ, and œ.

SYLLABLES.

§ 8. There are no silent vowels in Latin; but every

word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: as, *ma-re*.

A word of one syllable is called a *monosyllable*; a word of two syllables, a *dissyllable*; a word of more than two, a *polysyllable*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the third from the last, the *antepenult*.

EXPLANATION OF MARKS.

§ 9. The marks of punctuation are the *comma* (,), used to mark the shortest pause; the *semicolon* (;), used to mark a pause twice as long as the comma; the *colon* (:), used to mark a pause three times as long as the comma; the *period* (.), used to mark the longest pause; the *interrogation point* (?), which shows that a question is asked; and the *exclamation point* (!), used to mark expressions of surprise, grief, &c.

The marks of quantity are (—) to indicate a long vowel; (˘) to indicate a short vowel; and (≡) to indicate that a vowel is sometimes long and sometimes short.

The *diæresis* (¨) shows that the vowel over which it is placed does not form a diphthong with the vowel before it: as, *aër*.

The *circumflex* (^) marks a contracted syllable: as, *quīs* for *quibus*.

QUANTITY, ACCENT.

§ 10. *Rule 1*.—All diphthongs are long.

Rule 2.—A vowel before another vowel is short: as, *dě-us*, *lě-o*.

Rule 3.—A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long by position: as, *o* in *propter*; *a* in *axis*.

Rule 4.—Dissyllables are accented on the penult: as, *dě-us*.

Rule 5.—Polysyllables are accented—

(a) on the penult if the penult is long: as, le-ō-nis ;

(b) on the antepenult if the penult is short: as, dōm-
ŷ-nus.

DIVISION OF WORDS.

§ 11. I. Words are divided according to their *formation* into—

1. *Primitive*; i.e. not derived from other words: as, *man*, *king*.

2. *Derivative*; i.e. derived from other words: as, *manly*, *kingdom*.

3. *Simple*; i.e. not made up of other words: as, *man*.

4. *Compound*; i.e. made up of other words: as, *man-kind*.

II. Words are divided according to their *meaning* into eight classes, called parts of speech: viz. the *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, *Interjection*.

NOUNS.

§ 12. 1. A noun is the name of a thing: as, *man*, *city*.

NOTE.—A *thing* is whatever one can *think* of. (*Thing*,—*think*; *rēs*,—*reōr*.)

2. A *common* noun is the name of any one of a class of things: as, *man*, *city*.

3. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual thing: as, *Cæsar*, *Rome*.

4. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, being, or mode of action or being: as, *goodness*, *running*, *sickness*.

5. A *material* noun is the name of a substance or material: as, *gold, iron, water*.

6. A *collective* noun is a common noun which in the singular denotes more than one: as, *multitude*.

GENDER, NUMBER, CASE, PERSON.

§ 13. 1. To nouns belong *gender, number, case, and person*.

Gender.

2. Gender means kind, or class. As used by grammarians, it denotes the kind or class of a noun with reference to the sex of the thing the noun denotes.

3. *Natural gender* is determined by sex: thus, the names of males are *naturally* masculine.

4. *Grammatical gender* is determined, not by sex, but by declension and termination: thus, *mensa*, a table, is feminine (though it is the name of a thing without life), because it is of the first declension.

5. *General Rules of Gender.*

Rule 1.—Names of *male beings*, and of most *rivers, winds, months, mountains, and nations*, are masculine.

Rule 2.—Names of *female beings, cities, countries, trees, plants, islands, ships, and gems*, are feminine.

Rule 3.—Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine are neuter.

Rule 4.—Some nouns are either masculine or feminine. These, if they are names of living beings, are said to be of the *common* gender; if of things without life, of the *doubtful* gender.

Number.

§ 14. *Number* is the variation of form which shows whether one thing is meant, or more than one.

The *singular* number is the form which denotes one thing: as, *stell-a*, a star; the *plural* is the form which denotes more than one: as, *stell-æ*, stars.

Case.

§ 15. *Case* is the variation of form which shows the relation of the noun to other words.

Latin nouns have six cases: viz.

(a) The *nominative*, which answers the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of.

(b) The *genitive*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *of*, or the possessive case: as, *umbra*, the shade (*of what?*), *sylvæ*, of the forest.

(c) The *dative*, which denotes that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to* which, any thing is, or is done.

(d) The *accusative*, which is the object of a transitive verb, or of certain prepositions.

(e) The *vocative*, which is used when a person is addressed.

(f) The *ablative*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*.

Person.

§ 16. *Person* means the character which a noun or a pronoun has, according as it represents the *speaker*, the person *spoken to*, or the thing *spoken of*.

A noun or a pronoun representing the *speaker* is of the

first person: as, *I, Darius, make a decree*. Here “*I*” and “*Darius*” are of the first person.

A noun or a pronoun representing the person *spoken to* is of the second person: as, *Do you hear me, Robert?* Here “*you*” and “*Robert*” are of the second person.

Remark.—Things without life are sometimes addressed, and are then said to be *personified*, or treated as persons.

A noun or a pronoun representing the thing spoken of is of the third person: as, *John runs, water freezes*. Here “*John*” and “*water*” are of the third person.

INFLECTION.

§ 17. The changes which words undergo to express their different relations are called inflection.

The inflection of nouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the genitive singular.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 18. Latin nouns which have *æ* in the genitive singular are of the first declension. The terminations

are—	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom	ă,	æ,
Gen.	æ,	ărŭm,
Dat.	æ,	īs,
Acc.	ăm,	ās,
Voc.	ă,	æ,
Abl.	ă;	īs.

By adding these terminations to the stem *mens*-, which means *a table*, we have the following

PARADIGM.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>men'-să, a table.</i>	<i>men'-sæ, tables.</i>	
Gen.	<i>men'-sæ, of a table.</i>	<i>men-să'-rŭm, of tables.</i>	
Dat.	<i>men'-sæ, to or for a table.</i>	<i>men'-sīs, to or for tables.</i>	
Acc.	<i>men'-săm, a table.</i>	<i>men'-sās, tables.</i>	
Voc.	<i>men'-să, O table!</i>	<i>men'-sæ, O tables!</i>	
Abl.	<i>men'-să, with, from, in, by a table.</i>	<i>men'-sīs, with, from, in, by tables.</i>	

Remark 1.—The Latin has no article: therefore *mensa* may be rendered *a table*, or *the table*, according to the connection.

Remark 2.—An old genitive in *ăi* sometimes occurs.

Remark 3.—The noun *fămiliă* has *fămiliās* in the genitive after *păter*, *măter*, *filiŭs*, and *filiă*: as, *păterfămiliās*, the father of a family.

Remark 4.—A contracted genitive plural in *um* is sometimes found, especially in words of Greek origin.

Remark 5.—*Deă*, a goddess, *equă*, a mare, *filiă*, a daughter, and *mălă*, a she-mule, have sometimes *ăbŭs* in the dative and ablative plural.

Rule of Gender.—Latin nouns of the first declension are feminine.

Exc. 1. Names of male beings, rivers, and mountains are masculine by the general rule (§ 13); but a few names of rivers and mountains are feminine.

Exc. 2. *Hadriă*, the Adriatic Sea, is masculine; *dămă*, a fallow deer, and *talpă*, a mole, are common.

For Greek nouns of first declension, see Appendix I.

EXERCISE I.

§ 19. Like *mensa* decline the following nouns, and commit to memory their meanings.

* In all paradigms the accented syllable is italicized.

ăquîlă,	eagle.	ëpistolă,	letter.
ăquă,	water.	naută,*	sailor.
côlumbă,	dove.	insulă,	island.
côrônă,	crown.	lună,	moon.
ără,	altar.	mădicină,	medicine.
agricolă,*	farmer.	poetă,	poet.
ălă,	wing.	răgină,	queen.
ancillă,	maid-servant.	fugă,	flight.
injuriă,	injury.	plumă,	feather.
Belgă,	a Belgian.	filiă,	daughter.

Translate into English.

Côlumbæ. Côrônărûm. Arîs. Răginăm. Fîliabûs.
Injuriîs. Belgărûm. Fugă. Alîs. Ancillæ. Ancillîs.
Injuriârûm. Côlumbîs.

Translate into Latin.

Of water. For the farmer. Of the maid-servants.
To the farmers. By wings. Of feathers. To sailors.
The letter. By the letters. In the island. Of islands.
Of the moon.

EXERCISE II.

§ 20. *Rule of Syntax.*—A noun in the genitive limits the meaning of another noun denoting a different thing.

Thus, *pluma* means *a feather, any feather*; but when the genitive *columbæ* is added, the application of *pluma* is *limited or confined* to the dove: *columbæ pluma* means *a dove's feather*, and no other sort. Observe that the feather and the dove are different things.

Rule of Position.—The emphatic word, whether limiting or limited, stands first. Thus, *filiă răginæ*, the *daughter* (not the son) of the queen; *răginæ filiă*, the *queen's* (not the king's) daughter.

* See § 18, Exc. 1.

Translate into English.

Cölobmæ plūmā. Cölobmārūm plūmæ. Cölobmæ ālīs.
Filiā agricōlæ. Agricōlæ filiā. Agricōlārūm filiābūs.
Rēginārūm cōrōnæ. Cōrōnæ rēginārūm. Nautæ ĕpistolā.
Injūriā poētæ. Insulā Belgārūm. Fūgā ancillæ. Ancil-
lārūm fūgā.

Translate into Latin.

(Emphatic words are in italics.)

In the island of the Belgians. For the altars of the Belgians. A *sailor's* letter. The *queen's* letter. By the *flight* of the farmer. The flight of the farmer's doves. The injury of the queen's maid-servants. O daughters of the queen's maid-servants! The water of the island.

EXERCISE III.

Subject and Predicate. Partial Conjugation of Verbs.

§ 21. I. A *proposition* is a thought expressed in words: as, *snow melts*.

A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition; a *compound sentence* consists of several propositions combined.

1. Every proposition consists of—

- (a) A *Predicate*; i.e. that which is *declared*;
- (b) A *Subject*; i.e. that of which the declaration is made.

In the proposition "*snow melts*," the predicate is "*melts*," because "*melts*" is what is declared or asserted about "*snow*," the subject is "*snow*," because it is the thing about which the declaration is made. What *melts*? *snow*.

2. The *Predicate* consists of a verb alone (as, *melts* in the above example), or the verb *to be* with a noun, adjective, or participle: as, *snow is cold*.

3. The *Subject* consists of a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking the question *who?* or *what?* with the predicate: as, *John runs.* (*Who runs? John.*) *To play is pleasant.* (*What is pleasant? To play.*)

4. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have other words limiting its meaning: as, *boys run; some boys run fast.*

II. A verb is a word which declares or affirms something.

1. Verbs have—

(a) *Moods*, or different forms which express different kinds of affirmation.

(b) *Tenses*, or different forms to show the *time* when the thing declared takes place, and whether the action is complete or incomplete.

(c) *Voices*, or different forms which show whether the subject acts (as, *John strikes*) or is acted upon (as, *John is struck*).

(d) *Persons* and *Numbers*, or different forms which correspond to the person and number of the subject.

2. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the *stem* is called *Conjugation*.

III. 1. The *Infinitive* expresses the action of the verb *simply*, without limiting it to any subject: as, *ām-ārě, to love.*

2. The *Indicative* mood declares a thing as a fact, or asks a question: as, *āmāt, he loves; āmat-ně? does he love?*

TENSES.

IV. 1. The *Present* tense expresses incomplete action in present time: as, *āmo*, *I love*, *I am loving*.

2. The *Imperfect* tense expresses incomplete action in past time: as, *āmābām*, *I was loving*.

3. The *Future* tense expresses incomplete action in future time: as, *āmābo*, *I will love*, *I will be loving*.

CONJUGATIONS.

V. 1. There are four Conjugations, distinguished from one another by the termination of the Infinitive Present Active. The Infinitive Present Active of the First Conjugation ends in *-ārě*.

Rule.—To find the stem of a verb, strike off the *Infinitive ending*.

ACTIVE TERMINATIONS.*

INFINITIVE, *ā'-rě*.

INDICATIVE.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
	<i>Singular.</i>		
1st Person,	ō,	<i>ā'-bām</i> ,	<i>ā'-bō</i> ,
2d “	ās,	<i>ā'-bās</i> ,	<i>ā'-bīs</i> ,
3d “	āt;	<i>ā'-bāt</i> ;	<i>ā'-bīt</i> ;
	<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Person,	<i>ā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>ā-bā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>āb'-ī-mūs</i> ,
2d “	<i>ā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>ā-bā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>āb'-ī-tīs</i> ,
3d “	<i>ānt</i> .	<i>ā'-bant</i> .	<i>ā'-bunt</i> .

* Accented syllables are italicized.

By adding these terminations to the stem *ām-* of *āmāre*, to love, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, *ā-mā'-rě*, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ā'-mō</i> ,	<i>I love, or am loving,</i>
<i>ā'-mās</i> ,	<i>thou lovest, or art loving,</i>
<i>ā'-māt</i> ,	<i>he loves, or is loving,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> <i>ā-mā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>we love, or are loving,</i>
<i>ā-mā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>ye or you love, or are loving,</i>
<i>ā'-mant</i> ,	<i>they love, or are loving.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ā-mā'-bām</i> ,	<i>I was loving,</i>
<i>ā-mā'-bās</i> ,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
<i>ā-mā'-bāt</i> ,	<i>he was loving,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> <i>ām-ā-bā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>we were loving,</i>
<i>ām-ā-bā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>ye or you were loving,</i>
<i>ā-mā'-bant</i> ,	<i>they were loving.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ā-mā'-bō</i> ,	<i>I shall love,</i>
<i>ā-mā'-bīs</i> ,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
<i>ā-mā'-bīt</i> ,	<i>he will love,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> <i>ā-māb'-ī-mūs</i> ,	<i>we shall love,</i>
<i>ā-māb'-ī-tīs</i> ,	<i>ye or you will love,</i>
<i>ā-mā'-bunt</i> ,	<i>they will love.</i>

(The *principal parts* of a verb are the indicative present, the infinitive present, the indicative present-perfect, and the supine. These will be given in the vocabularies, thus :

āmō, āmāre, āmāvī, āmātūm, to love.)

Form the present, imperfect, and future indicative of

völ-o,	völ-ärë,	völ-āvī,	völ-ātüm,	<i>to fly.</i>
salt-o,	salt-ärë,	salt-āvī,	salt-ātüm,	<i>to dance.</i>
cant-o,	cant-ärë,	cant-āvī,	cant-ātüm,	<i>to sing.</i>
dēlect-o,	dēlect-ärë,	dēlect-āvī,	dēlect-ātüm,	<i>to delight.</i>
pär-o,	pär-ärë,	pär-āvī,	pär-ātüm,	<i>to prepare.</i>
laud-o,	laud-ärë,	laud-āvī,	laud-ātüm,	<i>to praise.</i>
vöc-o,	vöc-ärë,	vöc-āvī,	vöc-ātüm,	<i>to call.</i>
occüp-o,	occüp-ärë,	occüp-āvī,	occüp-ātüm,	<i>to seize.</i>
arm-o,	arm-ärë,	arm-āvī,	arm-ātüm,	<i>to arm.</i>
ædific-o,	ædific-ärë,	ædific-āvī,	ædific-ātüm,	<i>to build.</i>

EXERCISE IV.

1. A *Transitive* verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense: as, *poetă rēgînăm laudăt*, the poet praises the queen.

2. An *Intransitive* verb is one which does not require an object to complete the sense: as, *ăquilă völäť*, the eagle flies.

3. *Rule of Syntax*.—The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.

4. *Rule of Syntax*.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. (*Rēgînăm*, above, is the *direct object* of *laudăt*; i.e. the thing to which the praising is directed.)

5. *Rule of Syntax*.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

6. *Rule of Position*.—The subject usually stands at the beginning of the sentence.

7. *Rule of Position*.—The direct object precedes the verb.

8. To *analyze* a sentence is to separate it into its parts and show their relation to each other.

9. To *analyze* or parse a word is to tell its properties, and its relation to other words.

ANALYSIS OF THE SENTENCE.

Poētā rēgīnām laudāt.

(*Suggestions to the Learner.*—We look first for the predicate, which must be a verb (see § 21, 2); and we find *laud-āt*, which we see by the ending *-āt* is indicative-present active, third person singular, of *laudārē*, to praise. We now look for the subject, which, as we have learned, must be a noun in the nominative (§ 21, 3; and Rule 3, above); and we find by the ending *-ā* that *poētā* is in the nominative. Hence, we translate *poētā laudāt*, *the poet praises*. *Rēgīnām*, as the ending *-ām* shows, must be in the accusative singular; so we take it as the direct object of *laudāt*, and translate the sentence, “*The poet praises the queen.*”)

This is a simple sentence, because it consists of but one proposition.

The predicate is *laudāt*, because it is that which is *declared* or asserted about the poet.

The subject is *poētā*, because it is that of which the *praising* is *declared*. (Who praises? The poet.)

The predicate is limited by *rēgīnām*, the direct object (*i.e.* the thing upon which the praising is *directly exerted*).

ANALYSIS OF THE WORDS.

Poētā is a common noun, masculine, first declension (here decline it), found in the nominative singular, subject of *laudāt*. Rule, *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative*. (Here let the teacher ask, “Why called a noun? Why a common noun? Why masculine? Why of the first declension? Why accented on the penult?” &c.)

Rēgīnām is a common noun, feminine, first declension (here decline it), found in the accusative singular, direct object of *laudāt*. Rule, *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative*.

Laudāt is a verb, transitive, first conjugation, *laudo*, *laudārē*, *laudāvī*, *laudātūm*, found in the Indicative-Present active, third person singular (here inflect the tense), agreeing with *poētā* as its subject. Rule, *The verb agrees with its subject in number and person*. (Here let the teacher ask, “Why called a verb? Why transitive? Why of first conjugation? Why indicative?” &c.)

Translate into English.

§ 22. Agrīcōlā poētām āmāt. Aquīlā vōlābāt. Ancillæ

mēdicinām pārābunt. Belgæ ārās ædificābant. Nautæ insulām occüpābunt. Cōrōnā rēginām dēlectābīt. Agrīcōlā filiām vōcābāt.

Translate into Latin.

The maid-servants are preparing the table. The queen was calling the farmer's daughter. The poets will praise the queen. The sailor's daughter will sing. The farmers are building an altar. The moon delights the poet. We love the queen. You were calling the maid-servants.

EXERCISE V.

§ 23. *Vocabulary.*

umbrā, -æ, *shadow.*

terrā, -æ, *earth.*

incōlā, -æ, *inhabitant.*

insīdiæ, -ārūm

(used only in plural),

{ *ambush,*
snares.

puellā, -æ, *girl.*

cōpiæ, -ārūm, *forces.*

(cōpiā, in the singular, means *abundance*; in the plural, *forces.*)

obscūr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to obscure.*

1. The subject, as well as the predicate, may have words limiting its meaning.

2. The pronouns *I, thou, we, you*, are not usually expressed in Latin, as the endings of the verb show the person and number.

3. The words *my, thy, his, their, &c.* are not expressed in Latin, where the relation is obvious. Thus, *The queen loves her daughter*, Rēginā filiām āmāt.

Translate into English.

(In analysis of sentences, give the predicate with its limiters, then the subject with its limiters.)

Ancillā rēginæ agrīcōlæ filiām vōcābīt. Terræ umbrā

fūnām obscūrāt. Fūgă nautārūm incōlās insulæ dēlectāt. Cōpiæ Belgārūm insulām occūpābant. Nautæ puellās vōcant. Plūmæ cōlumbārūm rēgīnæ ancillās dēlectābunt.

Translate into Latin.

The flight of the queen delights the Belgians. Farmers love (their) daughters. The sailor loves the queen's maid-servant. The farmer's daughter will prepare the queen's table. A dove's feather delights the *sailor's* daughter; a crown delights the *queen's* daughter. An eagle's feather delights the queen's *maid-servant*; a crown delights the queen's *daughter*.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 24. Latin nouns whose genitive ending is *i* are of the second declension.

Those which have *um* in the nominative are neuter; the rest are masculine.

ENDINGS.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Neuter.</i>		
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	ūs,	ī,	Nom.	um,	ă,
Gen.	ī,	orūm,	Gen.	ī,	orūm,
Dat.	ō,	īs,	Dat.	ō,	īs,
Acc.	um,	ōs,	Acc.	um,	ă,
Voc.	ě,	ī,	Voc.	um,	ă,
Abl.	ō;	īs.	Abl.	ō;	īs.

By adding these endings to the stem *dōmīn-*, *master*, and the stem *regn-*, *kingdom*, we obtain the following

PARADIGMS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nũs, a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩ,</i>	<i>masters.</i>
Gen.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩ, of a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõ'-rũm,</i>	<i>of masters.</i>
Dat.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõ, to or for a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩs,</i>	<i>to or for masters.</i>
Acc.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nũm, a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõs,</i>	<i>masters.</i>
Voc.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-ně, O master!</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩ,</i>	<i>O masters!</i>
Abl.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõ, with, &c. a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩs,</i>	<i>with, &c. masters.</i>

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	<i>reg'-nũm, a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nã,</i>	<i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen.	<i>reg'-nĩ, of a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nõ'-rũm,</i>	<i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat.	<i>reg'-nõ, to or for a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nĩs,</i>	<i>to or for king- doms.</i>
Acc.	<i>reg'-nũm, a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nã,</i>	<i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc.	<i>reg'-nũm, O kingdom!</i>	<i>reg'-nã,</i>	<i>O kingdoms!</i>
Abl.	<i>reg'-nõ, with, &c. a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nĩs,</i>	<i>with, &c. king- doms.</i>

Remark 1.—Names of *trees, plants, &c.* are feminine by the general rule.* *Alvũs, belly; carbãsũs, linen; cõlũs, distaff; hũmũs, ground; and vannũs, fan,* are fem.; and *plinhũs, brick,* is masc. and fem.

Virũs, juice, and pělãgũs, sea, are neuter. *Vulgũs, common people,* is neuter,—rarely masculine.

Remark 2.—In proper names in *iũs*, with *filiũs, son,* and *gẽnĩũs, guardian spirit,* the vocative ending *ě* is absorbed: as, *Tulliũs*, voc. *Tullĩ*. But adjectives and national names in *iũs* retain *ě* in the vocative: as, *Helvėtiũs, Helvėtiě*.

Remark 3.—*Meũs* has *mĩ* in the vocative,—rarely *meũs*. *Deus*, a god, has *deũs* in the vocative, and in the plural nominative and vocative *dĩi* or *dĩ*; genitive *deõrũm*; dative and ablative *dĩs, deĩs, dĩa*; accusative *deõs*.

* But *ãcanthũs, ãmĩantũs, cactũs, cãlãmũs, cõctĩnũs,* and *pãliũrũs,* are masc.

Remark 4.—The ending *ōrūm* of the genitive plural is sometimes contracted into *ūm*, and *ū* in the genitive singular is sometimes contracted into *ī*: as, *nummūm* for *nummōrūm*; *ingēū* for *ingēnū*.

Remark 5.—Neuter nouns of *all declensions* have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike; and these cases in the plural end always in *ā*.

EXERCISE VI.

§ 25. Vocabulary.

dōmīnūs, -ī, { <i>master (of a family),</i> <i>lord.</i>	Gallūs, -ī, <i>a Gaul.</i>
servūs, -ī, <i>slave.</i>	auxīliūm, -ī, <i>aid.</i>
nūntiūs, -ī, <i>messenger.</i>	lēgātūs, -ī, { <i>ambassador,</i> <i>lieutenant.</i>
Tulliūs, -ī, <i>Tully.</i>	vīcūs, -ī, <i>village.</i>
Crassūs, -ī, <i>Crassus.</i>	hortūs, -ī, <i>garden.</i>
captīvūs, -ī, <i>captive.</i>	lūpūs, -ī, <i>wolf.</i>
Helvētiūs, -ī, <i>a Helvetian.</i>	Germānūs, -ī, <i>a German.</i>
rē-vōc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to call back, recall.</i> (re- means back.)	
con-vōc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to call together.</i> (con- means together.)	
rōg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to entreat, ask for.</i>	
ūlūl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to howl.</i>	
nēc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>rarely nectūm, to murder, to kill (usually by poi-</i>	
	<i>son, hunger, &c., sometimes with a weapon).</i>

Translate into English.

Lūpī ūlūlānt. Dōmīnūs servōs āmāt. Rēgīnæ filiōs āmānt. Crassūs nuntiōs Gallōrūm convōcābit. Tulliūs agrīcōlæ hortūm occūpābāt. Crassūs vīcōs Helvētiōrūm occūpābit. Gallī Germānōrūm lēgātōs nēcābūnt. Germānī captīvōs nēcānt. Helvētīī lēgātōs rēvōcānt. Belgæ insulārūm incōlās nēcābānt. Tulliūs servūm vōcāt.

Translate into Latin.

Tully's slaves love (their) master. The master calls together (his) slaves. The slaves of Crassus will call the queen's maid-servants. The inhabitants of the island are

killing the captives. We will call together the sons of Crassus. Tully's son loves the sailor's daughter. The ambassadors of the Helvetians praise the queen. He will call together the farmer's sons. The messengers ask-for aid. The Belgians will ask-for aid.

Stems in ěr.

§ 26. Nouns whose stems end in *ěr* drop the endings *ūs* of the nominative and *ě* of the vocative: as, *gěněr*, not *gěněrūs*. Most of them likewise drop the *ě* of the stem in the oblique cases: as, *ăgěr*, genitive *agrī*, not *ăgěr-ī*.

PARADIGMS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
		(<i>A son-in-law.</i>)			(<i>A field.</i>)
N.	<i>gě'-něr,</i>	<i>gě'n'-ě-rī.</i>	N.	<i>ă'-gěr,</i>	<i>ă'-grī.</i>
G.	<i>gě'n'-ě-rī,</i>	<i>gě'n-ě-rō'-rŭm.</i>	G.	<i>ă'-grī,</i>	<i>ă-grō'-rŭm.</i>
D.	<i>gě'n'-ě-rō,</i>	<i>gě'n'-ě-rīs.</i>	D.	<i>ă'-grō,</i>	<i>ă'-grīs.</i>
Ac.	<i>gě'n'-ě-rŭm,</i>	<i>gě'n'-ě-rōs.</i>	Ac.	<i>ă'-grŭm,</i>	<i>ă'-grōs.</i>
V.	<i>gě'-něr,</i>	<i>gě'n'-ě-rī.</i>	V.	<i>ă'-gěr,</i>	<i>ă'-grī.</i>
Ab.	<i>gě'n'-ě-rō,</i>	<i>gě'n'-ě-rīs.</i>	Ab.	<i>ă'-grō,</i>	<i>ă'-grīs.</i>

Remark 1.—The following nouns retain *ě* of the stem in all the cases: *ădultěr*, *adulterer*; *gěněr*, *son-in-law*; *Līběr*, *Bacchus*; *lībērī*, *children*; *puěr*, *boy*; *sŭcěr*, *father-in-law*; *vespěr*, *evening*; and compounds of *fěr* and *gěr*; also, the national names *Iběr* and *Celtīběr*.

Remark 2.—The solitary noun *vĭr*, *man*, is declined like *gěněr*: nom. *vĭr*; gen. *vĭrī*, &c.

For Greek nouns of the second declension, see Appendix II.

EXERCISE VII.

§ 27. *Vocabulary.*puēr, -ī, *boy.*vīr, -ī, *man.*sōcēr, -ī, *father-in-law.*gēnēr, -ī, *son-in-law.*māgistēr, -ī, *master (of a school).*āgēr, -ī, *field.*libērī, -ōrūm, *children.*ēquūs, -ī, *horse.*bellūm, -ī, *war.*fōliūm, -ī, *leaf.*ōvūm, -ī, *egg.*āpēr, -ī, *wild boar.*infrēn-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to bridle.*lāni-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to tear in pieces.**Translate into English.*

Agrīcōlā ēquūm filiæ infrēnāt. Aprī gēnērūm rēgīnæ lāniābunt. Fōliā silvæ ancillām rēgīnæ dēlectant. Māgistēr puērōs convōcābāt. Puērī māgistrūm āmant. Tullīi filiā sōcērūm āmābīt. Germānī Gallōrūm āgrōs occūpābant. Cōlumbārūm ōvā libērōs dēlectant. Vīrī ēquōs infrēnābunt. Bellūm Germānōs dēlectāt. Sōcēr gēnērūm āmāt. Servūs dōmīnī ēquūm infrēnāt. Nautā libērōs āmāt.

Translate into Latin.

The poet's children love the queen. Crassus praises the fields of the Helvetians. The Germans love war. The wolves will tear in pieces the farmer's children. Wild boars love the shade of the forest. The master will call back the boys. Tully's horse loves his master. The farmer's slaves are bridling the horses.

EXERCISE VIII.

§ 28. *The Dative Case.*

1. The Dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with* reference to which, any thing is, or is done.

2. *Rule of Syntax.*—The *indirect object* of a verb is

in the Dative: as, *servūs dōmīnō mēdicīnām pārāt*, the servant prepares medicine for his master.

Remark.—The *indirect object* of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends* without necessarily *reaching* it. Thus, in the above example, the action expressed by *parat* is exerted directly upon *the medicine*,—*medicinam*,—and the point to which it *tends* is *the master*,—*domino*,—though it does not necessarily *reach* that point, since it is not implied that the master *receives* or *uses* the medicine prepared for him.

3. *Rule of Position.*—The *indirect object* precedes the *direct*.

Vocabulary.

libër, -ī, *book*.

viā, -æ, *way*.

taurūs, -ī, *bull*.

monstr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to show*.

mact-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to sacrifice*.

d-ō, dārē, dēdī, dātūm, *to give*. (The only verb of the first conjugation having *ā* in the infinitive present.)

agnūs, -ī, *lamb*.

hædūs, -ī, *kid*.

Translate into English.

Māgister puērō librūm dāt. Puellā Crassō viām monstrābāt. Agrīcōlā diīs ārām ædificābīt. Gallī diīs taurōs mactant. Servi rēgīnæ hædūm pārant. Lūpī agnōs lāniābunt. Agrīcōlæ filiūs puellæ ōvūm dāt. Gallī Germānīs insīdiās pārābunt. Crassūs cōpiīs Gallōrūm insīdiās pārāt. Rēgīnā agrīcōlæ ēquūm dāt. Gallī nautīs insulām monstrant. Rēgīnæ ancillā Gallīs Germānōrūm insīdiās monstrāt.

Translate into Latin.

The queen's father-in-law will give (to) the poet a field. The queen of the Helvetians is preparing snares for Tully's forces. The inhabitants of the island were sacrificing a lamb to the gods. The master is preparing a book for the

boys. The slaves are preparing a way for their master. The master gives (to) his slave a kid. The slave gives (to) the farmer's son a dove's egg.

EXERCISE IX.

The Ablative Case.

§ 29. 1. *Rule of Syntax.*—The Ablative expresses the *cause, manner, means, or instrument*: as,

Cæcūs āvārītiā, Blinded by avarice. (*Cause.*)

Hōc mōdō fēcīt, He did it in this manner. (*Manner.*)

Aquilā ālīs vōlāt, The eagle flies with his wings. (*Means.*)

Captīvū glādiō occīdīt, He kills the captive with a sword. (*Instrument.*)

2. *Rule of Syntax.*—The Ablative (usually with the preposition *in*) expresses the *place where*.

3. *Rule of Position.*—Expressions of *cause, time, and place* usually precede the direct object; those of *manner, means, and instrument* are placed after it; and all precede the predicate.

Remark.—A preposition with its case is called an *adjunct*.

Vocabulary.

īn (preposition with abl.), *in*.

terrā, -æ, *the earth, ground*.

tūbā, -æ, *trumpet*.

signū, -ī, *signal, sign*.

vēnēnū, -ī, *poison*.

glādiū, -ī, *sword*.

Marcūs, -ī, *Mark*.

cultēr, -trī, *knife*.

ār-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātū, *to plough*.

vex-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātū, *to annoy, to trouble*.

vulnēr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātū, *to wound*.

ambūl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātū, *to walk*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Marcī filiū Gallis signū tūbā dāt. (*The predicate is*

here limited by *Gallis*, the indirect object; *signum*, the direct object; and *tubā*, the ablative of the instrument.) *Agricolā terrām equis arāt. Captivūs Tulliūm cultro vulnerābit. Poētā in silvis ambulāt. Marcūs Helvētiōs injuriis vexābāt. Nautā rēginæ gēnerūm gladiō necābīt. Germānī captivōs gladiis necant. Aquilæ alīs vōlant. Rēginā filiō regnūm dāt. Ancillā rēginæ Crassūm vēnēnō necābīt. Umbrām silvæ amāmūs. Dōminūs servōs tubā convōcāt. Rēginæ sōcēr filiūm Tulliī injuriis vexāt.*

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's sons will plough the fields with horses. The girls are dancing in the forest. The poet was walking in the garden. The slaves of Tully are preparing snares for the ambassadors of the Helvetians in the forest. The inhabitants of the islands will kill the ambassadors with their swords. The Germans were annoying the Gauls with injuries. Doves fly with their wings. The farmer will give the sailor's daughter a lamb. Wolves are howling in the forest.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 30. Nouns whose genitive-ending is *is* are of the third declension.

CASE-ENDINGS.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>			<i>Neuter.</i>	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	s,	ēs,	— (ě),	ă (iă),
G.	īs,	ūm (iūm),	īs,	ūm (iūm).
D.	ī,	ībūs,	ī,	ībūs,
Ac.	ēm (īm),	ēs,	— (ě),	ă (iă),
V.	s,	ēs,	— (ě),	ă (iă),
Ab.	ě (ī);	ībūs.	ě (ī);	ībūs.

Remark 1.—Many masculine and feminine nouns have no ending in the nominative, but present the simple stem: as, *hōnŏr*. The regular ending of the accusative singular is *ēm*; that of the ablative, *ē*; of the genitive plural, *ūm*.

Remark 2.—But few neuter nouns have a nominative-ending, most of them presenting the stem alone in the nominative. The regular endings are given in the first column; the others are occasional only.

Remark 3.—An old accusative-ending *īs* or *ēīs* is found with stems that take *iūm* in the genitive plural: as, *vallīs* or *vallēīs*.

CLASSES.

Nouns of the third declension are divided into six classes, according to the formation of the nominative singular: three classes having the nominative-ending *s*; one, the nominative-ending *ē*; and two having no nominative-ending at all, but presenting the simple stem.

CLASS I.—Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem without any vowel change: as, *urb-s*. (*Feminine.*)

CLASS II.—Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem with a connecting vowel *e* or *i*: as, stem *rūp-*, nominative *rūp-e-s*, *rūpēs*; stem *vall-*, nominative *vall-i-s*, *vallīs*. (*Feminine.*)

CLASS III.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *ī* into *ē*, and add *s*: as, stem *mīlīt-*, nominative *mīlēt-s*, *mīlēs*. (*Masculine.*)

CLASS IV.—Nouns which have the nominative-ending *ē*: as, *mār-ē*. (*Neuter.*)

CLASS V.—Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the *unchanged* stem: as, *hōnŏr*, *consŭl*, *calcār*. (*Masculine and neuter.*)

CLASS VI.—Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the stem *changed* in the nominative: as, stem *virgĭn-*, nominative *virgō*. (*Masculine, feminine, and neuter.*)

Rule of Euphony.—A *c* sound with *s* makes *x*: as, *leg-s*, *lex*; *arc-s*, *arx*. A *t* sound with *s* is dropped: as, *font-s*, *fons*.

CLASS I.

§ 31. Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem without vowel change.

PARADIGMS.

<i>Singular.</i>					
	<i>City.</i>	<i>Law.</i>	<i>Praise.</i>	<i>Art.</i>	<i>Citadel.</i>
N.	Urb-s,	Lex (leg-s),	Laus (laud-s),	Ars (art-s),	Arx (arc-s),
G.	ur'-bīs,	lē'-gīs,	lau'-dīs,	ar'-tīs,	ar'-cīs,
D.	ur'-bī,	lē'-gī,	lau'-dī,	ar'-tī,	ar'-cī,
Ac.	ur'-bēm,	lē'-gēm,	lau'-dēm,	ar'-tēm,	ar'-cēm,
V.	urbs,	lex,	laus,	ars,	arx,
Abl.	ur'-bē.	lē'-gē.	lau'-dē.	ar'-tē.	ar'-cē.
<i>Plural.</i>					
N.	ur'-bēs,	lē'-gēs,	lau'-dēs,	ar'-tēs,	ar'-cēs,
G.	ur'-bi-ūm,	lē'-gūm,	lau'-dūm,	ar'-ti-ūm,	ar'-ci-ūm,
D.	ur'-bi-būs,	lēg' i-būs,	lau'-di-būs,	ar'-ti-būs,	ar'-ci-būs,
Ac. & V.	ur'-bēs,	lē'-gēs,	lau'-dēs,	ar'-tēs,	ar'-cēs,
Abl.	ur'-bi-būs.	lēg'-i-būs.	lau'-di-būs.	ar'-ti-būs.	ar'-ci-būs.

Rule 1.—Stems ending in two consonants, with *dōs*, *līs*, *fraus*, *vīs*, *fauz* (nom. obs.), *nix*, *compēs*, *strix*, have *iūm* in the genitive plural.

Rule 2.—Stems of more than one syllable in *nt* and *rt* (adding *s*), with names of nations in *ās*, have *iūm* and sometimes *ūm*: as, *cliens*, *clientiūm* or *clientūm*.

Remark 1.—Other nouns in *ās*, with *forz* and *pālūs*, sometimes have *iūm*. *Quīrīs* and *Samnīs* have *iūm*.

Remark 2.—*Pars*, part, and *lens*, lentil, have sometimes *im* in the accusative; and the same, with *sors*, lot, and *trīdens*, trident, have *ē* or *ī* in the ablative. *Partim* is usually an adverb.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem without vowel change, are feminine; except—

Masculines.

1. *Dens*, tooth, and its compounds; *fons*, fountain; *pons*, bridge; *mons*, mountain; *cliens*, client; *rūdēns*, rope (rarely feminine); and compounds of *ās* and *unciā*; *pāriēs*, wall; *pēs*, foot; *lāpīs*, stone.

2. *Grex*, flock; Greek nouns in *ax*, *ix*, *yx*, *ps*, and *ās* (*antīs*); with *cālix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *prōdux*, twig; *sentix*, brier; *trādux*, vine-branch; and *frācēs*, dregs.

Masculine or Feminine.

Many nouns denoting living beings, with *scrobs*, ditch; *stirps*, trunk of a tree; *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; and *frons*, forehead, rarely masculine.

EXERCISE X.

§ 32. 1. The ablative is used with prepositions which imply *rest in* a place: as, *in urbē hābitāt*, he lives in the city; or *motion from* a place: as, *ex urbē ēquitāt*, he rides out of the city.

2. The accusative (the *whither* case) is used with prepositions implying *motion to* a place: as, *in urbēm vēnit*, he comes into the city; *ad rēgēm vēnit*, he comes to the king.

3. *Caution.*—*To*, when it implies motion, must be translated by *ad* with the accusative.

4. *Rule of Position.*—A preposition with its case precedes the predicate.

Vocabulary.

in (with acc.), *into* ;

(with abl.), *in*.

ad (prep. with acc.), *to, towards*.

ē, *out of* (prep. with abl., used only with words beginning with a consonant).

ex, *out of* (prep. with abl., used before vowels and consonants).

rūdēns, rūdēt-is, *rope*.

antennā, -ae, *sail-yard*.

pilūm, -i, *javelin*.

Galliā, -ae, *Gaul*.

Germaniā, -ae, *Germany*.

dens, dent-is, *tooth*.

pēs, pēd-is, *foot*.

calx, calc-is, *heel*.

rex, rēg-is, *king*.

plebs, plēb-is, *common people*.

grex, grēg-is, *flock*.

ferrūm, -i, *iron, the sword*.

cliens, client-is, *client*.

lāpis, lapīd-is, *a stone*.

mālūs, -i, *mast*.

libertās, libertāt-is, *liberty*.

nōbilitās, nōbilitāt-is, *nobility*.

Orgētōrix, Orgētōrig-is, *Orgetorix*.

ēquīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to ride on horseback*.

hiēm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to winter, spend the winter*

serv-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to preserve, protect*.

viōl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dishonor, violate, break (a law, &c.)*.

hābit-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dwell, live*.

mand-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to intrust*.

destīn-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to fasten*.

ā or ab, *from, by* (prep. with abl., ā being used only before consonants, ab before vowels and consonants).

Translate into English.

Orgētōrix lēgēs Helvētiōrūm viōlābāt. Plebs libertātē ferrō servābit. Nautae antennās ad mālōs rūdentībūs destīnant. Puēr calcēm servī lapīdē vulnerāt. Crassūs ex urbē ad vīcūm ēquītāt. Cōpiāe Germānōrūm in Galliā hiēmābunt. Gallī in Galliā hābitant. Rex nōbilitāti urbēm mandāt. Crassī filiūs clientēs ex agrīs in urbēm convōcāt. Lūpī dentībūs agnōs lāniant. Gallī Crassūm pilīs nēcābunt. Germānī Gallōs bellīs vexant.

Translate into Latin.

The boys are riding from the village to the city. The farmer's sons live in the forest. The doves will fly out of

the fields into the forest. The king was calling together the common people out of the village into the city. The king will give the kingdom to his son. Crassus will break the laws of Gaul. The king's son will preserve the liberty of the common people. The boys are wounding the king's messengers with stones. The inhabitants of Germany will winter in the island of the Belgians. Horses walk with (their) feet. A flock of doves is flying out of the forest. The sailor will fasten the yard to the mast with ropes. The king was slaying the nobility with the sword.

CLASS II.

§ 33. Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem with a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*): as, *rŭp-ĕ-s*, *vall-ĭ-s*.

PARADIGMS.

Singular.

Nom.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> , a rock.	<i>val'-lĭs</i> , a valley.
Gen.	<i>rŭ'-pĭs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭs</i> ,
Dat.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭ</i> ,
Acc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕm</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕm</i> ,
Voc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>rŭ'-pĕ</i> ;	<i>val'-lĕ</i> ;

Plural.

Nom.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕs</i> ,
Gen.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ-ŭm</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭ-ŭm</i> ,
Dat.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ-bŭs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭ-bŭs</i> ,
Acc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕs</i> ,
Voc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ-bŭs</i> .	<i>val'-lĭ-bŭs</i> .

Remark 1.—The following nouns have *īm* in the accusative :—

(a) Names of *places, rivers, and gods* in *īs* : these sometimes also have *īn* in the accusative. *Scaldīs* has *īn* and *īm* ; *Līrīs* has *īm, īn, and ěm* ; and *Līgēr* has *Līgērīm*.

(b) *Amussīs, a mason's rule.*

Būrīs, a plough-tail.

Cannābīs, hemp.

Cūcūmīs (gen. -īs), a cucumber.

Mēphītīs, foul air.

Pelvīs, a basin.

Rāvīs, hoarseness.

Sēcūrīs, an axe.

Sīnāpīs, mustard.

Sītīs, thirst.

Tussīs, a cough.

Vīs, strength.

Remark 2.—The following have *īm*, and sometimes *ēm* :—

Febrīs, a fever.

Puppīs, the stern.

Restīs, a rope.

Turrīs, a tower.

Remark 3.—The following have *ēm*, and rarely *īm* :—

Bīpēonīs, a battle-axe.

Clāvīs, a key.

Messīs, a harvest.

Nāvīs, a ship.

Præsēpīs, a stall.

Sēmentīs, a sowing.

Strīgīlīs, a flesh-brush.

Remark 4.—Nouns which have *īm* in the accusative, with names of months in *ēr* and *īs*, have *ī* in the ablative: as, *vīs, vīm, vī* ; *Aprīlīs, Aprīlī*.

But *Bætīs, cannābīs, and sīnāpīs* have *ě* or *ī*.

Remark 5.—Nouns which have *ēm* or *īm* in the accusative have *ě* or *ī* in the ablative: as, *turrīs, turrě* or *tuīrī*.

But *restīs* has *ě* only.

Remark 6.—The following have only *ēm* in the accusative, but have *ě* or *ī* in the ablative :—

Amnīs,

Cānālīs,

Convallīs,

Ignīs,

Postīs,

Anguīs,

Cīvīs,

Corbīs,

Mūgīlīs,

Sordēs,

Avīs,

Classīs,

Fīnīs,

Orbīs,

Unguīs,

Billīs,

Collīs,

Fustīs,

Ovīs,

Vectīs.

Remark 7.—Nouns of this class (adding *s* with connecting vowel *e* or *i*) have *iūm* in the genitive plural.

Exc. *Cānīs, dog* ; *jūvėnīs, young man* ; *fōrīs, door* ; *mūgīlīs, mullet* ; *prōlēs, offspring* ; *struēs, pile* ; *vātēs, prophet*, have *ūm* ; also, generally, *āpīs, bee* ; *strīgīlīs, flesh-brush* ; *vōlūcrīs, bird* ; sometimes *mensīs, and cædēs*.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns of this class are feminine.

Exc. 1. *Pālumbēs, vātēs, vepres*, are masculine or feminine.

Exc. 2. The following in *is* are masculine or feminine :—

Amnīs, river.	Cānīs, dog.	Fūnīs, rope.
Anguīs, snake.	Clūnīs, haunch.	Serōbīs, ditch.
Callīs, path.	Corbīs, basket.	Tigrīs, tiger.
Cānālīs, pipe.	Fīnīs (end, f.; boundary, m.).	Torquīs, chain.

Fīnēs, boundaries, is always masculine.

Exc. 3. The following are masculine :—in *ēs, antēs, gausāpēs, gerrēs* :—in *is*,

Axis, axle.	Follīs, bellows.	Piscīs, fish.
Būrīs, plow-tail.	Fustīs, club.	Postīs, post.
Cassīs, net.	Ignīs, fire.	Sentīs, brier.
Caulīs, stalk.	Mānēs, pl., shades.	Sōdālīs, companion.
Collīs, hill.	Mensīs, month.	Torrīs, firebrand.
Crīnīs, hair.	Mūgīlīs, mullet.	Unguīs, nail.
Ensīs, sword.	Orbīs, circle.	Vectīs, lever.
Fascīs, bundle.	Pānīs, bread.	Vermīs, worm.

Aquālīs (properly an adjective) is masculine and feminine.

EXERCISE XI.

§ 34. 1. Conjunctions connect words which are in the same construction: as, *Cæsār et Brūtūs*, Cæsar and Brutus; *glādūs pīlisquē*, with swords and javelins.

N.B.—*Et* connects things which are separate and distinct, and of equal importance; *quē* (always written at the end of a word) connects one thing closely to another as an appendage, the two making one complete idea. Thus, the “swords and javelins” above constitute together *offensive armor*. *Atquē* generally introduces something of greater importance.

2. If the subject consists of more than one thing, the verb must be plural. Hence—

Rule of Syntax.—A collective noun *may* have a plural verb: as, *plebs clāmant*, the people shout.

Vocabulary.

ignīs, -īs, fire.
vallīs, -īs, valley.

pars, part-īs, part.
pax, pāc-īs, peace.

Athēnæ, -ārūm, *Athens*.

cūm, *with, in company with* (prep. with ablative).

īn (prep. with abl.), *on, in; (with acc.), upon, into*.

pēr (prep. with acc.), *through*.

Græciā, -æ, *Greece*.

Cēcrops, Cēcrop-īs, *Cecrops*.

Cadmūs, -ī, *Cadmus*.

hostīs, -īs, *enemy* (§ 13, R. 4).

cīvis, -īs, *citizen* (§ 13, R. 4).

āvis, -īs, *bird*.

ōvis, -īs, *sheep*.

classīs, -īs, *fleet*.

collīs, -īs, *hill*.

lītērā, -æ, *letter (of the alphabet)*.

āmīcitiā, -æ, *friendship*.

sītīs, -īs, *thirst*.

port-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to carry*.

im-port-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to carry in, import*.

formīd-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to dread*.

vīgīl-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to watch*.

festīn-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to hasten*.

confirm-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to establish*.

vast-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to lay waste*.

nīdīfic-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to build a nest*.

lēv-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to relieve*.

Translate into English.

Cadmūs īn Græciām lītērās importāt. Avēs īn silvīs nīdīficant. Aquā sītīm lēvāt. Fons īn vallē poētām dēlectāt. Helvētīi agrōs Germānōrūm ferrō ignīquē vastābunt. Gallī cūm Germānīs pācēm ēt āmīcitiām confirmant. Crassūs ex agrō īn urbēm festīnāt. Plebs īn urbē nōbilitātēm nēcāt. Crassūs cōpiās glādiīs pīlisquē armābāt. Cīvēs Cēcropī clāvēs urbīs dant. Lūpī ōvēs ēt hādōs lāniant. Crassūs īn collē turrīm ædīficāt. Gallī nāvēs ēt cōpiās Germānōrūm formīdant. Crassūs partēm plēbīs cultris lāpīdibusquē armābīt. Cōlumbæ pēr silvām vōlant. Cēcrops Athēnās ædīficābīt. Cānēs ēt lūpī ōvēs lāniant. Rex ēt rēgīnā īn hortō ambulant. Cīvēs īn urbē vīgīlant.

Translate into Latin.

Crassus will lay waste the fields of the Belgians with fire and sword (*ferrō ignīquē*). The nobility dread the fleet of Tullius. The nobility will preserve the liberty of

the citizens with the sword. The maid-servant is preparing a mullet for her master. The queen will walk in the garden with her daughters. The farmer's sons will carry sheep and kids to the city. The nobility will arm their slaves with stones and knives. The farmer's son will show (to) the ambassadors of the Belgians the way through the forest. Tullius will take possession of the hill. Medicine will relieve fevers.

CLASS III.

§ 35. Nouns which change the stem-vowel *ĩ* into *ě*, and add *s*.

PARADIGMS.

Milēs (mīlet-s), *soldier*. Princeps (princep-s), *chief*.

Singular.

Nom. mī'-lēs,	Nom. prin'-ceps,
Gen. mīl'-ĩ-tīs,	Gen. prin'-cĩ-pīs,
Dat. mīl'-ĩ-tī,	Dat. prin'-cĩ-pī,
Acc. mīl'-ĩ-tēm,	Acc. prin'-cĩ-pēm,
Voc. mī'-lēs,	Voc. prin'-ceps,
Abl. mīl'-ĩ-tě;	Abl. prin'-cĩ-pě;

Plural.

Nom. mīl'-ĩ-tēs,	Nom. prin'-cĩ-pēs,
Gen. mīl'-ĩ-tūm,	Gen. prin'-cĩ-pūm,
Dat. mī-līt'-ĩ-būs.	Dat. prin-cĩp'-ĩ-būs.
Acc. mīl'-ĩ-tēs,	Acc. prin'-cĩ-pēs,
Voc. mīl'-ĩ-tēs,	Voc. prin'-cĩ-pēs,
Abl. mī-līt'-ĩ-būs.	Abl. prin-cĩp'-ĩ-būs.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *ĩ* into *ě*, and add *s*, are masculine.

Exc. 1. Feminine, *mērgēs*, sheaf; *forfex*, shears; *forpex*, tongs.

Exc. 2. Masculine or feminine, *ādeps*, grease; *cortex*, bark; *forceps*, pincers; *imbrex*, tile; *ōbex*, bolt.

EXERCISE XII.

§ 36. 1. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—Nouns in apposition agree in case: as, *Jūgurthā rex*, Jugurtha the king.

Remark.—A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in the plural: as, *Jūgurthā et Bocchūs, rēgēs*, Jugurtha and Bocchus, kings.

Vocabulary.

virtūs, virtūt-īs, <i>valor</i> .	hospēs, hospīt-īs, <i>guest</i> .
ā, or āb, <i>from</i> (prep. with abl.).	obsēs, obsīd-īs, <i>hostage</i> .
prœliūm, -ī, <i>battle</i> .	ēquēs, ēquīt-īs, <i>horseman</i> .
Nūmīdiā, -æ, <i>Numidia</i> .	pēdēs, pēdīt-īs, <i>footman</i> .
nūmērūs, -ī, <i>number</i> .	horreūm, -ī, <i>granary</i> .
vēlēs, vēlīt-īs, <i>a light-armed soldier, a skirmisher</i> .	mergēs, mergīt-īs, <i>sheaf</i> .
Dāvūs, -ī, <i>Davus</i> .	cōmēs, cōmīt-īs, <i>companion</i> .
Balbūs, -ī, <i>Balbus</i> .	cæspēs, cæspīt-īs, <i>turf</i> .
Jūgurthā, -æ, <i>Jugurtha</i> .	trāmēs, trāmīt-īs, <i>by-path</i> .

sēc-ō, sēc-ārē, sēc-uī, sectūm and sēc-ātūm, *to cut*.
 postūl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to demand*.
 viol-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to maltreat, violate*.
 dūplic-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to double*.
 rēdintēgr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to renew*.
 explōr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to explore, search out*.
 crēm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn*.
 proflīg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dash to pieces, to rout*.
 fūg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to put to flight, to rout*.

Translate into English.

Militēs glādiis cæspītēm sēcābant. Agrīcōlā īn horreūm mergītēs portābīt. Tulliūs ā Germānīs obsīdēs postūlāt. Jūgurthā, rex Nūmīdiæ, Crassō obsīdēs dāt. Dāvūs et Balbūs, servī agrīcōlæ, dōmīnī libērōs āmant. Orgētōrix, princeps Helvētiōrūm, āb Æduīs obsīdēs postūlābīt. Hel-

vētiī Orgētōrīgēm ignī crēmābunt. Equītēs ēt pēdītēs praeliūm rēdintēgrābunt. Poētā virtūtēm Jūgurthae, rēgis Nūmīdiāe, laudāt. Cōpiāe Crassī ēquītēs pēdītesquē hostiūm prōflīgābant. Vēlītēs Tullīi trāmītēs pēr silvām explōrant. Cōmītēs Orgētōrīgīs, principīs Helvētiōrūm, agrōs Gal-lōrūm ferrō ignīquē vastant. Jūgurthā nūmērūm obsidūm dūplicāt.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer is walking with his sons, Davus and Balbus, in the forest. The Gauls dread the ships of Crassus. Davus, the king's slave, will show (to) the boys the way through the forest. Part of the skirmishers will occupy the hill. The Germans will maltreat their guests. Tully will give the signal to the king's horsemen with the trumpet. The horsemen are bridling their horses.

CLASS IV.

§ 37. Nouns which add *ē* to the stem to form the nominative.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom., Acc., and Voc.	<i>mār'-ē, the sea,</i>	<i>mār'-i-ā,</i>
Gen.	<i>mār'-īs,</i>	<i>mār'-i-ūm,</i>
Dat. and Abl.	<i>mār'-ī;</i>	<i>mār'-ī-būs.</i>

Remark.—Nouns of this class have *ī* in the ablative singular, *iā* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *iūm* in the genitive plural.

Exc. Names of towns in *ē* have *ē* in the ablative. *Rētē*, a net, has *ē* or *ī* in the ablative.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which have the nominative-ending *ē* are neuter.

EXERCISE XIII.

*Vocabulary.*terrā mārīquē, *by sea and land.*cēlērītās, cēlērītāt-īs, *swiftness.*crūdēlītās, crūdēlītāt-īs, *cruelty.*Marcūs, -ī, *Marcus, Mark.*Lūciūs, -ī, *Lucius.*Cassiūs, -ī, *Cassius.*Sýphax, Sýphācīs, *Syphax.*cūbīlē, cūbīl-īs, *couch.*oppīdūm, -ī, *town.*rētē, rēt-īs, *net.*nāvālē, nāvāl-īs, *dock-yard.*sēdīlē, sēdīl-īs, *seat.*mōnīlē, mōnīl-īs, *necklace.*Rōmānūs, -ī, *Roman.*Carthāgīniensīs, -īs, *Carthaginian.*dux, dūc-īs, *leader.*Māriūs, -ī, *Marius.*Caiūs, -ī, *Caius.*dormītō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to fall asleep.*expugnō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to storm.**Translate into English.*

Rēgīnæ filiā in cūbīlī dormītābīt. Deūs cervīs ēt cānībūs cēlērītātēm dāt. Marcūs ēt Lūciūs, agrīcōlæ filiī (§ 36, *Remark*), āgrōs ēquīs ārābunt. Cassiūs in nāvālībūs nāvēs ædīfīcāt. Dux Caiō aurūm dāt. Sýphax, dux Carthāgīniensīūm, Rōmānīs insīdiās pārābāt. Gallī crūdēlītātēm Germānōrūm formīdant. Māriūs, dux Rōmānōrūm, oppīdā Jūgurthæ expugnābīt. Lūciūs, Rōmānōrūm dux, terrā mārīquē cōpiās hostīūm fūgābīt. Rēgīnā filiābūs mōnīliā dābīt. Servi in silvā dōmīnō sēdīlē pārānt. Dāvūs aprīs rētiā pārābīt.

Translate into Latin.

Syphax, the leader of the Carthaginians, will build ships in the dock-yards. The forces of the Gauls will storm the city. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, will rout the forces of the Romans by sea and by land. Lucius and Balbus, slaves of Marius, will prepare seats for their master. The queen's daughter gives (to) the poet a necklace. Marius will lay waste the fields of Numidia with fire and sword. The foot-soldiers are bridling the horses of the horsemen. Orgetorix dreads the cruelty of the Helvetians.

CLASS V.

§ 38. Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the unchanged stem in the nominative.

MASCULINE FORMS.

Höñör, *honor* (masc.).Pătër, *father* (masc.).

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	hõ'-nör,	hõ-nõ'-rēs,		pă'-tēr,	pă'-trēs,
G.	hõ-nõ'-rīs,	hõ-nõ'-rŭm,		pă'-trīs,	pă'-trŭm,
D.	hõ-nõ'-rī,	hõ-nõr'-ī-bŭs,		pă'-trī,	pă'-rī-bŭs,
Ac.	hõ-nõ'-rēm,	hõ-nõ'-rēs,		pă'-trēm,	pă'-trēs,
V.	hõ'-nör,	hõ-nõ'-rēs,		pă'-tēr,	pă'-trēs,
Ab.	hõ-nõ'-rě;	hõ-nõr'-ī-bŭs.		pă'-trě;	pă'-rī-bŭs.

Remark 1.—Nouns in *těr* and *běr* drop *ě* in the oblique cases: as, *imběr*, *imbrīs*; *pătěr*, *pătrīs*.

Remark 2.—*Imběr*, *pŭgŭl*, and *vespěr* have *ě* or *ī* in the ablative; *imběr*, *lintěr*, *ventěr*, *ŭtěr*, have *iŭm* in the genitive plural; and *rĕn* has *ŭm* or *iŭm*.

Remark 3.—Some names of towns, when denoting *the place where*, have *ī* in the ablative: as, *Anxŭrī*.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative (except stems in *ăl*, *ăr*, and *ŭr*) are masculine.

Exc. 1. (OR.) *Arbör*, *tree*, is feminine. *Adör*, *spelt*, *æquör*, *sea*, and *marmör*, *marble*, are neuter. Masculines in *ör* have *ō* long in the oblique cases; neuters have *ō* short: as, *hönörīs*, *marmörīs*.

Exc. 2. (ER.) *Līntěr*, *boat*, is feminine. *Cădăvěr*, *corpse*; *spīnthěr*, *clasp*; *tŭběr*, *swelling*; *ŭběr*, *udder*; *věr*, *spring*; *verběr*, *lash*; and names of trees and plants in *er*, are neuter. But *lavěr* and *tŭběr*, names of trees, are feminine, and *sīsěr* is masculine in the plural.

Exc. 3. *Alēc*, *ălēc-īs*, *brine*, and *vās*, *vās-īs*, *vessel*, are neuter.

EXERCISE XIV.

Vocabulary.

Cæsār, Cæsār-īs, *Cæsar*.
impērātōr, -ōr-īs, *commander*.

cōnsul, consul-īs, *consul*.

ansēr, ansēr-īs, *goose*.

frātēr, fratr-īs, *brother*.

mātēr, matr-īs, *mother*.

sōrōr, sōrōr-īs, *sister*.

hībernā, -ōrūm, *winter quarters*.

īn hībernā collōcārē, to put into
winter quarters.

līntēr, līnr-īs, *boat*.

imbēr, imbr-īs, *rain*.

conjux, conjūg-īs, *husband or wife*.

sāgittāriūs, -ī, *archer*.

fundītōr, -ōr-īs, *slinger*.

pastōr, -ōr-īs, *shepherd*.

vēnātōr, -ōr-īs, *hunter*.

mercātōr, -ōr-īs, *merchant*.

tēlūm, -ī, *dart*.

collōc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to place, put together.

dēfens-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to defend.

Translate into English.

Plebs libertatē ferrō servābit. Impērātōr ēquītēs pēditesquē convōcābāt. Cæsār āb urbē īn Galliām festīnābāt. Agrīcōlā conjūgēm libērosquē āmāt. Pastōr grēgēm ā lūpō dēfensābīt. Crassūs consul īn nāvālībūs nāvēs ēt līnrēs aedīfīcāt. Agrīcōlæ ansērēs īn hortō hābītant. Milītēs impērātōrēm ā glādiīs tēlisquē hostiūm dēfensābunt. Cæsār cōpiās īn hībernā collōcāt. Vēnātōr īn silvā aprīs rētiā pārāt. Cæsār cūm sāgittāriīs fundītōribusquē ād montēm festīnāt. Rex mercātōrēs convōcāt. Balbūs, Lūciī gēnēr, fratrēs sōrōresquē āmāt. Imbrēs agrīcōlās dēlectant.

Translate into Latin.

The horsemen will rout the archers and slingers of the enemy. The shepherds are sacrificing bulls and sheep to the gods. The geese are flying into the forest. The sisters of Orgetorix are dancing in the garden. The brother of Lucius was defending his mother and sisters with (his)

sword. The common people intrust their liberty to the consul. The hunter will show (to) the shepherd a by-path through the forest. Cæsar will hasten from the winter-quarters into the city. The slingers are wounding the horsemen of the enemy with stones.

NEUTER FORMS.

§ 39. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in *ăl*, *ăr*, *ūr*.

Anîmăl, *an animal* (neuter).

Calcăr, *a spur* (neuter).

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	ăn'-î-măl,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ă,		cal'-căr,	cal-că'-ri-ă,
G.	ăn-î-mă'-lîs,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ŭm,		cal-că'-rîs,	cal-că'-ri-ŭm,
D.	ăn-î-mă'-lî,	ăn-î-mă'-î-bŭs,		cal-că'-rî,	cal-căr'-î-bŭs,
Ac.	ăn'-î-măl,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ă,		cal'-căr,	cal-că'-ri-ă,
V.	ăn'-î-măl,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ă,		cal'-căr,	cal-că'-ri-ă,
Ab.	ăn-î-mă'-lî;	ăn-î-mă'-î-bŭs.		cal-că'-rî;	cal-căr'-î-bŭs.

NOTE.—Nouns in *ě*, *ăl*, *ăr*, were originally adjectives, the adjective-ending of those in *ăl* and *ăr* having been dropped. Thus, *ănîm-ă*, breath; neuter adjective *ănîm-ălě* (*ănîmăl*), a thing having breath, an animal; *calc-s* (*calx*), the heel; *calc-ărě* (*calc-ăr*), a thing pertaining to the heel, a spur.

Remark 1.—Nouns ending in *ăl* and *ăr* have *i* in the ablative singular, *iŭm* in the genitive plural, and *iă* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

Remark 2.—*Baccăr*, *jübăr*, *nectăr*, and *săl* have *ě* in the ablative singular; and *fŭr* and *lăr* have *ŭm* or *iŭm* in the genitive plural.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present in the nominative the unchanged stem in *ăl*, *ăr*, *ūr*, are neuter.

Exc. *Săl*, *salt*, is masculine or neuter in the singular, and always masculine in the plural. *Fŭr*, *thief*, *furfŭr*, *bran*, *sălăr*, *trout*, *turtŭr*, *dove*, *vultŭr*, *vulture*, are masculine.

EXERCISE XV.

§ 40. *Vocabulary.*

jūmentūm, -ī, <i>work-horse, beast of burden.</i>	furfūr, furfūr-īs, <i>bran.</i>
jūbār, jūbār-īs, <i>sunshine.</i>	stīmulūs, -ī, <i>goad.</i>
vultūr, vultūr-īs, <i>vulture.</i>	tempestās, tempestāt-īs, <i>tempest.</i>
templūm, -ī, <i>temple.</i>	templūm dē marmōrē, <i>a temple of marble.</i>
marmōr, marmōr-īs, <i>marble.</i>	dē (prep. with abl.), <i>from, of.</i>
dīc-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūm, <i>to dedicate.</i>	
concīt-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūm, <i>to urge on, stir up, arouse.</i>	
rapt-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūm, <i>to snatch away, carry off.</i>	

Translate into English.

Crassūs diīs templūm dē marmōrē dīcābīt. Vultūrēs agnōs et hādōs raptant. Jūbār nautās dēlectāt. Agrīcōlā jūmentā stīmulō concītāt. Cecrops, rex Græciæ, ēquūm calcārībūs concītāt. Rēgīnā īn insulā ārām dē marmōrē ædīfīcāt. Agrīcōlæ jūmentīs furfurēm dant. Vēlītēs Cæsārīs hostiūm sāgittāriōs fundītōresquē fūgābunt. Tempestātēs mārīs hostiūm classēm proflīgābunt.

Translate into Latin.

The boys love the master. Cæsar will lay waste the fields of the Gauls with fire and sword. Tully will rout the forces of the enemy by sea and land. Tully's foot-soldiers occupy the hill. Farmers plough their fields with work-horses. Eagles and vultures build nests in the rocks. Cæsar's skirmishers will search out the by-paths through the forests. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, was storming his brother's towns. Sailors dread tempests. Horsemen urge on their horses with spurs.

CLASS VI.

§ 41. Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the stem *changed* in the nominative.

I.—MASCULINE FORMS OF CLASS VI.

<i>n</i> of stem dropped.	<i>ēr</i> changed into <i>īs</i> .	<i>r</i> changed into <i>s</i> .
Sermo, <i>speech</i> (m.).	Pulvis, <i>dust</i> (m.).	Flōs, <i>flower</i> (m.).
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
N. ser'-mō,	pul'-vīs,	flōs,
G. ser-mō'-nīs,	pul'-vē-rīs,	flō'-rīs,
D. ser-mō'-nī,	pul'-vē-rī,	flō'-rī,
Ac. ser-mō'-nēm,	pul'-vē-rēm,	flō'-rēm,
V. ser'-mō,	pul'-vīs,	flōs,
Ab. ser-mō'-nē;	pul'-vē-rē;	flō'-rē;
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. ser-mō'-nēs,	pul'-vē-rēs,	flō'-rēs,
G. ser-mō'-nūm,	pul'-vē-rūm,	flō'-rūm,
D. ser-mōn'-ī-būs,	pul'-vēr'-ī-būs,	flōr'-ī-būs,
Ac. ser-mō'-nēs,	pul'-vē-rēs,	flō'-rēs,
V. ser-mō'-nēs,	pul'-vē-rēs,	flō'-rēs,
Ab. ser-mōn'-ī-būs.	pul'-vēr'-ī-būs.	flōr'-ī-būs.

Remark 1.—Two nouns, *sanguīs*, *sanguīn-īs*, blood, and *pollīs*, *pollīn-īs*, fine flour, change *n* of the stem into *s*.

Remark 2.—Some nouns of the fifth class, whose stems end in *ēr*, have an old form of the nominative in *ōs*: as, *hōnōs*, *arbōs*, for *hōnōr*, *arbōr*. *Cūcūmīs* (*ērīs*, masc.) is also of class II.; § 33, Rem. 1., 6.

Remark 3.—*Mās*, *mār-īs*, and *glīs*, *glīr-īs*, have *iūm* in the genitive plural; and *mūs*, *mūr-īs*, has *ūm* and *iūm*; *rūs*, *rūr-īs*, has *ē* or *ī* in the ablative singular.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nominative are masculine.

Exc. Abstracts in *io* (mostly formed by adding *io* to the supine stem of verbs) are feminine. *Būbo* is masculine and feminine.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change *er* of the stem into *is*, *r* into *s*, or *n* into *s*, are masculine.

Exc. 1. *Æs*, *crūs*, *gallīcrūs*, *jūs*, *pūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*, and *ōs*, mouth, are neuter. *Tellūs* is feminine.

Exc. 2. *Cinīs* is masculine or feminine in the singular; *cīnērēs*, ashes of the dead, is always masculine. *Pulvīs*, dust, is very rarely feminine.

EXERCISE XVI.

Vocabulary.

mōs, mōr-īs, *manner, custom.*

centūriō, -ōn-īs, *centurion.*

leō, -ōn-īs, *lion.*

mons, mont-īs (§ 31, Exc. 1),
mountain.

latrō, -ōn-īs, *robber.*

pīrātā, -æ, *pirate.*

Cātō, -ōn-īs, *Cato.*

rēbelliō, -ōn-īs, *rebellion.*

Varrō, -ōn-īs, *Varro.*

ōrātiō, -ōn-īs, *speech, oration.*

Cīcērō, -ōn-īs, *Cicero.*

ōrātōr, -ōr-īs, *orator.*

mōrē rēgīs, *after the manner of a king,*

āpūd, *among, with (prep. with ac.).*

āpūd Helvētiōs, *among the Helvetians.*

āpūd Cātōnēm, *at the house of Cato,*
with Cato.

trūcīd-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to slay.*

coen-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to sup.*

rēbelliōnēm concītārē, *to excite, raise a rebellion.*

NOTE.—*Rēbellio* and *ōrātiō*, being abstracts in *io*, are feminine; but *centūrio* is the name of a male being, and is, therefore, masculine.

Translate into English.

Cæsār, mōrē rēgīs, obsīdēs āb Helvētiīs postūlāt. Centūriō turrēs (§ 33, *Remark 2*) ædīfīcāt. Varrō consūl īn silvīs mōrē latrōnīs hābītāt. Orgētōrix āpūd Helvētiōs rēbelliōnēm concītābīt. Cīcērō ōrātōr plēbēm ōrātiōnē dēlectāt. Ōrātiō Cātōnīs nōbīlītātēm dēlectāt. Pars nōbīlītātīs āpūd rēgēm coenāt. Leōnēs īn montībūs ēt silvīs hābītāt. Latrōnēs īn silvā fīliūm rēgīnæ trūcīdābant. Rex latrōnēs pīrātasquē trūcīdābīt. Rēgīs filiæ āpūd agrīcōlām coenant. Nōbīlītās rēbelliōnēm āpūd plēbēm formīdāt. Cēcrops nōbīlītātēm concītāt. Nautæ pīrātās formīdant.

Translate into Latin.

The conversation (*sermo*) of the poet delights the queen. A lion will tear in pieces the children of Cadmus. The daughter of Cecrops gives flowers to her father-in-law. The common people are breaking the laws of the city. Marcus, the brother of Marius, was building a tower upon a hill. Crassus will sup at the house of Cicero. Cæsar dreads a rebellion among the Gauls. Cæsar demands hostages of (*from*) the Germans. The Gauls, after the manner of the Germans, burn pirates with fire. Kings slay robbers and pirates. Part of the nobility dread Cato. The poet loves Cato's daughter.

II.—FEMININE FORMS OF CLASS VI.

§ 42. Nouns which change *in* of the stem into *ō* to form the nominative:

Virgo, *a virgin* (feminine; stem *virgin*).

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>vir'-gō,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nēs,</i>
Gen.	<i>vir'-gī-nīs,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>vir'-gī-nī,</i>	<i>vir-gīn'-ī-būs,</i>
Acc.	<i>vir'-gī-nēm,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nēs,</i>
Voc.	<i>vir'-gō,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nēs,</i>
Abl.	<i>vir'-gī-nē;</i>	<i>vir-gīn'-ī-būs.</i>

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change *in* of the stem into *o* are feminine.

Exc. *Ordo*, *cardo*, and *turbo* are masculine. *Nēmo*, *hōmo*, and *margō* are masculine or feminine.

Remark.—*Cāro*, flesh, has *carnis*, &c., contracted for *cārīnīs*, and has *iūm* in the genitive plural.

EXERCISE XVII.

§ 43. *Rule of Position.*—Adverbs usually stand immediately before the words they limit.

Rule of Position.—A genitive limiting the object of a preposition usually stands between the preposition and its case: as, *in Cæsārīs hortō*.

Rule of Syntax.—Adverbs limit verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

Vocabulary.

multitūdō, -īn-īs, *multitude*.

turbō, turbīn-īs, *whirlwind*.

ōrīgō, ōrīgīn-īs, *origin*.

ordō, ordīn-īs, *rank*.

consuetūdō, -īn-īs, *custom, habit*.

magnitūdō, -īn-īs, *greatness*.

immortālītās, -āt-īs, *immortality*.

nōn (adverb), *not*.

dē (prep. with abl.), *concerning*.

pēriculūm, -ī, *danger*.

ānīmūs, -ī, *soul, mind*.

ex consuetūdīnē, *according to custom*.

dispūt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to discuss, debate, dispute*.

turb-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to confuse, disorder*.

per-turb-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to throw into great confusion, to confound*.

Translate into English.

Orātiō Cæsārīs multitūdīnēm delectāt. Equitēs Crassī multitūdīnēm hostiūm fugābunt. Cātō dē ānīmī ōrīgīnē cūm Cicerōnē dispūtāt. Magnitūdō pēriculī consulēm perturbāt. Equitēs cōpiās hostiūm turbābunt. Rex ex consuetūdīnē in Crassī hortō ambulābāt. Cicerō dē ānīmī immortālītātē dispūtābāt. Peditēs ordinēs nōn servābant. Nautae pīrātās ēt turbīnēs formīdant. Rex captīvōs nōn nēcābīt. Lūciūs ex agrīcōlæ agrō in vicūm festīnāt. Consul multitūdīnēm hostiūm nōn formīdāt. Vēlītēs in Helvētiōrūm agrīs proeliūm rēdintēgrābunt.

Translate into Latin.

The Gauls sacrifice virgins to the gods. The poet, ac-

cording to custom, was walking in Tully's field. The king of the Belgians is sacrificing bulls and sheep in the queen's garden. The Gauls do not debate concerning the origin of the soul. The Helvetians will not burn Orgetorix with fire. Cæsar will not arm the skirmishers with javelins. Cæsar rides into the city after the manner of a king. Tully, according to custom, demands hostages from the Belgians. The soldiers will confuse the ranks of the enemy. Cæsar does not dread the whirlwind.

III.—NEUTER FORMS OF CLASS VI.

§ 44. Nouns which form the nominative by changing *in* of the stem into *ĕn*, *ör* into *ūr*, *ēr* or *ör* into *ūs*, or which change the stem otherwise than as stated under masculine and feminine forms of Class VI.

NOTE.—Thus, *căpūt*, *căpūt-īs*, forms the nominative by changing *ūt* into *ūt*; *cör*, *cord-īs*; *fār*, *farr-īs*; *fěl*, *fell-īs*; *lăc*, *lact-īs*; *měl*, *mell-īs*; *ös*, *oss-īs*; and *ās*, *ass-īs*, drop the last letter of the stem.

PARADIGMS.

Verse.	Work.	Head.
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
N. <i>car'-mĕn</i> ,	<i>ö'-pūs</i> ,	<i>că'-pūt</i> ,
G. <i>car'-mĭ-nĭs</i> ,	<i>öp'-ĕ-rĭs</i> ,	<i>căp'-ĭ-tĭs</i> ,
D. <i>car'-mĭ-nĭ</i> ,	<i>öp'-ĕ-rĭ</i> ,	<i>căp'-ĭ-tĭ</i> ,
Ac. <i>car'-mĕn</i> ,	<i>ö'-pūs</i> ,	<i>că'-pūt</i> ,
V. <i>car'-mĕn</i> ,	<i>ö'-pūs</i> ,	<i>că'-pūt</i> ,
Ab. <i>car'-mĭ-nĕ</i> ;	<i>öp'-ĕ-rĕ</i> ;	<i>căp'-ĭ-tĕ</i> ;
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>car'-mĭ-nă</i> ,	<i>öp'-ĕ-ră</i> ,	<i>căp'-ĭ-tă</i> ,
G. <i>car'-mĭ-nŭm</i> ,	<i>öp'-ĕ-rŭm</i> ,	<i>căp'-ĭ-tŭm</i> ,
D. <i>car-mĭn'-ĭ-bŭs</i> ,	<i>öpĕr'-ĭ-bŭs</i> ,	<i>că-pĭt'-ĭ-bŭs</i> ,
Ac. <i>car'-mĭ-nă</i> ,	<i>öp'-ĕ-ră</i> ,	<i>căp'-ĭ-tă</i> ,
V. <i>car'-mĭ-nă</i> ,	<i>öp'-ĕ-ră</i> ,	<i>căp'-ĭ-tă</i> ,
Ab. <i>car-mĭn'-ĭ-bŭs</i> .	<i>öpĕr'-ĭ-bŭs</i> .	<i>că-pĭt'-ĭ-bŭs</i> .

Remark.—*Occipūt* has *ī* in the ablative singular; and *mēl* has *ē*, sometimes *ī*. *Os*, bone, has *ossiūm* in the genitive plural, and *ās* has *assiūm*.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change *in* into *en*, *or* into *ūr*, *ēr* or *ōr* into *ūs*, &c., are neuter.

Exc. *As*, *ass-īs*, pound; *lēpūs*, *lēpōr-īs*, hare; *oscēn*, *oscīnīs*, divining bird; and *pectēn*, *pectīn-īs*, comb, are masculine.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Vocabulary.

rōbūr, *rōbūr-īs*, *strength*.

corpūs, *corpōr-īs*, *body*.

jūs, *jūr-īs*, *justice, law* (generally unwritten law, as opposed to *lex*, written law).

mūs, *mūr-īs*, *mouse*.

port-ārē, *to carry*.

nātūrā, *-æ*, *nature*.

tard-ārē, *to hinder*.

mūnūs, *mūnēr-īs*, *gift*.

lēpūs, *lēpōr-īs*, *hare*.

foedūs, *foedēr-īs*, *treaty*.

ōnūs, *ōnēr-īs*, *burden*.

flūmēn, *flūmīn-īs*, *river*.

trān-ārē, *to swim across*.

Tībērīs, *-īs*, *the Tiber* (§ 33, Rem. 1).

nēmūs, *nēmōrīs*, *grove*.

Translate into English.

1 Dōmīnūs rōbūr servī laudāt. Rēgīnā ancillīs mūnērā dābīt. Belgæ foedūs nōn violābunt. 2 Lēpōrēs ēt mūrēs īn agrīs hābitant. Servī rēgīnæ īn oppidūm ōnērā portant. Carmīnā poētæ impērātōrēm dēlectant. Crassūs Tībērīm trānābīt. Rōbūr corpōrīs multītūdīnēm dēlectāt. Rōbūr ānīmī Cātōnēm dēlectāt. Equītēs flūmēn trānant. Cicērō dē jūrē lēgībūsqūē dispūtāt. Poētā Cæsārī carmīnā dicābīt. Magnītūdō ōpērīs consulēm nōn tardābīt. Puellæ īn Cæsārīs nēmōrē saltant. Cicērō dē ānīmī ēt corpōrīs nātūrā dispūtāt.

Translate into Latin.

1 The poet was walking with the king in Cæsar's garden. 2 The boys and girls are dancing in Tully's grove. 3 The soldiers of Orgetorix will swim across the river. 4 Whirl-



winds will dash in pieces the fleet of the enemy. The commander praises the valor of the soldiers. The consul is building ships and boats in the dock-yards of Gaul. The enemy violates the treaty. The nature of the work hinders the forces of the enemy. Davus and Balbus, Tully's slaves, will carry burdens into the city.

§ 45. IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Jū'-pī-tēr,</i>	<i>vīs, (fem.)</i>	<i>vī'-rēs,</i>
Gen. <i>Jō'-vīs,</i>	<i>vīs,</i>	<i>vīr'-ī-ŭm,</i>
Dat. <i>Jō'-vī,</i>	—	<i>vīr'-ī-bŭs,</i>
Acc. <i>Jō'-vēm,</i>	<i>vīm,</i>	<i>vī'-rēs,</i>
Voc. <i>Jū'-pī-tēr,</i>	<i>vīs,</i>	<i>vī'-rēs,</i>
Abl. <i>Jō'-vē.</i>	<i>vī;</i>	<i>vīr'-ī-bŭs.</i>

Itēr, a journey (neuter).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>ī'-tēr,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rā,</i>
Gen. <i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rīs,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rŭm,</i>
Dat. <i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rī,</i>	<i>īt-ī-nēr'-ī-bŭs.</i>
Acc. <i>ī'-tēr,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rā,</i>
Voc. <i>ī'-tēr,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rā,</i>
Abl. <i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rē;</i>	<i>īt-ī-nēr'-ī-bŭs.</i>

Jus-jūrandŭm, oath (neuter).

Nom. <i>jus-jū-ran'-dŭm,</i>	<i>jū-rā-jū-ran'-dā,</i>
Gen. <i>jū-ris-jū-ran'-dī,</i>	_____
Dat. <i>jū-rī-jū-ran'-dō,</i>	_____
Acc. <i>jus-jū-ran'-dŭm,</i>	<i>jū-rā-jū-ran'-dā,</i>
Voc. <i>jus-jū-ran'-dŭm,</i>	<i>jū-rā-jū-ran'-dā.</i>
Abl. <i>jū-rē-jū-ran'-dō;</i>	_____

Māterfāmiliās, mother of a family.

Singular.

Nom.	mā-ter-fā-mīl'-i-ās,
Gen.	ma-tris-fā-mīl'-i-ās,
Dat.	ma-trī-fā-mīl'-i-ās,
Acc.	ma-trem-fā-mīl'-i-ās,
Voc.	mā-ter-fā-mīl'-i-ās,
Abl.	ma-trē-fā-mīl'-i-ās.

Plural.

N. ma-tres-fā-mīl'-i-ās or -fāmīliārūm, &c.

In the same manner decline *pāterfāmiliās*. See § 18, *Remark 3*.

Sūpellex, furniture (fem.).

Nom.	sū-pel'-lex,
Gen.	sūpel-lec'-tī-līs,
Dat.	sūpel-lec'-tī-lī,
Acc.	sūpel-lec'-tī-lēm,
Voc.	sū-pel'-lex,
Abl.	sūpel-lec'-tī-lē or -ī.

Jēcūr, liver (neuter).

N.	jē'-cūr,
G.	jē-cūr'-ō-rīs or jēc'-ō-rīs,
D.	jē-cūr'-ō-rī or jēc'-ō-rī,
Ac.	jē'-cūr,
V.	jē'-cūr,
Ab.	jē-cūr'-ō-rē or jēc'-ō-rē, &c.

Bōs, an ox or cow (masculine or feminine).

Nom.	bōs,	bō'-vēs,
Gen.	bō'-vīs,	bō'-ūm,
Dat.	bō'-vī,	bō'-būs or bū'-būs,
Acc.	bō'-vēm,	bō'-vēs,
Voc.	bōs,	bō'-vēs,
Abl.	bō'-vē;	bō'-būs or bū'-būs.

EXERCISE XIX.

Vocabulary.

cōmēdō, -ōn-īs, *glutton*.
 prōvinciā, -æ, *province*.
 aurūm, -ī, *gold*.
 argentūm, -ī, *silver*.
 cībūs, -ī, *food*.

tent-ārē, *to attempt*.
 pēr vīm, *by force*.
 dēcōr-ārē, *to adorn*.
 vōr-ārē, *to devour, gulp down*.

Translate into English.

Helvētiī jūrējūrاندō fœdūs confirmant. Pāterfāmiliās servōs tūbā convōcāt. Impērātōr Jōvī ōvēs taurosquē mactāt. Jūgurthā, rex Nūmīdiæ, Jōvī templūm dē marmōrē dīcābīt. Helvētiī itēr pēr prōvinciām pēr vīm tentābant. Jēcīnōrā ansērūm cōmēdōnēs dēlectant. Leōnēs incōlās insulæ vōrābunt. Cōmēdō cībūm mōrē cānīs vōrāt. Gallī templā deōrūm aurō ēt argentō dēcōrant. Māterfāmiliās ancillīs cībūm dāt. Agrīcōlā gēnērō sūpellectilēm dābīt. Agrīcōlā agrōs būbūs ārāt.

Translate into Latin.

The king will not violate his oath. Farmers plough their fields with horses and oxen. Gluttons love the liver of the goose. The queen of the Belgians will sacrifice a flock of sheep to Jupiter. Dumnorix, the chief of the Æduans, will attempt a journey through the province by force. The Gauls will bring sheep and oxen to (*ad*) Cæsar. The mother of the family will give food to her children. Farmers urge on their oxen with the goad. Robbers dread the power (*vis*) of kings. The soldiers of Marius were cutting turf with their swords. The merchants will import swords into the villages of the Helvetians.

§ 46. SUMMARY OF THE RULES OF GENDER, AND PECULIAR ENDINGS.

I.—MASCULINES.

1. Nouns which change stem-vowel (*i* into *e*) and add *s*: as, *mīlēs* (stem *mīlīt*), *princeps* (stem *prīncīp*). Class III.

Exc. *Mergēs*, *forfex*, and *forpex*, feminine; *ādeps*, *cortex*, *forceps*, *imbrex*, and *ōbex*, masculine or feminine.

2. Nouns which present the stem unchanged in the nominative: as, *hōnōr*, *consūl*, *ansēr*. Class V.

Exc. 1. Unchanged stems in *āl*, *ār*, *ūr*, with *ādōr*, *æquōr*, *mar-mōr*, neuter.

Exc. 2. *Arbōr* and *lintēr*, feminine. *Cādāvēr*, *spinthēr*, *tūbēr*, *ūbēr*, *vēr*, *verbēr*, with names of trees and plants in *ēr*, are neuter. But *lavēr* and *tūbēr* (names of trees) are feminine; and *sīsēr* is masculine, in the plural. *Alēc* and *vās*, *vāsīs*, are neuter.

3. Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nominative, without adding *s*: as, *sermo*, *sermōnīs*. Class VI.

Exc. Abstracts in *io*, all feminine. (*Būbo*, masculine or feminine)

4. Nouns which change *ēr* of the stem into *īs*, *r* into *s*, *n* into *s*: as, *pulvīs*, *pulvēr-is*; *flōs*, *flōr-is*.

Exc. *Æs*, *crūs*, *jūs*, *pūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*, *ōs* (*ōr-is*), neuter; *tellūs*, feminine. *Cīnīs*, masculine or feminine in singular, always masculine in plural; *pulvīs*, masculine, rarely feminine.

II.—FEMININES.

1. Nouns which add *s* to the stem without vowel change: as, *urbs*, *lex* (*lēg-s*), *ars* (*art-s*), *arx*, (*arc-s*). Class I.

Exc. 1. Masculine, *dens* and its compounds, *fons*, *pons*, *mons*, *cliens*, *rūdēns* (rarely feminine), and compounds of *ās* and *unciā*, *pāriēs*, *pēs*, *lāpīs*, *grex*, Greek nouns in *ax*, *ix*, *yx*, *ps*, and *ās* (*antis*), with *cālix*, *fornix*, *prōdux*, *sentix*, *trādux*, and *frācēs*.

Exc. 2. Masculine or feminine, many nouns denoting living beings, with *scrobs*, *stirps*, *calx*; *frons*, forehead, rarely masc.

2. Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*: as, *vall-ī-s*, *rūp-ē-s*. Class II.

Exc. 1. Masculine and feminine, *pālumbēs*, *vātēs*, *veprēs*, *amnīs*, *anguīs*, *callīs*, *cānālīs*, *cānīs*, *clūnīs*, *corbīs*, *fīnīs* (always masculine in plural), *fūnīs*, *scrōbīs*, *tigrīs*, *torquīs*, and *āquālīs*.

Exc. 2. Masculine, *antēs, gausāpēs, gerrēs; axis, būris, caulīs, cassīs, collīs, crīnīs, ensīs, fascīs, follīs, fustīs, ignīs, mānēs, mensīs, mūgilīs, orbīs, pānīs, piscīs, postīs, sentīs, sōdālīs, torrīs, unguīs, vectīs, vermīs.*

3. Nouns which change *in* into *o*: as, *virgo, virgin-is*.
Class VI.

Exc. *Ordo, cardo, turbo*, masculine. *Nēmo, hōmo, margo*, masculine or feminine.

III.—NEUTERS.

1. Nouns which add *e* to the stem; as, *māre, mār-is*.

2. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in *āl, ār, ūr*: as, *ānīmāl, ānīmāl-is; calcār, calcār-is; fulgūr, fulgūr-is*. Class V.

Exc. *Sāl*, masculine or neuter in the singular, always masculine in the plural. Masculine, *fūr, furfūr, sālār, turtūr, vultūr*.

3. Nouns changing *in* into *ēn*; *ōr* into *ūr*; *ēr, ōr*, into *ūs, &c.* Class VI.

Exc. Masculine, as, *lēpus, oscēn, pectēn*.

N.B.—Many nouns, on account of their meaning, vary from these rules. See § 13, Rules.

IV.—PECULIAR CASE-ENDINGS.

Accusative Singular: regular ending ēm.

CLASS I.—*Pars* and *lens* have *ēm* or *īm*.

CLASS II.—Names of places, rivers, and gods, in *īs* have *īm*, sometimes *īn*. *Scaldīs* has *īn, īm*; *Līrīs* has *īm, īn, ēm*; *Lāgēr* has *īm*. *Amussīs, būris, cannābīs, cūcūmīs, mēphītīs, pelvīs, rāvīs, sēcūrīs, sīnāpīs, sītīs, tussīs, vīs*, have *īm*.

Febrīs, restīs, puppīs, turrīs, have *īm*, and sometimes *ēm*.

Bīpennīs, clāvīs, messīs, nāvīs, præsēpīs, sēmentīs, strīgītīs, have *ēm*, sometimes *īm*.

Ablative Singular; regular ending ě.

CLASS I.—*Pars, lens, sors, trīdens*, have ě or ī.

CLASS II.—Nouns which have *īm* in the accusative, with names of months in *ēr* and *īs*, have ī in the ablative. But *Bætīs, cannābīs, sīnāpīs*, have ě or ī.

Nouns which have *ēm* or *īm* in the accusative, have ě or ī in the ablative. But *restīs* has ě only.

The following have ě or ī: *amnīs, anguīs, āvis, bilīs, cīvīs, classīs, collīs, convallis, corbīs, fīnīs, fustīs, cānālīs, ignīs, mūgīlīs, orbīs, ōvis, postīs, sordēs, unguīs, vectīs*.

CLASS IV.—Nouns of this class have ī in the ablative; but names of towns have ě, and *rētē* has ě or ī.

CLASS V.—*Imbēr, pūgīl, vespēr*, have ě or ī.

Nouns in *āl* and *ār* have ī; but *baccār, jūbār, nectār, and sāl*, have ě.

CLASS VI.—*Occipūt* has ī, and *mēl* and *rūs* have ě or ī. Names of towns denoting the place where have sometimes ī; as, *Carthāgīnī, Anxūrī*. These are probably datives.

Genitive Plural; regular ending ūm.

CLASS I.—Stems ending in two consonants, with *dōs, līs, fraus, vīs, faux, nix, compēs, strīx*, have iūm.

Stems of more than one syllable in *nt* and *rt*, with national names in *ās*, have iūm, and sometimes ūm. Other nouns in *ās*, with *fornax* and *pālūs*, have ūm, sometimes iūm. *Quīrīs* and *Samnīs* have iūm.

CLASS II.—Nouns of this class have iūm; but *cānīs, jūvēnīs, fōrīs, māgīlīs, prōlēs, struēs, vātēs*, have ūm; also, generally, *apīs, strīgīlīs, vōlūcrīs*; sometimes *mensīs* and *cādēs*.

CLASS IV.—Nouns of this class have iūm.

CLASS V.—*Imbēr, lintēr, ventēr, ūtēr*, have iūm; *rēn, fūr, and lār*, have ūm or iūm.

Neuters in *āl* and *ār* have iūm.

CLASS VI. *Mās, glīs, ās, and ōs*, bone, have iūm; *mūs* has ūm or iūm. *Cāro* has *carniūm*.

Accusative Plural; regular ending ěs, neuter Ń.

Nouns which have *iŭm* in the genitive plural have an old form of the accusative in *ěis*; and neuters in *ě*, *āl*, and *ār* have *iŭ* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

TENSES EXPRESSING COMPLETED ACTION.

§ 47. I. The tenses which express *incomplete* action are the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*; those which express *completed* action are the *present-perfect* (*perfect*), *past-perfect* (*pluperfect*), and *future-perfect*. These three tenses are always formed on the same stem, called the *perfect-stem*.

II. The *perfect-stem* in the first conjugation is formed by adding *-āv-* to the *present-stem*: as, present-stem, *ām-*; perfect-stem, *ām-āv-*.

III. The *present-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *present* time: as, *pres. cœnŏ, I sup*; *pres. perf. cœnāvī, I have supped*. The same form of the verb is also used to express an action *indefinitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or completion. This is called the *aorist-perfect*, or *indefinite-perfect*; as, *cœnāvī, I supped* (at some indefinite past time).

IV. The *past-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *past* time: as, *imp. cœnābām, I was supping*; *past-perf. cœnāv-ĕrām, I had supped*.

V. The *future-perfect* tense expresses action completed in *future* time: as, *fut. cœnābŏ, I shall sup*; *future-perf. cœnāv-ĕrŏ, I shall have supped*.

ENDINGS, INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Present-Perf.	Past-Perf.	Future-Perf.
	<i>Singular.</i>		
1st Person,	ī,	ě-rām,	ě-rō,
2d “	is'-tī,	ě-rās,	ě-rīs,
3d “	īt;	ě-rāt;	ě-rīt;
	<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Person,	ī-mūs,	ě-rā'-mūs,	ěr'-ī-mūs,
2d “	is'-tīs,	ě-rā'-tīs,	ěr'-ī-tīs,
3d “	ě'-runt or ě'-rě.	ě-rant.	ě-rint.

By adding these endings to the perfect stem, *ām-āv-*, of *āmārě*, we obtain the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present-Perfect, *have loved* (Aorist-Perfect, *loved*).

Singular.

ā-mā'-vī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
ām-ā-vis'-tī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
ā-mā'-vīt,	<i>he has loved.</i>

Plural.

ā-māv'-ī-mūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
ām-ā-vis'-tīs,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
ām-ā-vě'-runt or -rě,	<i>they have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *had*.

Singular.

ā-māv'-ě-rām,	<i>I had loved,</i>
ā-māv'-ě-rās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
ā-māv'-ě-rāt,	<i>he had loved.*</i>

Plural.

ā-māv'-ě-rā'-mūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
ā-māv'-ě-rā'-tīs,	<i>ye had loved,</i>
ā-māv'-ě-rant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future-Perfect, *shall* or *will* have.

Singular.

ǎ-māv'-ě-rǒ,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
ǎ-māv'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
ǎ-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>he will have loved.</i>

Plural.

ǎm-ā-věr'-ī-mūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
ǎm-ā-věr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye will have loved,</i>
ǎ-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

Remark 1.—A few verbs of the first conjugation form the perfect by adding *u* to the present-stem; as, *sēc-āt*, he cuts; *sēc-u-īt*, he has cut;—or by lengthening the present-stem; as, *jŭv-āt* (*u* short), he helps; *jŭv-īt* (*u* long), he has helped.

Remark 2.—The *supine-stem* is generally formed in the first conjugation by adding *-āt* to the present-stem; as, *āmo*, *ām-āt-ūm*. The ending of the supine is *-ūm*.

EXERCISE XX.

Vocabulary.

dō, dārē, dēd-i, dāt-ūm, *to give.*

nēc-ō, nēc-ārē, nēc-āvi, nēc-ātūm (*rarely* nectūm), *to kill.*

sēc-ō, sēc-ārē, sēc-u-i, sect-ūm and sēc-ātūm, *to cut.*

Translate into English.

Germānī in flūminībūs lāvānt. Rex filiō regnūm dēdīt. Princeps captīvōs vēnēnō nēcāvīt. Milītēs cæspītēs glādiīs sēcuerunt. Orgētōrix lēgēs Helvētiōrūm violāvīt. Helvētiū itēr pēr prōvinciām pēr vīm tentāvērunt. Principēs Gallōrūm Cæsārī obsidēs dēdērant. Cæsār cūm Gallīs fœdūs jūrējūrāndō confirmāvērāt. Lŭpī ēt leōnēs incōlās insulæ vōrāvērunt. Jūgurthā mōrē rēgis ā Rōmānīs obsidēs postulāvērāt. Servi ēquōs infrēnāvērint. Crassī cōpiæ in Gallōrūm agrīs hiēmāvērant. Latrōnēs trāmītēs pēr

silvām explōrāvērunt. Equitēs Cæsārīs hostiūm fundī-
tōrēs fūgāvērant, ēt īn vīcūm festīnābant. Māriūs nūmērūm
obsidūm dūplicāvit. Māgistēr puērō librūm dēdīt.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero disputed concerning the origin of the soul. The consul had routed the forces of the enemy by land and sea. The brother of Cicero the orator called together the common people. Balbus, Tully's slave, brought burdens into the city. The queen had walked in the farmer's garden. The king's son had given (to) his sister a necklace. The boys loved the master's children. The ambassadors of the Æduans had asked aid. The nobility dreaded a rebellion among the common people. Cæsar hastened into Gaul. The Gauls prepared snares for Crassus.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 48. Nouns whose genitive-ending is *ūs* (long) are of the fourth declension. The nominative-endings are *ūs* and *ū*.

Remark 1.—These nouns were originally of the third declension, the termination *ūs* of the genitive being contracted from *uīs*.

	<i>Masculine Endings.</i>		<i>Neuter Endings.</i>	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. and V.	ūs,	ūs,	ū,	uā,
Gen.	ūs,	uūm,	ūs,	uūm,
Dat.	uī,	ībūs (ūbūs),	ū,	ībūs (ūbūs),
Acc.	ūm,	ūs,	ū,	uā,
Abl.	ū ;	ībūs (ūbūs).	ū ;	ībūs (ūbūs).

PARADIGM.

Fructūs, *fruit* (masc.).Cornū, *a horn* (neut.).*Singular.**Plural.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. fruc'-tūs, fruc'-tūs,

cor'-nū, cor'-nu-ă,

G. fruc'-tūs, fruc'-tu-ŭm,

cor'-nūs, cor'-nu-ŭm,

D. fruc'-tu-ī, fruc'-tī-būs,

cor'-nū, cor'-nī-būs,

Ac. fruc'-tūm, fruc'-tūs,

cor'-nū, cor'-nu-ă,

V. fruc'-tūs, fruc'-tūs,

cor'-nū, cor'-nu-ă,

Ab. fruc'-tū; fruc'-tī-būs.

cor'-nū; cor'-nī-būs.

Remark 2.—Some nouns of this declension have likewise the inflection of the second declension, especially in the genitive singular: *as, sēnātūs, sēnātī*.

Remark 3.—A contracted form of the dative in *ū* sometimes occurs.

Remark 4.—The following nouns have *ūbūs* in the dative and ablative plural:—

Acūs, *a needle*.Artūs, *a joint*.Partūs, *a birth*.Spēcūs, *a den*.Arcūs, *a bow*.Lēcūs, *a lake*.Pēcū, *a flock*.Tribūs, *a tribe*.

Gēnū, *a knee*; *portūs*, *a harbor*; *tōnītrūs*, *thunder*; and *vērū*, *a spit*, have *ībūs* or *ūbūs*.

Remark 5.—*Dōmūs*, *a house*, is thus declined:—

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. dō'-mūs,

dō'-mūs,

Gen. dō'-mūs or dō'-mī,

dōm'-u-ŭm or dō-mō'-rūm,

Dat. dōm'-u-ī or dō'-mō,

dōm'-ī-būs,

Acc. dō'-mūm,

dō'-mūs or dō'-mōs,

Voc. dō'-mūs,

dō'-mūs,

Abl. dō'-mō;

dōm'-ī-būs.

Dōmūs in the genitive singular generally means of *a house*; *domī*, *at home*. The ablative *domū* is found. *Domōrūm* and *domōs* are the most common forms of the genitive and accusative plural.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns of the fourth declension in *ūs* are masculine; those in *ū*, neuter.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:—

Acūs, <i>needle.</i>	Idūs, <i>Ides.</i>	Mānūs, <i>hand.</i>	Tribūs, <i>tribe.</i>
Dōmūs, <i>house.</i>	Ficūs, <i>fig.</i>	Porticūs, <i>gallery.</i>	

Exc. 2. *Pēnūs*, storehouse, is masculine or feminine. *Sēcūs*, sex, is neuter. *Spēcūs*, den, is masculine, rarely feminine or neuter.

Remark 6.—Names of female beings, etc., are feminine by the general rule (§ 13, Rule 2). But *myrtūs*, a myrtle-tree, is sometimes masculine.

Remark 7.—*Cornūs*, *fīcūs*, *laurūs*, and *myrtūs*, are also of the second declension; and *pēnūs* is of the second, third, and fourth; *pēnūs*, -ūs or -ī, masculine and feminine; *pēnūs*, -ōrīs, neuter.

EXERCISE XXI.

Vocabulary.

fluctūs, -ūs, <i>wave.</i>	Rhēnūs, -ī, <i>Rhine.</i>
hōmō, -īn-īs, <i>man.</i>	exercitūs, -ūs, <i>army.</i>
Lēmānūs, -ī, <i>Lemannus.</i>	adventūs, -ūs, <i>arrival.</i>
expect-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to await.</i>	
cre-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to create.</i>	

Translate into English.

Agrīcōlā īn pēnūm mergītēs portāvērāt. Deūs fructūs arbōrūm creāvit. Poētā īn dōmō ambūlāt. Agrīcōlā dōmūm ædificāt. Deūs taurīs cornuā dēdit. Deūs hōmīnībūs ānimōs dēdit. Agrīcōlā īn dōmūm fructūs terræ portāt. Vēnātōr arcūm sāgittasquē pārāt. Nautæ fluctūs nōn formīdant. Cæsār ā lācū Lēmānō ād flūmēn Rhēnūm festīnāvīt. Cæsār adventūm lēgātōrūm expectāvērāt. Impērātōrīs adventūs exercitūm dēlectāt. Leōnēs īn spēcūbūs hābītant.

Translate into Latin.

The soldiers bathed in the lake. The consul will hasten with the army to Lake Lemannus. The master will build houses for his slaves in the field. Marcus gave (to) his

son Lucius a bow and arrows. The boys awaited their father's arrival. The waves will dash in pieces the enemy's ships. The sailors fastened the yards to the masts with ropes. Lions do not dread the horns of bulls. The chief of the Germans lives in a cave. A hunter wounded the consul's son-in-law in the king's forest.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 49. Nouns which have *eī* in the genitive from *ēs* of the nominative are of the fifth declension. They are all feminine except *diēs*, day (masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masculine in the plural), and *mēridiēs*, midday (masculine).

ENDINGS.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. and V.	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,
Gen.	<i>eī</i> ,	<i>ērūm</i> ,
Dat.	<i>eī</i> ,	<i>ēbūs</i> ,
Acc.	<i>ēm</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>ē</i> ;	<i>ēbūs</i> ,

PARADIGM.

<i>Rēs, a thing.</i>		<i>Diēs, a day.</i>		
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom.	<i>rēs,</i>	<i>rēs,</i>	<i>di'-ēs,</i>	<i>di'-ēs,</i>
Gen.	<i>rē'-ī,</i>	<i>rē'-rūm,</i>	<i>di-ē'-ī,</i>	<i>di-ē'-rūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>rē'-ī,</i>	<i>rē'-būs,</i>	<i>di-ē'-ī,</i>	<i>di-ē'-būs,</i>
Acc.	<i>rēm,</i>	<i>rēs,</i>	<i>di'-ēm,</i>	<i>di'-ēs,</i>
Voc.	<i>rēs,</i>	<i>rēs,</i>	<i>di'-ēs,</i>	<i>di'-ēs,</i>
Abl.	<i>rē;</i>	<i>rē'-būs.</i>	<i>di'-ē;</i>	<i>di-ē'-būs.</i>

NOTE.—A vowel before another vowel is short: as, *rei*. But *e* between two *i*'s is long: as, *di-ē-ī*.

Remark 1.—*Diēs*, day, is rarely feminine, and thus only when it denotes a fixed day.

Remark 2.—The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or *ī* instead of *ēi*.

Remark 3.—There are only about eighty nouns of the fifth declension, and but two of these, *rēs* and *diēs*, are complete in the plural. *Acīēs*, *effigiēs*, *elūviēs*, *fāciēs*, *glāciēs*, *prōgēniēs*, *sēriēs*, *spēcīēs*, *spēs*, are not found in the genitive, dative, and ablative plural; and the rest are not found in the plural at all.

Remark 4.—All nouns of this declension, except *fīdēs*, faith; *rēs*, a thing; *spēs*, hope; and *plēbēs*, the common people, end in *iēs*; and all nouns in *iēs* are of this declension, except *ābiēs*, *āriēs*, *pāriēs*, *quiēs*, and *rēquiēs*, which are of the third declension.

Remark 5.—The noun *respublicā*, the commonwealth, is compounded of the noun *rēs* and the adjective *publicā*, and is thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. and Voc.	res-pub'-lī-cā,	N. and V.	res-pub'-lī-cæ,
Gen. and Dat.	re-ī-pub'-lī-cæ,	Gen.	rē-rum-pub-lī-cā'-rūm,
Accusative,	rem-pub'-lī-cām,	Dat.	rē-bus-pub'-lī-cīs,
Ablative,	rē-pub'-lī-cā;	Acc.	res-pub'-lī-cās.

EXERCISE XXII.

sēnātūs, -ūs, senate (§ 48, Remark 2).

plēbēs, -ēi, common people.

tribūnūs, -ī, tribune.

āciēs, -ēi, edge, point; also line of battle.

pārens, -ent-īs, parent.

fāciēs, -ēi, face.

vultūs, -ūs, countenance.

sālūs, salūt-īs, safety, health.

nox, noct-īs, night.

currūs, -ūs, chariot.

fīdēs, -ēi, faith, promise.

spēs, -ēi, hope.

victōriā, -æ, victory.

prōgēniēs, -ēi, offspring.

effigiēs, -ēi, likeness, image.

præda, -æ, booty.

scēlūs, -ēr-īs, crime.

dictātōr, -ōr-īs, dictator.

Translate into English.

Sēnātūs dictātōrī sālūtēm urbīs mandāvērāt. Animālīā prōgēniēm āmant. Leōnēs fāciēm vultumquē hōmīnīs

formīdant. Spēs prædæ latrōnēs ād scēlērā concītāt. Lūciūs, tribūnūs plēbīs, centūrionēs convōcāvīt. Marcūs filiūm āciē glādiī vulnērāvīt. Spēs victōriæ exercitūm dēlectāvīt. Jūgurthā, rex Nūmīdiæ, fidēm nōn servāvīt. Tribūnī libertātēm plēbēi servāvērunt. Crassūs consūl īn templō effigiēm Jōvis collōcāvīt. Helvētiī exercitūm Cassiī consūlis fūgāvērē. Pārentēs prōgēniēm āmant. Rēgīnā poētæ currūm ēquosquē dēdīt. Turbinēs classēm hostiūm profliḡāvērē.

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar put his army into winter quarters. The dictator will slay robbers and pirates. Crassus the tribune will not violate his promise. The hope of victory and booty urges the chiefs to (*ad*) war. The queen's daughter will set-up (*collocare*) an image of Jupiter in the king's garden. The queen adorned the image of Jupiter with silver and gold. The boy wounded his brother's foot with the point of a knife. The senate committed to the tribunes the liberty of the common people. God created day and night. The waves of the sea dashed in pieces the ships of the enemy. The poet's children loved their parents.

VARIABLE NOUNS.

§ 50. Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclitics*.

1.—HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

(*a.*) Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural: as,
 Avernūs, *a hill in Campania.* Pangæūs, *a promontory in Thrace.*
 Dindŷmūs, *a hill in Phrygia.* Tœnārūs, *a promontory in Laconia.*
 Ismārūs, *a hill in Thrace.* Tartārūs, *hell.*
 Mænālūs, *a hill in Arcadia.* Taygētūs, *a hill in Laconia.*

(b.) Masculine in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural: as, *jōcūs*, a jest, plural *jōcī* and *jōcā*; *lōcūs*, a place, plural *lōcī*, passages in books, places; *lōcā*, places; *sībīlūs*, a hissing, plural *sībīlā*, rarely *sībīlī*.

(c.) Feminine in the singular, neuter in the plural: as, *carbāsūs*, a sail, plural *carbāsā*; *Pergāmūs*, the citadel of Troy, plural *Pergāmā*.

(d.) Neuter in the singular, masculine in the plural: as, *Argōs*, Argos, a city in Greece, plural *Argī*; *Elýsiūm*, the Elysian fields, plural *Elýsī*; *cælūm*, heaven, plural *cæli*.

NOTE.—*Argōs*, in the singular, is used only in the nominative and the accusative.

(e.) Neuter in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural: as, *frēnūm*, a bridle, plural *frēnī* and *frēnā*; *rastrūm*, a rake, plural *rastrī* and *rastrā*.

(f.) Neuter in the singular, feminine in the plural: as, *balneūm*, a bath, plural *balneæ*, seldom *balneā*; *ēpūlūm*, a banquet, plural *ēpūlæ*.

(g.) Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural: as, *dēliciā* or *dēliciūm*, plural *dēliciæ*.

2.—HETEROCLITES.

(a.) Second and third declension in the singular, and third in the plural: as, *jūgērūm*, an acre; gen. *jūgērī* or *jūgērīs*; abl. *jūgērē* or *jūgērō*; plural nom. and acc. *jūgērā*; gen. *jūgērūm*; abl. *jūgērīs*, and *jūgērībūs* from the obsolete *jūgūs* or *jūgēr*.

(b.) Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural: as, *vās*, *vāsīs*, a vessel, plural *vāsā*, *-ōrūm*.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 51. Defective nouns want some of their cases. The following list contains such nouns as are most defective.

Accētū, abl.; a calling for.

Admōnītū, abl.; admonition.

Ambāgē, abl.; a winding stair;—pl.
entire.

Arcessītū, abl.; a sending for.

Astūs, nom.; *astū*, abl.; craft;—
astūs, acc. pl.

Chaōs, nom., acc.; *chaō*, abl.; chaos.

Cassēm, *acc.*; cassē, *abl.*; a net;—
pl. entire.

Coactū, *abl.*; constraint.

Compēdis, *gen.*; a fetter; *nom.* and
dat. not used;—*pl. compēdēs,*
-iūm, -ibūs.

Concessū, *abl.*; permission.

Daps, *nom.*; scarcely used; dāpis,
gen. &c.; a feast;—wants *gen. pl.*

Dātū, *abl.*; a giving.

Despīcātuī, *dat.*; contempt.

Dīcīs, *gen.*; as, dīcīs grātiā, for
form's sake.

Dītiōnīs, *gen.*; -ī, *dat.*; -ēm, *acc.*;
-ē, *abl.*; power.

Diū, *abl.*; in the daytime.

Dīvisuī, *dat.*; a dividing.

Ebūr, *ivory*;—not used in the plural.

Efflāgītātū, *abl.*; importunity.

Epōs, *nom.* and *acc.*; an epic poem.

Ergō, *abl.* (or *adv.*); for the sake.

Essēdās, *acc. pl.*; war-chariots.

Fās, *nom., acc.*; right.

Faucē, *abl.*; the throat;—*pl. entire.*

Fēmīnīs, *gen.*; -ī, *dat.*; -ē, *abl.*; the
thigh;—*pl. fēmīnā, -ibūs.*

Fōrīs, *nom.* and *gen.*; -ēm, *acc.*; -ē,
abl.; a door;—*pl. entire.*

Grātēs, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*;—grātī-
būs, *abl.*; thanks.

Hebdōmādām, *acc.*; a week.

Impētīs, *gen.*; -ē, *abl.*; a shock.

Infītiās, *acc. pl.*; a denial.

Ingrātiīs, *abl. pl.* (used adverbially); against one's will.

Injussū, *abl.*; without command.

Instār, *nom., acc.*; a likeness.

Invītātū, *abl.*; an invitation.

Jūgēris, *gen.*; -ē, *abl.*; an acre;—
pl. jūgērā, -ūm, -ibūs.

Jussū, *abl.*; command.

Mandātū, *abl.*; a command.

Nātū, *abl.*; by birth.

Naucī, *gen., with nōn*; rarely nau-
cō, *dat.*; a trifle.

Nēfās, *nom., acc.*; wickedness.

Nēmō, nobody, wants the *pl.*; *gen.*
and *abl.* rarely used.

Nīhīl, or nīhīlūm, *nom.* and *acc.*; -ī,
gen.; -ō, *abl.*; nothing.

Noctū, *abl.*; by night.

Opīs, *gen.*; ōpī, *dat.*; ōpēm, *acc.*;
ōpē, *abl.*; help;—*pl. entire.*

Oppōsitū, *abl.*; an opposing;—*pl.*
oppōsitūs, *acc.*

Opūs, *nom., acc.*; need.

Os, the mouth, wants the *gen. pl.*

Pondō, *abl.*; in weight.

Prēcī, *dat.*; -ēm, *acc.*; -ē, *abl.*;
prayer;—*pl. entire.*

Promptū, *abl.*; readiness.

Rōgātū, *abl.*; a request.

Rōs, dew, wants *gen. pl.*

Rūs, the country, wants *gen., dat.,*
and *abl. pl.*

Spontīs, *gen.*; -ē, *abl.*; will, accord.

Vēnuī and -ō, *dat.*; -ūm, *acc.*; -ō,
abl.; sale.

Vīcīs, *gen.*; -ī, *dat.*; -ēm, *acc.*; -ē,
abl.; change;—*pl. entire, except*
gen.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 52. 1. All verbs that have ēre (penult long) in the Infinitive-Present are of the second conjugation.

2. The perfect-stem in verbs of this conjugation is usually formed by adding *ŭ*, and the supine-stem by adding *ŭt*, to the present-stem: as, *mŏn-eo*, I advise; *mŏn-u-ī*, I have advised, supine *mŏn-ŭt-ŭm*.

ENDINGS OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Singular.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present.</i>	eŏ,	ēs,	ēt,
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ē'-bām,	ē'-bās,	ē'-bāt,
<i>Future.</i>	ē'-bō;	ē'-bīs;	ē'-bīt;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present.</i>	ē'-mūs,	ē'-tīs,	ent,
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ē-bā'-mūs,	ē-bā'-tīs,	ē'-bant,
<i>Future.</i>	ēb'-ī-mūs.	ēb'-ī-tīs.	ē'-bunt.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

Singular.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present-perf.</i>	ī,	is'-tī,	īt,
<i>Past-perf.</i>	ē-rām,	ē-rās,	ē-rāt,
<i>Future-perf.</i>	ērō;	ērīs;	ērīt;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present-perf.</i>	ī-mūs,	is'-tīs,	ē'-runt or ē'-rē,
<i>Past-perf.</i>	ē-rā'-mūs,	ē-rā'-tīs,	ē-rant,
<i>Future-perf.</i>	ēr'-ī-mūs.	ēr'-ī-tīs.	ē-rint.

PARTIAL PARADIGM ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
<i>I advise.</i>	<i>I was advising.</i>	<i>I shall or will advise.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> mǒ'-neǒ,	<i>S.</i> mǒ-ně'-bǎm,	<i>S.</i> mǒ-ně'-bǒ,
mǒ'-nēs,	mǒ-ně'-bās,	mǒ-ně'-bīs,
mǒ'-nēt ;	mǒ-ně'-bāt ;	mǒ-ně'-bīt ;
<i>Plur.</i> mǒ-ně'-mūs,	<i>P.</i> mǒn-ē-bā'-mūs,	<i>P.</i> mǒ-nēb'-ī-mūs,
mǒ-ně'-tīs,	mǒn-ē-bā'-tīs,	mǒ-nēb'-ī-tīs,
mǒ'-nent.	mǒ-ně'-bant.	mǒ-ně'-bunt.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

Present-perfect.	Past-perfect.	Future-perfect.
<i>I advised or have advised.</i>	<i>I had advised.</i>	<i>I shall have advised.</i>
<i>S.</i> mǒn'-u- is ,	<i>S.</i> mǒ-nu'-ě-rǎm,	<i>S.</i> mǒ-nu'-ě-rǒ,
mǒn-u-īš'-tī,	mǒ-nu'-ě-rās,	mǒ-nu'-ě-rīs,
mǒn'-u-īt ;	mǒ-nu'-ě-rāt ;	mǒ-nu'-ě-rīt ;
<i>P.</i> mǒ-nū'-ī-mūs,	<i>P.</i> mǒn-u-ě-rā'-mūs,	<i>P.</i> mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-mūs,
mǒn-u-īs'-tīs,	mǒn-u-ě-rā'-tīs,	mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-tīs,
mǒn-u-ē'-runt or -ē'-rě.	mǒ-nū'-ě-rant.	mǒ-nu'-ě-rint.

EXERCISE XXIII.

§ 53. Vocabulary.

impētūs, -ūs, *attack*.
frūmentūm, -ī, *corn*.
lēgiō, -ōnis (f.), *legion*.

castrā, -ōrūm, *pl., camp*.
frēnūm, -ī (*pl. -ī and -ā*), *bit*.
cornū, -ūs, *horn*.

hāb-eǒ, hāb-ērě, hābu-ī, hābīt-ūm, *to have, hold*.
prāb-eǒ, (*for prae-habeo*), prāb-ērě, prābu-ī, prābīt-ūm, *to furnish, to offer*.
lāt-eǒ, lāt-ērě, lātu-ī (no sup.), *to lie hid*.
terr-eǒ, terr-ērě, terru-ī, terrīt-ūm, *to frighten*.
per-terr-eǒ, -ērě, -uī, -ītūm, *to frighten thoroughly, terrify*.
tīm-eǒ, tīm-ērě, tīmu-ī (no sup.), *to fear*.
mōv-eǒ, mōv-ērě, mōv-ī, mōt-ūm, *to move*.
mān-eǒ, mān-ērě, māns-ī, māns-ūm, *to remain*.

mord-eō, mord-ērē, mōmord-ī, mors-ūm, *to champ, bite.*

tond-eō, tond-ērē, tōtond-ī, tons-ūm, *to shear.*

vid-eō, vid-ērē, vid-ī, vis-ūm, *to see.*

Translate into English.

Plebs nōbilitātēm tīmuīt. Puēr taurūm cornībūs hābēbāt. Impētūs ēquitūm hostēs terrēt. Puēr librūm īn mǎnū hābēt. Agrīcōlāe ōvēs tōtondērant. Cānīs ancillām mordēbīt. Rex Germānōrūm castrā mōvērāt. Plebs īn rēgīs hortō rēgīnām vīdīt. Leōnēs īn spēcūbūs (§ 48, *Remark 4*) lātent. Magnītūdō pēriculī servōs perterrēbīt. Nautæ fluctūs turbīnesquē nōn timent. Exercītūs Crassī īn hībernīs mansīt. Gallī Cæsārīs exercītūī frūmentūm prābēbunt. Equī frēnā mōmordērē. Hostēs impētūm ēquitūm tīmēbant. Māriūs consūl castrā ād collēm mōvērāt.

Translate into Latin.

The chief of the Æduans feared the cruelty of the Helvetians. The attack of the cavalry thoroughly frightened the enemy's archers and slingers. The skirmishers lay hid in the forest. The works of Cicero the orator delight the poet. The farmers had not sheared their sheep. The horses were champing their bits. The king and queen remained in the temple. The Helvetians had moved their camp from the hill to the river. The Gauls furnished corn to Cæsar's army.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 54. 1. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a noun.

2. Adjectives are declined like nouns; they are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

CLASS I.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 55. Adjectives of this class have their masculine and neuter endings of the second declension, their feminine endings of the first.

PARADIGM.

Bön-ūs, bön-ă, bön-ŭm, *good*.

Singular.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
bŏ'-nūs,	bŏ'-nă,	bŏ'-nŭm,
bŏ'-nī,	bŏ'-næ,	bŏ'-nī,
bŏ'-nō,	bŏ'-næ,	bŏ'-nō,
bŏ'-nŭm,	bŏ'-năm,	bŏ'-nŭm,
bŏ'-nĕ.	bŏ'-nă,	bŏ'-nŭm,
bŏ'-nō;	bŏ'-nā;	bŏ'-nō;

Plural.

bŏ'-nī,	bŏ'-næ,	bŏ'-nă,
bŏ-nŏ'-rŭm,	bŏ-nă'-rŭm,	bŏ-nŏ'-rŭm,
bŏ'-nīs,	bŏ'-nīs,	bŏ'-nīs,
bŏ'-nōs,	bŏ'-nās,	bŏ'-nă,
bŏ'-nī,	bŏ'-næ,	bŏ'-nă,
bŏ'-nīs.	bŏ'-nīs.	bŏ'-nīs.

Remark 1.—Participles and pronouns in *ūs* are declined like *bōnūs*.

Remark 2.—Adjectives whose stems end in *ēr* (short) generally drop the ending *ūs* in the nominative, and *ē* in the vocative; and most of them drop *ē* of the stem in inflection: as,

pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,
pulchrī, pulchræ, pulchrī, &c.

Remark 3.—The following retain *ē* of the stem:—

Aspēr, *rough*; extēr, *foreign*; gibbēr, *crook-backed*; lācēr, *torn*; libēr, *free*; mīśēr, *wretched*; prospēr, *prosperous*; tēnēr, *tender*; and compounds of *fer* and *gēr*: as, cornīgēr, *horned*. Thus,

tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm,
tēnērī, tēnēræ, tēnērī, &c.

Remark 4.—Altēr, *the other of two*, has altērā, altērūm; and dextēr, *right*, has sometimes dextērā, dextērūm; sātūr, *full*, has sātūrā, sātūrūm.

§ 56. 1. Six adjectives in *ūs*, and three in *ēr*, have their genitive singular in *īūs*, and their dative in *ī*, in all the genders:—

Aliūs, *another* (of several).

Tōtūs, *whole*.

Nullūs, *no*.

Ullūs, *any*.

Sōlūs, *alone*.

Unūs, *one*.

Altēr, -tērā, -tērūm, *another* (of two).

Utēr, -trā, -trūm, *which of the two*.

Neutēr, -trā, -trūm, *neither*.

2. In the same way are declined the other compounds of *ūtēr*,—namely, *ūterquē*, each of two; *ūtercumquē*, *ūterlibēt*, and *ūtervis*, which of the two you please, genitive *utrīusquē*, &c.; also *altērūtēr*, one of two, genitive *altērutrīūs*, and sometimes *altērīūs utrīūs*; dative *altērutrī*. So *altērūterquē* and *ūnusquisquē*.

3. The following pronominal genitives end in *ius*:—*illīūs*, *istīūs*, *ipsīūs*, *eius* (*eius*), *cujus* (*cuius*), *huius* (*huius*).

4. *Nullūs, sölūs, tötūs, ullūs*, and *ūnūs* are thus declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ū'-nūs,	ū'-nă,	ū'-nūm,
Gen.	ū-nī'-ūs,	ū-nī'-ūs,	ū-nī'-ūs,
Dat.	ū'-nī,	ū'-nī,	ū'-nī,
Acc.	ū'-nūm,	ū'-nām,	ū'-nūm,
Voc.	ū'-nē,	ū'-nă,	ū'-nūm,
Abl.	ū'-nō.	ū'-nă.	ū'-nō.

The plural is regular, like that of *bönūs*.

Remark 1.—*Aliūs* has *āliūd* in the nominative and the accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *āliūs* contracted for *āliūs*.

Remark 2.—When *āliūs* is repeated, the first means *one*; the second, *another*: as, *āliūd dicit, āliūd facit*, he says *one thing*, he does *another*. *Aliūs* is often repeated with a single predicate, where in English we use two propositions: as, *āliūs āliūd clāmītabāt*, one shouted one thing, another another. *Altēr* is repeated where only *two* things are referred to: as, *altēr lēgit, altēr scribīt*, one reads, *the other* writes.

Remark 3.—Some of these adjectives occasionally form their genitive and dative regularly.

EXERCISE XXIV.

§ 57. Vocabulary.

alt-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *high, deep*.

long-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *long*.

lāt-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *broad*.

magn-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *great, large*.

mult-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *much, many*.

dens-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *thick*.

bēnign-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *kind*.

fid-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *faithful*.

imprōb-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *wicked*.

inīqu-ūs, -ă, -ūm, *unjust*.

jūdex, jūdīc-īs, *judge*.

Thrax, Thrācīs, *Thracian*.

1. *Rule of Position.*—The adjective, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun which it limits; as, *puēr bönūs*, *a good boy*.

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—Adjective words agree with the nouns which they limit, in gender, number, and case: as, *puēr bōnūs, a good boy; puellā pulchrā, a beautiful girl; flūmēn lātūm, a broad river.*

Translate into English.

Rex Thrācūm in collē turrēs altās* ædificāt. Fīliūs imprōbūs patrē lāpīdē vulnērāvērāt. Silvæ densæ nunciōs rēginæ terruērunt. Vēnātōr cānēs fidōs āmāt. Imprōbī hōmīnēs faciēm vultumquē jūdīcīs timent. Plēbēs īnīquūm jūdīcēm formīdāt. Nūbēs densæ lūnām obscurāvērāt. Equitēs hostiūm flūmēn lātūm trānābunt. Agrīcōlæ filiī bōbūs magnīs agrōs ārāvērē. Cæsār multā oppidā expugnāvīt. Puēr cultrūm longūm in mănū hābuīt. Puērī bōnī pārentēs āmant. Māgistēr bēnignūs bōnīs puērīs librōs dēdīt.

Translate into Latin.

The consul slew many robbers. The kind mother gives food to her children. The wicked consul killed the tribunes of the people. The chief of the Thracians lay hid in the king's grove. The shepherd armed his sons with long knives. The enemy's skirmishers swam across a broad river. The faithful servants defended their master with knives and stones. The attack of the enemy did not frighten the general. The great commander slew many captives. The hunter saw many wolves in the forest. Wicked men do not fear the countenance of an unjust judge. The kind master, according to custom, was advising the boys.

EXERCISE XXV.

§ 58. 1. *Rule of Position*.—When a noun is limited

* See model of analysis 2. (App. XI.)

by an adjective and a genitive, the adjective is often put first: as, *fīdūs Tullīi servūs*, *Tully's faithful slave*.

Remark.—The genitive usually follows *pars*, *nūmērūs*, *multitudo*, etc.: as, *magnā pars nobilitātis*.

2. *Rule of Position.*—An adjective limiting the object of a preposition is often put before the preposition: as, *magnō in praeliō*, in a great battle.

3. *Rule of Syntax.*—With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole: as, *unūs militūm*, one of the soldiers; *multī equitūm*, many of the horsemen.

Remark.—This is usually called the *partitive genitive*. The partitive word, if an adjective, agrees in gender with the word denoting the whole. *Unūs militūm* is equivalent to *unūs milēs militūm*.

Translate into English.

Magnæ hostiūm cōpiæ in silvā lātuērunt. Magnā pars nobilitātis apūd Crassūm cōnābant. Cīvēs multī magnā in urbē hābitant. Consul in hostiūm castris multōs milites vidit. Pastor ovēs multosquē agnōrūm tōtondērāt. Impērātōr magnūs unō in praeliō cōpiās hostiūm fūgāvit. Altēr fratrūm magnūm ad oppidūm festināt. Unā Rōmānōrūm lēgiō tōtūm hostiūm exercitūm perterruit. Neutrā ancillārūm cānēs tīmēt. Germānī in praeliō nullūm ordinē servant. Rex Thrācūm nullām reipublicæ lēgēm violāvērāt. Unā in urbē hōmīnēs multī hābitant. Impētūs hostiūm nulliūs lēgiōnis ordinēs turbāvit.

Translate into Latin.

The Thracians will furnish corn to the consul's great army. One of the skirmishers saw the enemy's horsemen

in the dense forest. The shepherd's faithful dog defended the sheep from (ā) the wolves. The general, after the manner of a king, demanded a great number of hostages. The whole army dreaded the cruelty of the general. The inhabitants of the whole village feared the farmer's big bull. Cæsar feared no danger. A great multitude of footmen hastened to the camp.

CLASS II.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 59. *Adjectives having two endings in the nominative.*

Adjectives of this class have *īs* in the masculine and feminine, and *ě* in the neuter, and are of the third declension.

PARADIGM.

Brěv-īs, short.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N., V.	<i>brě'-vīs,</i>	<i>brě'-vě,</i>	<i>brě'-vēs,</i>	<i>brě'-vi-ă,</i>
Gen.	<i>brě'-vīs,</i>	<i>brě'-vīs,</i>	<i>brě'-vi-ŭm,</i>	<i>brě'-vi-ŭm,</i>
Dat.	<i>brě'-vī,</i>	<i>brě'-vī,</i>	<i>brěv'-ī-bŭs,</i>	<i>brěv'-ī-bŭs,</i>
Acc.	<i>brě'-vēm,</i>	<i>brě'-vě,</i>	<i>brě'-vēs,</i>	<i>brě'-vi-ă,</i>
Abl.	<i>brě'-vī.</i>	<i>brě'-vī.</i>	<i>brěv'-ī-bŭs.</i>	<i>brěv'-ī-bŭs.</i>

Remark 1.—Comparatives may be considered as belonging to this class.

Remark 2.—Adjectives which have *ě* in the nominative neuter have *ī* in the ablative singular, *iŭm* in the genitive plural, and *iă* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter. Comparatives have *ŭm* and *ă*.

Remark 3.—The following have also *ěr* in the nominative singular masculine: as, *ācěr* or *acrīs*, *acrīs*, *acrě*.

ācēr, *sharp.*
 ālācēr, *cheerful.*
 campestēr, *of the*
plain.
 cēlēr, *swift.*

cēlēbēr, *famous.*
 ēquestēr, *of a horse.*
 pālustēr, *marshy.*
 pēdestēr, *on foot.*
 pūtēr, *rotten.*

silvestēr, *woody.*
 terrestēr, *of the earth.*
 vōlūcēr, *winged.*
 sālūbēr, *wholesome.*

Remark 4.—Cēlēr and vōlūcēr have ūm in the genitive plural.

EXERCISE XXVI.

§ 60. Vocabulary.

fort-īs, -ē, *brave.*
 āgil-īs, -ē, *active.*
 crūdēl-īs, -ē, *cruel.*
 grāv-īs, -ē, *heavy, severe.*
 omn-īs, -ē, *all, every.*
 nōbīl-īs, -ē, *noble.*

adventūs, -ūs, *arrival.*
 fātīg-ārē, *to weary.*
 cīvītās, cīvītāt-īs, *state.*
 lōcūs, -ī (pl. -ī and -ā), *place.*
 lēvis, -ē, *light, slight.*
 pīgēr, -grā, -grūm, *lazy.*

Remark.—The adjective is often used as a noun, the noun with which it agrees being omitted: as, bōnī, *the good*; bōnā, *good things, property*. Masculine adjectives thus used express persons; neuter adjectives, things.

Translate into English.

Impērātōr fortīs centūrionēs omnēs convōcāvīt. Māgistēr bōnūs omnēs puērōs mōnuērāt. Servi āgilēs taurūm cornībūs hābēbant. Onērā grāviā magnōs agrīcōlāe bōvēs fātīgant. Māterfāmīliās libērīs servisquē omnībūs cībūm sālubrēm dābīt. Puēr mānūm cultrō sēcūt. Pēdestrēs Carthāgīniēsiūm cōpiāe ēquītēs fortēs fūgāvērant. Bellā longā multās cīvītātēs ferrō ignīquē vastāvērē. Princeps nōbīlis āpūd rēgēm cōnāvērāt. Deūs omniā creāvīt. Bōnī grāviā bellā formīdant. Latrōnēs imprōbī multōs cīvēs trūcīdāvērunt. Vēlītēs āgilēs multōs silvārūm trāmītēs explōrābunt. Cānīs fīdūs pēr tōtām noctēm vīgīlāt. Equītēs pālustriā lōcā tīment.

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief has slain all the captives with the sword. All the citizens dreaded the great cruelty of the wicked king. Lazy slaves love short days and light work. One of the swift horsemen is hastening to (*ad*) the camp of Cæsar. The active sailors were fastening the yards to the masts with long ropes. The arrival of the brave consul thoroughly frightened all the chiefs of the Gauls. Lazy boys do not love their books. Cæsar's army laid waste many states of Gaul. The farmer's lazy son loves the shade of the thick trees. The brave general fears no danger. Cæsar put all the legions into winter quarters.

§ 61. *Adjectives of the Third Declension, having masculine, feminine, and neuter alike in the nominative.*

1.—PARADIGMS.

Fēlix, *happy*.*Singular.*

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	fē'-lix,	fē'-lix,
Gen.	fē-lī'-cīs,	fē-lī'-cīs,
Dat.	fē-lī'-cī,	fē-lī'-cī,
Acc.	fē-lī'-cēm,	fē'-lix,
Voc.	fē'-lix,	fē'-lix,
Abl.	fē-lī'-cī (or -ē) ;	fē-lī'-cī (or -ē) ;

Plural.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	fē-lī'-cēs,	fē-līc'-i-ă,
Gen.	fē-līc'-i-ŭm,	fē-līc'-i-ŭm,
Dat.	fē-līc'-i-bŭs,	fē-līc'-i-bŭs,
Acc.	fē-lī'-cēs,	fē-līc'-i-ă,
Voc.	fē-lī'-cēs,	fē-līc'-i-ă,
Abl.	fē-līc'-i-bŭs,	fē-līc'-i-bŭs.

Prūdens, *prudent*.*Singular.*

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>prū'-dens,</i>	<i>prū'-dens,</i>
Gen.	<i>prū-den'-tīs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tīs,</i>
Dat.	<i>prū-den'-tī,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tī,</i>
Acc.	<i>prū-den'-tēm,</i>	<i>prū'-dens,</i>
Voc.	<i>prū'-dens,</i>	<i>prū'-dens,</i>
Abl.	<i>prū-den'-tē (or -tī);</i>	<i>prū-den'-tē (or -tī);</i>

Plural.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>prū-den'-tēs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tī-ā,</i>
Gen.	<i>prū-den'-tī-ūm,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tī-ūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>prū-den'-tī-būs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tī-būs,</i>
Acc.	<i>prū-den'-tēs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tī-ā,</i>
Voc.	<i>prū-den'-tēs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tī-ā,</i>
Abl.	<i>prū-den'-tī-būs.</i>	<i>prū-den'-tī-būs.</i>

2. Present participles are declined like *prūdens*. When used as participles, they have *ě* rather than *ī* in the ablative singular; but when used as adjectives, they have *ī* rather than *ě*. Comparatives, also, have oftener *ě* than *ī*.

3. Adjectives of the third class have either *ě* or *ī* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The following have only *ě* in the ablative:—

Bicorpōr, bipēs, cælebs, compōs, dēsēs, discōlōr, hospēs, impōs, impūbēs, jūvēnīs, lōcūplēs, paupēr, princeps, pūbēr or pūbēs, sēnex, sospēs, sūperstēs, trīcorpōr, trīcuspīs, and trīpēs.

Exc. 2. The following have only *ī* in the ablative:—

Anceps, concors, discors, hēbēs, immēmōr, īners, ingens, īnops, mēmōr, præceps, rēcens, rēpens, vīgīl, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

Remark 1.—*Inertě, rěcentě, and prăcĭpě* sometimes occur.

Remark 2.—*Prăsens*, when applied to things, makes the ablative in *ĭ*; when used of persons, it has *ě*.

4. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *iă*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *iŭm*; but *větŭs*, old, and *ŭběr*, fertile, have *ă* and *ŭm*.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *ě* in the ablative singular have *ŭm* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *făcio* and *căpio*, and of such nouns as make *ŭm* in their genitive plural, with *compăr*, *cĭcŭr*, *divēs*, *mēmŏr*, *immēmŏr*, *prăpēs*, *supplex*, and *vigĭl*, make their genitive plural in *ŭm*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *lŏcŭplēs*, *păr*, *sons*, and *insons* have either *ŭm* or *iŭm*; and other adjectives have sometimes *ŭm* instead of *iŭm* in the poets and later prose writers.

EXERCISE XXVII.

§ 62. Vocabulary.

divēs, *divĭt-ĭs*, *rich*.

fĕrax, *ăc-ĭs*, *fertile*.

innŏcens, *-ent-ĭs*, *innocent*.

paupĕr, *paupĕr-ĭs*, *poor*.

větŭs, *větĕr-ĭs*, *ancient*; pl. *větĕrēs*,

the ancients.

ingens, *-ent-ĭs*, *huge*.

fĕrox, *fĕrŏc-ĭs*, *warlike, fierce*.

atrox, *atrŏc-ĭs*, *terrible, cruel, savage*.

rĕcens, *-ent-ĭs*, *recent*.

cĭvĭlis, *-ĕ*, *civil*.

aug-eŏ, *-ĕrĕ*, *aux-ĭ*, *auc-tum*, *to swell, increase*.

Translate into English.

Imbrēs rĕcentēs flŭmĭnă omniă auxĕrunt. Vĭr bŏnŭs paupĕribŭs cĭbŭm dăbit. Pastŏr prŭdens ōvēs agnosquĕ ā lŭpĭs dĕfensăbit. Orgĕtŏrix, princeps Helvĕtiŏrŭm, cŏpiăs auxĕrăt. Vĕtĕrēs Jŏvĭ taurŏs ingentēs mactăbant. Agrĭcŏlăe prŭdentēs ĩn pĕnŭm mergĭtēs omnēs portant. Căsar fortēs centŭriŏnēs laudăbăt. Măriŭs, Rŏmănŏrŭm

impērātōr, fērācēs Nūmīdiæ āgrōs ferrō ignīquē vastāvīt. Princeps crūdēlīs innōcentēm plēbēm trūcīdāvīt. Bellā cīviliā nōbilitātēm ēt cīvēs dīvītēs perterruērānt. Princīpēs fērōcēs atrōciā bellā āmant. Rex fērox nōbilitātēm ād bellūm magnūm ēt atrox concītāvīt.

Translate into Latin.

No prudent (man) will give his sheep to the wolves. The happy mother loves her children. The innocent do not fear the face and countenance of a judge. The consul will preserve the ancient laws of the commonwealth. The prudent shepherds had sheared their sheep. A terrible lion tore in pieces all the inhabitants of the village. The enemy's soldiers had laid waste the whole city with fire and sword. The rich dread civil wars. The recent rains have swelled the great river. The poor (man) does not fear the robber.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 63. 1. Adjectives expressing number are called *numerals*, and are divided into three classes, viz. :—

(a.) *Cardinals*, which answer the question “*How many?*” as, ūnūs, *one*; duō, *two*.

(b.) *Ordinals*, which express order or rank: as, prīmūs, *first*; sēcundūs, *second*.

(c.) *Distributives*, which answer the questions “*How many to each?*”—“*How many apiece?*” as, singulī, *one to each, one at a time, one apiece*; bīnī, *two apiece*.

2. To these may be added numeral adverbs, which answer the question “*How many times?*” as, sēmēl, *once*; bīs, *twice*.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
<i>One, two, &c.</i>	<i>First, second, &c.</i>	<i>One by one, &c.</i>	<i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unūs,	Prīmūs,	Singūlī,	Sēmēl,
2 Duō,	Sēcundūs,	Bīnī,	Bīs,
3 Trēs,	Tertiūs,	Ternī,	Tēr,
4 Quātuōr,	Quartūs,	Quāternī,	Quātēr,
5 Quinquē,	Quintūs,	Quīnī,	Quinquīēs,
6 Sex,	Sextūs,	Sēnī,	Sexiēs,
7 Septēm,	Septimūs,	Septēnī,	Septiēs,
8 Octo,	Octāvūs,	Octōnī,	Octiēs,
9 Nōvēm,	Nōnūs,	Nōvēnī,	Nōviēs,
10 Dēcīm,	Dēcīmūs,	Dēnī,	Dēciēs,
11 Undēcīm,	Undēcīmūs,	Undēnī,	Undēciēs,
12 Duōdēcīm,	Duōdēcīmūs,	Duōdēnī,	Duōdēciēs,
13 Trēdēcīm,	Tertius dēcīmūs,	Ternī dēnī,	Trēdēciēs,
14 Quātuordēcīm,	Quartus dēcīmūs,	Quāternī dēnī,	Quātuordēciēs,
15 Quindēcīm,	Quintus dēcīmūs,	Quīnī dēnī,	Quindēciēs,
16 Sexdēcīm,	Sextus dēcīmūs,	Sēnī dēnī,	Sēdēciēs,
17 Septendēcīm,	Septimus dēcīmūs,	Septēnī dēnī,	Dēciēs ēt septiēs,
18 Octōdēcīm,	Octāvus dēcīmūs,	Octōnī dēnī,	Duōdēviciēs,
19 Nōvendēcīm,	Nōnus dēcīmūs,	Nōvēnī dēnī,	Undēviciēs,
20 Vīgintī,	Vicēsīmūs,	Vicēnī,	Vīciēs,
30 Trīgintā,	Tricēsīmūs,	Tricēnī,	Trīciēs,
40 Quadrāgintā,	Quadrāgēsīmūs,	Quadrāgēnī,	Quadrāgiēs,
50 Quinquāgintā,	Quinquāgēsīmūs,	Quinquāgēnī,	Quinquāgiēs,
60 Šexāgintā,	Sexāgēsīmūs,	Sexāgēnī,	Sexāgiēs,
70 Septuāgintā,	Septuāgēsīmūs,	Septuāgēnī,	Septuāgiēs,
80 Octōgintā,	Octōgēsīmūs,	Octōgēnī,	Octōgiēs,
90 Nōnāgintā,	Nōnāgēsīmūs,	Nōnāgēnī,	Nōnāgiēs,
100 Centūm,	Centēsīmūs,	Centēnī,	Centiēs,
200 Dūcentī,	Dūcentēsīmūs,	Dūcentēnī,	Dūcentiēs,
300 Trēcentī,	Trēcentēsīmūs,	Trēcentēnī,	Trēcentiēs,
400 Quadringentī,	Quadringentēsīmūs,	Quadringentēnī,	Quadringentiēs,
500 Quingentī,	Quingentēsīmūs,	Quingentēnī,	Quingentiēs,
600 Sexcentī,	Sexcentēsīmūs,	Sexcentēnī,	Sexcentiēs,
700 Septingentī,	Septingentēsīmūs,	Septingentēnī,	Septingentiēs,
800 Octingentī,	Octingentēsīmūs,	Octingentēnī,	Octingentiēs,
900 Nongentī,	Nongentēsīmūs,	Nongentēnī,	Nongentiēs,
1000 Mille;	Millēsīmūs;	Millēnī;	Milliēs.

§ 64. Cardinals.

Remark 1.—The first three cardinal numbers are declined. From four to a hundred they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*: as, dūcentī, -ae, -ū; -ōrūm, -ārūm, -ōrūm, &c.

Remark 2.—For the declension of *unūs*, see § 56. *Trēs* is

declined like the plural of *brēvis*; nominative *trēs, triă*; genitive *triūm*; dative *tribūs*, &c. *Duō* is thus declined:—

Plural.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>du'-ō</i> ,	<i>du'-æ</i> ,	<i>du'-ō</i> ,
Gen. <i>du-ō'-rūm</i> ,	<i>du-ā'-rūm</i> ,	<i>du-ō'-rūm</i> ,
Dat. <i>du-ō'-būs</i> ,	<i>du-ā'-būs</i> ,	<i>du-ō'-būs</i> ,
Acc. <i>du'-ōs</i> or <i>du'-ō</i> ,	<i>du'-ās</i> ,	<i>du'-ō</i> ,
Voc. <i>du'-ō</i> ,	<i>du'-æ</i> ,	<i>du'-ō</i> ,
Abl. <i>du-ō'-būs</i> .	<i>du-ā'-būs</i> .	<i>du-ō'-būs</i> .

Remark 3.—*Duōrūm* and *duārūm*, especially when compounded with another word, or when joined with *millium*, are frequently contracted into *duūm*: as, *duūmvir*, *duūm milliūm*. *Ambo*, both, is declined like *duō*.

Remark 4.—*Unūs* has a plural form—

(a.) With nouns which have no singular: as, *ūnæ nuptiæ*, one marriage.

(b.) With nouns which denote several things considered as one whole: as, *ūnă vestimentă*, one suit of clothes.

(c.) In the sense of *alone* or the *same*: as, *ūni Ubī*, the Ubians alone; *ūnīs mōribūs*, with the same manners.

Remark 5.—From thirteen to nineteen, inclusive, instead of the compound forms (*trēdecim*, &c.), the simple numerals are used, with or without *ēt*: as, *dēcēm ēt trēs*, or *dēcēm trēs*.

Remark 6.—From twenty to one hundred the greater number precedes without *ēt*, or the smaller number with *ēt*: as, *vīgintī ūnūs*, or *ūnūs ēt vīgintī*. Above one hundred the greater number is put first, with or without *ēt*; but *ēt* is not twice used in designating the same number: as, *dūcentī quadrāginta quinquē*, or *dūcentī ēt quadrāginta quinquē*, two hundred and forty-five.

Remark 7.—Subtractive forms are more commonly used for eighteen, twenty-eight, &c., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, &c.: as *duōdēvīgintī*, *duōdetrīginta*, *duōdēquadrāginta*, &c.; *undēvīgintī*, *undetrīginta*, &c. *Duō* is not declined in these combinations.

Remark 8.—Thousands are usually expressed by the smaller numbers with *milliā*: as, *dēcēm milliā*, ten thousand; sometimes

by the numeral adverbs with *millē*: as, *dēciēs millē*, ten times a thousand, ten thousand.

Remark 9.—*Millē* is either an adjective or a noun. As an adjective it is indeclinable and plural, and limits the name of the things numbered: as, *millē hōmīnēs*, a thousand men; *cūm bīs millē hōmīnībūs*, with two thousand (*twice a thousand*) men. As a noun it is indeclinable in the singular, and in the plural has *milliā*, *milliūm*, *millibūs*, and is limited by the name of the things numbered in the partitive genitive; as, *millē hōmīnūm*, a thousand (of) men; *triā milliā hōmīnūm*, three thousand men (*three thousand of men*). But if a declined numeral comes between, the genitive is not used: as, *triā milliā ēt trēcentōs ēquitēs circūm sē hālēbāt*, he had three thousand three hundred horsemen around him.

Remark 10.—The poets sometimes use the numeral adverb to express smaller numbers; as, *bīs dēcēm* for *vīgintī*.

Remark 11.—Millions are expressed by combinations of *centēnā milliā* (a hundred thousand): as, *dēciēs centēnā milliā*, one million; *centiēs centēnā milliā*, ten millions.

§ 65. Ordinals, Distributives, and Adverbs.

1. *Priōr* is used instead of *prīmūs* when only two things are spoken of. *Altēr* is often used for *sēcundūs*.

2. Between twelfth and twentieth the smaller number is usually put first; but the greater sometimes precedes, with or without *ēt*: as, *dēcimūs ēt tertiūs*, or *dēcimūs tertiūs*.

3. In the other intermediate numbers, twenty-first, twenty-second, &c., the larger precedes without *ēt*, or the smaller with *ēt*: as, *quadrāgēsīmūs prīmūs*, or *prīmūs ēt quadrāgēsīmūs*: but instead of *prīmūs* and *sēcundūs*, *ūnūs* and *duo* are often used, *duo* being undeclined: as, *ūnūs ēt vīcēsīmūs*, one-and-twentieth; *duo ēt vīcēsīmō annō*, in the twenty-second year.

4. For *eighths* and *ninths* in the intermediate numerals, the subtractive forms are often used: as, *duōdēvīcēsīmūs*, *undetrīcēsīmūs*. So, also, in the distributives, and sometimes in the adverbs: as, *duōdēvīcēnī*, *undēvīcēnī*;
duōdetrīciēs, *undēquadrāgiēs*.

5. The poets sometimes use the distributives for cardinals: as, *binā spicūlā*, two darts. They are used in the same way in prose with nouns which have no singular: as, *binæ nuptiæ*.

6. Some of the distributives have a singular form with a multiplicative meaning: as, *binūs*, twofold.

7. In the numeral adverbs the intermediate numbers are expressed—

(a.) Either by putting the smaller first with *et*: as, *sēmēl et viciēs*,

(b.) Or by putting the larger number first, with or without *et*: as, *viciēs sēmēl*, or *viciēs et sēmēl*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

§ 66. 1. *Rule of Syntax*.—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative: as, *tertiā hōrā*, at the third hour. (*Ablative of time*.)

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—Duration of time, and extent of space, are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative: as, *trēs hōrās mansit*, he remained three hours; *fossā dūos pēdēs lātā*, a ditch two feet wide.

3. *Rule of Position*.—Designations of time and place usually stand near the beginning of the sentence. See § 29, 3.

Vocabulary.

fossā, -æ, ditch.

hōrā, -æ, hour.

mensis, -is (§ 33, Exc. 3), month.

diēs, -ēī, day.

annūs, -ī, year.

unā ex partē, on one side.

hiems, *hiēm-is*, winter.

passūs, -ūs, pace.

tempūs, -ōr-is, time.

nostēr, -ā, -ūm, our.

æstās, *æstāt-is*, summer.

contīn-eō, -ērē, *contīnu-ī*, content-ūm, to keep, hold in, restrain.

sustīn-eō, -ērē, *sustīnu-ī*, sustent-ūm, to sustain, to bear.

Translate into English.

Servī fidī hōrās multās vīgīlāvērant. Nullūs agrīcōlā

prūdens ōvēs hiēmē tondēbīt. Cēsār, Rōmānōrūm impērātōr, trēs lēgiōnēs īn hībernīs* collōcāvīt. Consūl multōs annōs īn urbē hābītāvērāt. Mons altūs ūnā ex partē Helvētiōs continūit. Equītēs nostrī hostiūm impētū duās hōrās sustīnuerunt. Pastōr prūdens aestātē ōvēs omnēs tōtōndīt. Lēgātūs fortīs dēcēm diēs Cēsārīs adventūm expectābāt. Impērātōr tertiō diē castrā mōvīt. Princeps atrox multōs mensēs cīvītātēm perterrēbāt. Consūl fortīs nullō annī tempōrē adventūm hostiūm tīmēbāt. Rex latrōnēs omnēs brēvī tempōrē trūcīdāvīt. Crassūs triā milliā passuūm ēquītāvīt. Consūl millē passūs castrā mōvīt.

Translate into Latin.

The great rains had kept our soldiers in the camp many months. In one summer Cæsar laid waste many states of Gaul with fire and sword. For many years (*acc.*) the Romans routed all their enemies by sea and land. Cæsar moved his camp ten thousand paces from the city. The soldiers of the tenth legion had carried heavy burdens for many hours (*acc.*). Our skirmishers sustained the attack of the Germans three hours. Lake Lemannus held-in the Helvetians on one side. The farmer had a ditch three feet wide in his field. The farmer will have in his fields five ditches, each-three (*ternos*) feet wide. The master gave (to) the boys four books apiece. A ditch twelve feet wide and six feet deep had hindered the attack of the enemy many days.

* *In hibernis* refers to the *resting* of troops in winter quarters; *in hiberna*, to the *motion* of going thither.

EXERCISE XXIX.

§ 67. 1. PARTIAL PARADIGM OF ESSĚ, *to be*.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Pers. *Singular.*1. sŭm, *I am,*2. ěs, *thou art,*3. est, *he is;**Plural.*sŭ'-mŭs, *we are,*es'-tĭs, *ye or you are,*sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect.

1. ě'-ram, *I was,*2. ě'-rās, *thou wast,*3. ě'-rāt, *he was;*ě-rā'-mŭs, *we were,*ě-rā'-tĭs, *ye or you were,*ě'-rant, *they were.*Future, *shall, or will.*1. ě'-rŏ, *I shall be,*2. ě'-rĭs, *thou wilt be,*3. ě'-rĭt, *he will be;*ěr'-ĭ-mŭs, *we shall be,*ěr'-ĭ-tĭs, *ye or you will be,*ě'-runt, *they will be.**Present-perfect, *have been, or was.*1. fu'-ī, *I have been,*2. fu-is'-tĭ, *thou hast been,*3. fu'-ĭt, *he has been;*fu'-ĭ-mŭs, *we have been,*fu-is'-tĭs, *ye have been,*fu-ě'-runt or -rě, *they have been.*

Past-perfect.

1. fu'-ě-ram, *I had been,*2. fu'-ě-rās, *thou hadst*
*been,*3. fu'-ě-rāt, *he had been;*fu-ě-rā'-mŭs, *we had been,*fu-ě-rā'-tĭs, *ye had been,*fu'-ě-rant, *they had been.*

* The aorist-perfect is translated, *I was, thou wast, he was, we were, etc.*

Future-perfect, *shall or will have.*

Pers.	Singular.	Plural.
1.	<i>fu'-ĕ-rŏ, I shall have been,</i>	<i>fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs, we shall have been,</i>
2.	<i>fu'-ĕ-rĭs, thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>fu-er'-ĭ-tĭs, ye will have been,</i>
3.	<i>fu'-ĕ-rĭt, he will have been;</i>	<i>fu'-ĕ-rint, they will have been.</i>

2. A noun or an adjective may limit the predicate as well as the subject: thus, we may say, *Cĭcĕro ōrātŏr, Cicero the orator*, and *Cĭcĕro ōrātŏr fuĭt, Cicero was an orator*; *ăġĕr fĕrax, a fertile field*, and *ăġĕr fĕrax est, the field is fertile*.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

3. *Rule of Syntax.*—A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, agrees with it in case, and is called the *predicate nominative*: as, *Cĭcĕro ōrātŏr fuĭt, Cicero was an orator*.

Remark 1.—If the subject consists of more than one thing, the *predicate nominative* is plural.

Remark 2.—Adjectives in the predicate agree with the subject. See § 57, 2.

EXERCISE XXX.

Vocabulary.

intĕġĕr, -gră, -grŭm, <i>untouched, unhurt, fresh.</i>	vulnŭs, vulnĕr-ĭs, <i>wound.</i>
hŭmănŭs, -ă, ŭm, <i>human.</i>	vĭtă, -ă, <i>life.</i>
incertŭs, -ă, -ŭm, <i>uncertain.</i>	vĕlox, vĕlŏc-ĭs, <i>swift.</i>
vĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm, <i>true.</i>	căecŭs, -ă, -ŭm, <i>blind.</i>
turpĭs, -ĕ, <i>base.</i>	mendăciŭm, -ĭ, <i>lie.</i>
ingens, -ent-ĭs, <i>huge.</i>	cornĭġĕr, -ă, -ŭm, <i>horned.</i>
duplex, duplic-ĭs, <i>double.</i>	prăclărŭs, -ă, -ŭm, <i>distinguished.</i>
triplex, triplic-ĭs, <i>triple.</i>	ăciĕs, -ĕĭ, <i>line of battle.</i>
	rĕnunciătĭŏ, -ŏn-ĭs, <i>report.</i>

Translate into English.

Nōn omniā animāliā cornīgērā sunt.* Aquilārū ālā magnā sunt. Nōn omnēs hominēs sāpientēs sunt. Rēs hūmānā incertā sunt. Vītā hōminū incertā est. Unūs ēquōrū cēcūs fuit. Cēsāris mīlītēs vėlōcēs fortesquē fuērunt. Cēsār fuit impērātōr magnūs. Māriūs dux fuit Rōmānōrū. Rēgis filiūs rex ērit. Rēnunciātiō lēgātōrū vērā fuit. Apēr ingens in silvā hābitāt. Impērātōr in prēliō intēgēr fuit. Vulnērā mīlītū sunt grāviā. Consūl annōs multōs cēcūs fuērāt. Cēsāris āciēs triplex fuit. Omnēs dēcimā lēgiōnīs mīlītēs intēgrīs vīribūs (§ 45) prēliū rēdintegravērāt. Mendāciā turpiā sunt. Cīcērō fuit ōrātōr praelārūs. Imprōbōrū (§ 60, *Rem.*) vītā ōnūs est grāvē. Gallōrū āciēs est duplex.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's oxen are large. Many bulls are horned. All generals are not wise. The inhabitants of the villages dread the huge lion. Cicero was a wise consul and a great man. The wounds of the brave soldiers were severe. Many of the swift horsemen were unhurt. Davus, Cæsar's slave, has been blind many years. Our soldiers in a triple line renew the battle. All human things are uncertain. The shade of the dense forest will frighten the king's swift messenger.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 68. 1. The change which adjectives undergo to express different degrees of quality is termed comparison.

* See models of analysis 6 and 7. (App. XI.)

2. Grammarians generally give three degrees of comparison,—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

3. The simple form of the adjective is usually called the *positive*: as, *altūs*, *high*.

4. The *comparative* expresses a higher degree of the quality in one of *two* things, or sets of things, than in the other: as, *mons arbōrē altiōr est*, *a mountain is higher than a tree*.

5. The *superlative* expresses a higher degree of the quality in one of *several* things, or sets of things, than in any of the rest: as, *triūm montiūm altissimūs*, *the highest of the three mountains*.

Remark 1.—The comparative does not express a higher degree of quality than the positive, but represents one thing as having more of a given quality than another. Thus, in the example *mons est arbōrē altiōr*, we mean, not that the mountain is higher than a *high* mountain, but higher than a tree; *i.e.* there is *more height* in a mountain than in a tree.

Remark 2.—When two qualities of the ~~same thing~~ are compared, the comparative is used: as, *Aristidēs justiōr quā sāpientiōr fuit*, *Aristides was more just than wise*.

Remark 3.—The comparative may often be translated by *too* or *rather* with the positive, especially when one of the things compared is omitted: as, *rex clēmentiōr est*, *the king is too merciful*.

Remark 4.—The superlative often expresses a high degree of a quality: as, *mons altissimūs*, *a very high mountain*.

FORMATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

§ 69. 1. The comparative is formed by adding *iōr*, and the superlative by adding *issimūs*, to the stem of the adjective: as, *alt-ūs*, *high*, *alt-iōr*, *higher*, *alt-issimūs*, *highest*.

2. Superlatives are of the first and second declensions. Comparatives are of the third declension, and are thus declined :—

Singular.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>dū'-ri-ōr,</i>	<i>dū'-ri-ūs,</i>
Gen.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rīs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rīs,</i>
Dat.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rī,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rī,</i>
Acc.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēm,</i>	<i>dū'-ri-ūs,</i>
Voc.	<i>dū'-ri-ōr,</i>	<i>dū'-ri-ūs,</i>
Abl.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rē or -rī;</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rē or -rī;</i>

Plural.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rā,</i>
Gen.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rūm,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs,</i>
Acc.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rā,</i>
Voc.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rā,</i>
Abl.	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs.</i>	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs.</i>

EXERCISE XXXI.

§ 70. 1. That with which any thing is compared (the complement of the comparative) is connected by the conjunction *quam*, than, in the same case, or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuit*, etc., understood: as, *fortiōrēm vīdī nēmīnēm quam Māriūm, I have seen no braver man than Marius*; or, *fortiōrēm vīdī nēmīnēm quam Māriūs (est), I have seen no braver man than Marius is.*

2. *Quam* is sometimes omitted; then—

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative is used with the comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared: as, *mons est arbore altiōr*, a mountain is higher than a tree.

Vocabulary.

<i>sanctūs</i> , -ā, -ūm, <i>sacred</i> ; (of a man, <i>pure</i>).	<i>fīdēs</i> , -eī, <i>faith, promise</i> .
<i>dūrūs</i> , -ā, -ūm, <i>hard</i> .	<i>nīhīl</i> (indeclinable), <i>nothing</i> .
<i>nēmō</i> , (<i>dat.</i> <i>nēmīn-ī</i> , <i>acc.</i> <i>nēmīn-ēm</i>)* <i>no man</i> .	<i>rēgiō</i> , -ōn-īs, <i>region</i> .
	<i>gens</i> , <i>gent-īs</i> , <i>race, nation</i> .

Translate into English.

Prudentiōrēm vidī nēmīnēm quām Māriūm, Rōmānōrūm dūcēm. Lūpī sunt cānībūs fērōciōrēs. Nullā rēgiō est Galliā fērāciōr. Nīhīl est jūrējūrandō (§ 45) sanctiūs. Equūs est bōvē vėlōciōr. Germānī fuērunt Gallīs fērōciōrēs. Nullūm bellūm est bellō cīvili atrōciūs. Nēmō Rōmānōrūm sanctiōr fuit quām Cātō. Cōsūl gentēm fērōciōrēm nullām vidēbīt quām Helvētiōs. Cēsār īn exercitū fortiōrēm hābēt nēmīnēm quām Lūciūs. Aurūm grāviūs est quām argentūm. Ferrūm est aurō dūriūs. Nīhīl incertiūs est quām vitā hūmānā. Agrīcōlā cānēm quām lūpūm fērōciōrēm hābuīt. Equītēs quām pēditēs sunt vėlōciōrēs.

Translate into Latin.

The general is braver than the soldiers. The consul's son will be more prudent than his father. No nation was braver than the Helvetians. The king's messengers are swifter than horses. Lions are fiercer than dogs. Nothing is more sacred than the oath of a good man. A good man's promise is more sacred than a wicked man's oath.

* For the *gen.* and *abl.* *nullūs* and *nullō* must be used.

The Belgians were a braver race than the Gauls. No general was more prudent than Cæsar. The king's garden is more fertile than the farmer's field. Iron is harder than silver. Silver is not heavier than gold. The general is not more prudent than the centurion.

EXERCISE XXXII.

§ 71. The *partitive genitive* is used with comparatives and superlatives: as, *fortiōr duōrūm fratrūm*, the braver of the two brothers; *fortissimūš mīlitūm*, the bravest of the soldiers.

Vocabulary.

Jūrā, -æ, (masc.) *Jura* (a mountain).

Itāliā, -æ, *Italy*.

Rōmā, -æ, *Rome*.

īrā, -æ, *anger, wrath*.

nostr̄, -trā, -trūm, *our*.

Translate into English.

Jūrā, mons altissimūš (§ 68, *Rem.* 4), Helvētiōš ūnā ex partē continēt. Impērātōr fortissimōš mīlitūm laudāvīt. Jūdex īnīquūš quām latrō est turpiōr. Vēlitūm vēlōcissimī omnēs silvārūm trāmītēs explōrāvērant. Prūdentiōr duōrūm impērātōrūm cōpiās hostiūm fūgābīt. Fortissimī centūriōnūm magnītūdīnēm pēricūlī tīmēbant. Orgētōrix fuīt Helvētiōrūm nobīlissimūš. Nostrōrūm (§ 60, *Rem.*) impētūs fortissimōš hostiūm perterruērāt. Jūgurthā, hōmō imprōbissimūš, fratrēs trūcīdāvīt. Vulnērā mīlitūm fuērunt grāvissimā.

Translate into Latin.

The bravest of the enemy did not sustain the attack of our horsemen. The Rhine, a very broad river, keeps in

the Helvetians on one side. The wicked king had slain the noblest of the hostages. The consul will lay waste the most fertile states of Gaul. On the third day the general moved his camp into the most fertile part of the province. The most wicked of men fear the wrath of God. The greatness of the danger frightened the bravest of our soldiers. The general is wiser than the king's ambassadors. One of the enemy wounded Lucius, a very brave man, with a stone. Davus is the most faithful of all the slaves. Rome is the noblest city of Italy.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 72. 1. Adjectives whose stems end in *ēr* form the superlative by adding *rīmūs*: as, *pulchēr*, beautiful, *pulchriōr*, *pulcherrīmūs*.

2. Six adjectives in *līs* form their superlative by adding *līmūs* to the stem:—

Fācīlīs,	fācīliōr,	fācillīmūs,	<i>easy.</i>
Diffīcīlīs,	diffīcīliōr,	diffīcillīmūs,	<i>difficult.</i>
Grācīlīs,	grācīliōr,	grācillīmūs,	<i>slender.</i>
Hūmīlīs,	hūmīliōr,	hūmillīmūs,	<i>low.</i>
Sīmīlīs,	sīmīliōr,	sīmillīmūs,	<i>like.</i>
Dissīmīlīs,	dissīmīliōr,	dissīmillīmūs,	<i>unlike.</i>

Imbecillūs or *imbēcillīs*, weak, has two forms, *imbēcillissīmūs* and *imbēcillīmūs*.

3. Compound adjectives ending in *dicūs*, *ficūs*, and *vōlūs* form the comparative and superlative by adding *entiōr* and *entissīmūs* to the stem: as, *bēnēvōlūs*, benevolent, *bēnēvōlentiōr*, *bēnēvōlentissīmūs*.

4. The following have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

Dextēr,	dextēriōr,	dextīmūs,	<i>right.</i>
Extēr,	extēriōr,	extrēmūs or extīmūs,	<i>outward.</i>
Postērūs,	postēriōr,	postrēmūs or postūmūs,	<i>hind.</i>
Infērūs,	infēriōr,	infīmūs or імūs,	<i>below.</i>
Supērūs,	supēriōr,	suprēmūs or summūs,	<i>above.</i>

Remark.—The adjectives *extēr* and *postērūs* are very rarely found in the nominative singular masculine.

5. The following form the comparative and superlative on a different stem from that of the positive :—

Bōnūs,	mēliōr,	*optīmūs,	<i>good,</i>	<i>better,</i>	<i>best.</i>
Mālūs,	pējōr,	pessīmūs,	<i>bad,</i>	<i>worse,</i>	<i>worst.</i>
Magnūs,	mājōr,	maxīmūs,	<i>great,</i>	<i>greater,</i>	<i>greatest.</i>
Parvūs,	mīnōr,	mīnīmūs,	<i>little,</i>	<i>less,</i>	<i>least.</i>
Multūs,	—	plūrīmūs,	} <i>much,</i>	<i>more,</i>	<i>most.</i>
Multā,	—	plūrīmā,			
Multūm,	plūs,	plūrīmūm,			

6. *Nēquām*, worthless, has *nēquiōr*, *nēquissīmūs*; and *frūgī*, frugal, has *frūgālīōr*, *frūgālissīmūs*.

7. *Plus*, more, is thus declined :—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	plūs,	plū'-rēs,	plū'-ră, rarely plū'-ri-ă,
Gen.	plū'-rīs,	plū'-ri-ūm,	plū'-ri-ūm,
Dat.	—	plū'-rī-būs,	plū'-rī-būs,
Acc.	plūs,	plū'-rēs,	plū'-ră, rarely plū'-ri-ă,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	plū'-rě (<i>obs.</i>).	plū'-rī-būs;	plū'-rī-būs.

Complūrēs, a great many, is found only in the plural, and is declined like *plūrēs*.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

§ 73. The *partitive genitive* is frequently used with

neuter adjectives, such as *multūm*, *plūs*, *mīnīmūm*, *plūrīmūm*, etc. : as, *multūm aurī*, much gold.

Translate into English.

Principēs Gallōrūm Cæsārīs exercitūi plūrīmūm frūmentī præbuērunt. Cīvēs in dōmībūs multūm aurī hābent. Mīnīmūm virtūtīs est in jūdīcē inīquō. Agrīcōlæ plūs frūmentī hābent quām aurī. Itēr pēr Alpēs difficillīmūm est. Māgistēr optīmōs puērōrūm laudābīt. Cæsār maximūs fuīt impērātōrūm Rōmānōrūm. Multūm cībī cōmēdōnēm dēlectāt. Rēgīnæ filiā est pulcherrīmā. Agrīcōlæ bōvēs pīgerrīmī sunt. Pastōr mīnīmōs agnōrūm nōn tōtōndīt.

Translate into Latin.

The great whirlwinds will dash in pieces very many of the ships. The poet's daughter is the most beautiful of all the girls. The greatest city in Italy is Rome. The soldiers will bring much corn into the city. The commander will remain in the camp the whole winter. The consul's soldiers demanded gold from the citizens. The citizens gave (to) the consul's soldiers more (of) wounds than (of) gold. The general called together the greatest of the chiefs. Cæsar was a greater general than Crassus.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 74. 1. The following adjectives want the positive :—

Cītēriōr, cītīmūs, *nearer*.

Dētēriōr, dētērrīmūs, *worse*.

Intēriōr, intīmūs, *inner*.

Ociōr, ōcissīmūs, *swifter*.

Priōr, primūs, *former*.

Prōpiōr, proximūs, *nearer*.

Ultēriōr, ultimūs, *further*.

2. The following have no terminational comparative, but prefix *māgīs*, more :—

Consūltūs, consūltissimūs, *skilful*.

Inclūtūs, inclūtissimūs, *renowned*.

Invictūs, invictissimūs, *invincible*.

Invītūs, invītissimūs, *unwilling*.

Mēritūs, mēritissimūs (very rare),
deserving.

Pār, pārissimūs (very rare), *equal*.

Persuāsūs, persuāsissimū (neuter),
persuaded.

Sācēr, sācerrimūs, *sacred*.

3. The following have no terminational superlative, but for the most part prefix *maxīmē*, most :—

Adōlescens, ādōlescentiōr, *young*.

Agrestīs, āgrestiōr, *rustic*.

Alācēr, ālācēriōr, *active*.

Atēr, atriōr, *black*.

Cēcūs, cēciōr, *blind*.

Dēsēs, dēsēdiōr, *inactive*.

Diūturnūs, diūturniōr, *lasting*.

Infīnitūs, infīnitiōr, *unlimited*.

Ingens, ingentiōr, *great*.

Jējūnūs, jējūniōr, *hungry*.

Jūvēnīs, jūniōr, *young*.

Līcens, līcentiōr, *unrestrained*.

Longinquūs, longinquiōr, *distant*.

Opīmūs, ōpīmiōr, *rich*.

Proclīvīs, procliviōr, *sloping*.

Prōnūs, prōniōr, *bending down*.

Prōpinquūs, prōpinquiōr, *near*.

Prōtervūs, prōterviōr, *violent*.

Salūtārīs, salūtāriōr, *salutary*.

Sātīs, *sufficient*; sātīūs, *preferable*.

Sātūr, sātūriōr, *full*.

Sēnex, sēniōr, *old*.

Silvestrīs, silvestriōr, *woody*.

Sīnistēr, sīnistēriōr, *left*.

Sūpinūs, sūpiniōr, *lying on the back*.

Surdūs, surdiōr, *deaf*.

Tērēs, tērētiōr, *round*.

Remark 1.—The superlative of *jūvēnīs* and *ādōlescens* is supplied by *mīnimūs nātū*, youngest; and that of *sēnex* by *maxīmūs nātū*, oldest. The comparatives of *mīnōr nātū* and *mājōr nātū* sometimes also occur.

4. Many adjectives form the comparative and superlative by prefixing *māgīs*, more, and *maxīmē*, most: as, *piūs*, *māgīs piūs*, *maxīmē piūs*, pious, more pious, most pious. This is especially the case with adjectives in *bundās*, *īmūs*, *īnūs*, *ōrūs*, *īvūs*, and *ūs* with a vowel before it.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 75. 1. Verbs of the third conjugation have *ěř* (short) in the infinitive present; those of the fourth conjugation, *ivě*.

2. INDICATIVE ENDINGS, THIRD CONJUGATION.

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-ě,	-īs,	-īt,
Imperfect,	-ě'-bām,	-ě'-bās,	-ě'-bāt,
Future,	-ām ;	-ēs ;	-ēt ;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-ī-mūs,	-ī-tīs,	-unt,
Imperfect,	-ē-bā'-mūs,	-ē-bā'-tīs,	-ē'-bant,
Future,	-ē'-mūs.	-ē'-tīs.	-ent.

3. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Singular.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-iō,	-īs,	-īt,
Imperfect,	-i-ě'-bām,	-i-ě'-bās,	-i-ě'-bāt,
Future,	-i-ām ;	-i-ēs ;	-i-ēt ;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-ī'-mūs,	-ī'-tīs,	-i-unt,
Imperfect,	-i-ē-bā'-mūs,	-i-ē-bā'-tīs,	-i-ē'-bant,
Future,	-i-ē'-mūs.	-i-ē'-tīs.	-i-ent.

4. By adding these endings to the stems *rěg*², *rule*, and *aud*-, *hear*, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.—INDICATIVE MOOD,
THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
<i>I rule.</i>	<i>I was ruling.</i>	<i>I shall or will rule.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>rě'-gǫ,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bǣm,</i>	<i>rě'-gǣm,</i>
<i>rě'-gĭs,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bās,</i>	<i>rě'-gēs,</i>
<i>rě'-gĭt;</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bāt;</i>	<i>rě'-gēt;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>rěg'-ĭ-mūs,</i>	<i>rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-mūs,</i>
<i>rěg'-ĭ-tĭs,</i>	<i>rěg-ē-bā'-tĭs,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-tĭs,</i>
<i>rě'-gunt.</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bant.</i>	<i>rě'-gent.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD, FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
<i>I hear.</i>	<i>I was hearing.</i>	<i>I shall or will hear.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>au'-di-ǫ,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bǣm,</i>	<i>au'-di-ǣm,</i>
<i>au'-dĭs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bās,</i>	<i>au'-di-ēs,</i>
<i>au'-dĭt;</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bāt;</i>	<i>au'-di-ēt;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>au-dĭ'-mūs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bā'-mūs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-mūs,</i>
<i>au-dĭ'-tĭs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bā'-tĭs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-tĭs,</i>
<i>au'-di-unt.</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bant.</i>	<i>au'-di-ent.</i>

5. The endings of the perfect tenses are the same in all conjugations. The perfect-stem is variously formed in the third conjugation; in the fourth it is formed by adding *-iv* to the present-stem: as, *aud-io*, I am hearing; *aud-ī-vī*, I have heard. See § 47.

6. The supine-stem is generally formed, in the third conjugation, by adding *-t* to the present-stem; in the fourth, by adding *-it*: as, *dūc-ērē, duct-ūm; aud-irē, aud-it-ūm.*

EXERCISE XXXIV.

§ 76. *Vocabulary.*

vallūm, -ī, *rampart.*

castellūm, -ī, *tower.*

fūr, fūr-is, (§ 39, *Rem.* 2), *thief.*

fīnis, -īs, (§ 33, *Rem.* 6, *Exc.* 2),

boundary, end.

vīgiliā, -æ, *watch.*

tertiūs, -ā, -ūm, (§ 63, 1, b), *third.*

dē (*prep. with abl.*), *about, concerning;*

of time, at, after; dē tertiā vīgiliā,

at or after the third watch.

tergūm, -ī, *back.*

rēg-ō, rēg-ērē, rex-ī, rect-ūm, *to rule.*

dūc-ō, dūc-ērē, dux-ī, duct-ūm, *to lead.*

ē-dūc-ō, ē-dūc-ērē, ē-dux-ī, ē-duct-ūm, *to lead out.*

rē-dūc-ō, rē-dūc-ērē, rē-dux-ī, rē-duct-ūm, *to lead back.*

vert-ō, vert-ērē, vert-ī, vers-ūm, *to turn.*

mūn-iō, mūn-irē, mūnīv-ī, mūnīt-ūm, *to fortify.*

pūn-iō, pūn-irē, pūnīv-ī, pūnīt-ūm, *to punish.*

sc-iō, sc-irē, scīv-ī, scīt-ūm, *to know.*

Translate into English.

1 Deūs omniā rēgīt. 2 Impērātōr magnūs cīvitatēs multās

rexīt. 3 Consūl annōs multōs (§ 66, 2) prōvinciām rexērāt.

4 Consūlis frātēr exercītūs reipublicæ dūcēt. Princeps fērox

plēbēm omnēm ad bellūm dūcēbāt. 5 Cēsār dē tertiā vīgiliā

ē castrīs exercītūm ēduxīt. 6 Mariūs nostrōs ad victōriām

duxērāt. 7 Hostēs tergā vertērē. 8 Fūrēs latrōnesquē vultūm

rēgis timent. 9 Impērātōr castrā vallō fossāquē mūnīvīt.

10 Princeps prūdēns omniā Helvētiōrūm oppidā mūniēt.

11 Mariūs consūl exercītūm ad urbēm rēduxīt. 12 Princīpēs

13 Thrācūm castellā multā mūnient. 14 Rex fūrēs latrōnesquē

pūniēbāt. 15 Dōmīnūs pigrōs servōs pūnīt. 16 Dāvūs nīhīl scīt

dē lēgībūs reipublicæ.

Translate into Latin.

The centurion has led back many of the brave soldiers. All the horsemen of the enemy are turning their backs. The boy rules his horse with the bridle. Our men knew nothing about the journey of the enemy. Caesar was leading the whole army through the boundaries of the Æduans. The consul will lead out the army from the town after the third watch. The great king will punish many thieves and robbers. The prudent general had fortified his camp with a rampart and ditch. One of the consuls has led the Romans to victory.

PRONOUNS.

§ 77. 1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ēgō, *I.*

Tū, *thou.*

Suī, *of himself, etc.*

Illē, *that, the former.*

Ipsē, *himself.*

Istē, *that, that of yours.*

Hīc, *this, the latter.*

Īs, *that or he.*

Quīs? *who?*

Quī, *who.*

Meūs, *my.*

Tuūs, *thy.*

Suūs, *his, hers, its, etc.*

Cūjūs? *whose?*

Nostēr, *our.*

Vestēr, *your.*

Nostrās, *of our country.*

Cūjās? *of what country?*

3. Of these, *ēgo*, *tū*, and *suī* are called *substantive*, because they are used as nouns; and *personal*, because *ēgo* always denotes the *speaker*; *tū*, the person *spoken to*; and *suī*, the person *spoken of*.

4. From *ěgo*, *tū*, and *suī* are derived *meūs*, *tuūs*, *suūs*, *noštēr*, *vestēr*, and *nostrūs*, which are adjective words.

5. *Illě*, *ipsě*, *istě*, *hic*, and *is*, are formed on the same pronominal root, *ī*; and *quīs* and *quī*, on the pronominal root *ū*.

SUBSTANTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 78. The substantive personal pronouns are thus declined:—

Singular.

N.	ě'-gŏ, <i>I</i> .	tū, <i>thou</i> .	_____
G.	me'-ī, <i>of me</i> .	tu'-ī, <i>of thee</i> .	{ <i>su'-ī</i> , <i>of himself, herself, itself</i> .
D.	mī'-hī, <i>to me</i> .	tīb'-ī, <i>to thee</i> .	<i>sīb'-ī</i> , <i>to himself, etc.</i>
Ac.	mē, <i>me</i> .	tē, <i>thee</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>himself, etc.</i>
V.	_____	tū, <i>O thou</i> .	_____
Ab.	mē, <i>with me</i> .	tē, <i>with thee</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>with himself, etc.</i>

Plural.

N.	nōs, <i>we</i> .	vōs, <i>ye or you</i> .	_____
G.	{ <i>nos'-trūm</i> } <i>of us</i> .	{ <i>ves'-trūm</i> } <i>of you</i> .	<i>su'-ī</i> , <i>of themselves</i> .
	{ <i>or nos'-trī</i> , }	{ <i>or ves'-trī</i> , }	
D.	nō'-bīs, <i>to us</i> .	vō'-bīs, <i>to you</i> .	<i>sīb'-ī</i> , <i>to themselves</i> .
Ac.	nōs, <i>us</i> .	vōs, <i>you</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>themselves</i> .
V.	_____	vōs, <i>O ye or you</i> .	_____
Ab.	nō'-bīs, <i>with us</i> .	vō'-bīs, <i>with you</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>with themselves</i> .

Remark 1.—The nominatives *ěgo*, *tū*, *nōs*, *vōs*, are expressed with the verb only for the sake of emphasis or contrast: as, *ěgo ěquīto*, *tū ambūlās*, *I am riding, you are walking*; *nōs vŏcābāmūs*, *respondistīs vōs*, *we were calling, ye answered*.

Remark 2.—The syllable *mēt* is annexed, for emphasis, to all the forms of the substantive personal pronouns, except *tū*, *nostrūm*,

and *vestrūm*; *sēsē* is frequently used for *sē* being more emphatic; also *tūtē*, and *tūtēmēt*, for *tū*.

Remark 3.—The forms *nostrī* and *vestrī* are properly the genitive singular neuter of the possessives *nostēr* and *vestēr*, and denote one whole, without reference to its parts: they are almost always objective: as, *ōdiūm vestrī*, hatred of you. *Nostrūm* and *vestrūm* are generally partitive genitives: as, *quīs vestrūm*? They are sometimes objective, like *nostrī* and *vestrī*; as, *cūpīdūs vestrūm*, desirous of you; and sometimes subjective, especially with *omniūm*; as, *nostrūm omniūm pārens*, the parent of us all,—not *nostrī omniūm*.

Remark 4.—*Suī* is also called *reflexive*, because it refers to the leading subject: as, *puēr sēsē laudāt*, the boy praises himself. But where no ambiguity can arise, *suī* sometimes refers to some other word than the leading subject: as, *prædicant consulēm sēsē laudārē*.

Remark 5.—The substantive personals take the gender of the nouns for which they stand.

EXERCISE XXXV.

§ 79. 1. *Rule of Syntax.*—If the subject consist of more than one, the verb is plural. If the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as, *ēgo ēt tū* (= *nōs*) *vālēmūs*, I and you are well; *tū ēt Cīcēro* (= *vōs*) *vālētīs*, you and Cicero are well.

2. *Rule of Position.*—The preposition *cūm* is always put after the ablative of the substantive personal pronouns: as, *mēcūm*, with me.

3. *Rule of Position.*—The substantive personal pronouns, when connected by conjunctions to other words, stand first: as, *tū ēt rex*, you and the king.

Ego always precedes: as, *ēgo ēt rex*, the king and I; *ēgo ēt tū*, you and I.

4. *Rule of Position.*—Contrasted words are put as near together, or as far apart, as possible. *Nōs* *ēquitā-mūs, ambūlātīs vōs*; or, *ēquitāmūs nōs, vōs ambūlātīs.*

5. *Omnēs in vicō puērī*, all the boys in the village. (Observe that *in vicō* is placed between *omnēs* and *puērī*.)

Translate into English.

(*Nōs** *ēquitābīmūs, ambūlābītīs vōs.* *In urbē magnām multītūdīnēm hōmīnūm vīdēbīs.* *Egō ēt pātēr in rēgīs hortō cōenābīmūs.* *Tū ēt Lūciūs nōbiscūm mănēbītīs.* *Egō ēt Cīcērō puērīs librōs dābāmūs.* *Rex Thrācūm tībī multūm aurī dābīt.* *Rēgīnæ nunciūs mīhī viām monstrābīt.* *Tū ēt Tulliūs mēcūm ambūlābātīs.* *Ancillā sībī mēdicīnām pārāvērāt.* *Impērātōr fortīs multōs captīvōs sēcūm dūcēt.* *Consul mercātōrēs omnēs ād sē convōcāvērāt.* *Poētæ carminā audiēmūs.* *Sāpiens sēsē nōn laudāt.* *Egō ēt tū āpūd Tulliūm cōenābāmūs.* *Imprōbī sēsē timent.* *Puēr bōnūs in urbēm nōs dūcēt.* *Dāvūs, Cātōnīs servūs, sēsē cultrō vulnērāvīt.*

Translate into Latin.

(In a great city we see many men. (My) father and I sustained the attack of the enemy many hours (§ 66, 2). In a short time Lucius and I will have given books to all the boys. I rode, you† walked. You and Tully will remain many days with us. The general has given (to) one of the soldiers much silver and gold. Wise men do not praise themselves. We shall hear the songs of the great poet. We have punished all the thieves in the province. I have held the fierce bull by the horns. The wicked king does not rule himself. Ye have walked five thousand paces (§ 66, 2).

* See model of analysis 3. (App. XI.)

† You will be translated by *tū* when it refers to one; by *vōs* when it means more than one.

ADJECTIVE-PERSONAL, OR POSSESSIVE, PRONOUNS.

§ 80. From the substantive pronouns are derived the *adjective-personal*, or *possessive*, pronouns, so called because they are *adjectives* and denote *possession*. They are—

From *meī*, *meūs, meā, meūm, my, mine.*

(voc. masc. *mī*, rarely *meūs*.) (Like *bōnūs*.)

From *tuī*, *tuūs, tuā, tuūm, thy, thine, your.* (Like *bōnūs*.)

From *suī*, *suūs, suā, suūm, his, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*

From *nostrī*, *noštēr, nostrā, nostrūm, our, ours.* (Like *pulchēr*.)

From *vestrī*, *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, your, yours.* (Like *pulchēr*.)

Remark 1.—The emphatic suffixes *mēt* and *ptē* are sometimes added to the possessive pronouns, especially in the ablative singular: as, *meāmēt mănū*, with my own hand.

Remark 2.—*Suūs*, like *suī*, is always reflexive, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. But a sentence may be so constructed that the natural subject becomes the object: thus, instead of *hic ā civībūs suīs ex urbē ejectūs est* (this man was expelled from the city by his own citizens), we find *hunc civēs suī ex urbē ejēcērunt* (his own citizens expelled this man from the city).

Remark 3.—While *suī* refers to the *leading* subject, *suūs* refers to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. *Ariovistūs respondīt nēmīnēm sēcūm sīnē suā pernīciē contendissē*, Ariovistus replied that no one had contended with him without his own destruction. (Here *sēcūm* refers to *Ariovistus*, and *suā* to *nēmīnēm*.)

EXERCISE XXXVI.

§ 81. 1. Questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* are

asked in Latin by means of the interrogative particles *ně*, *nonně*, *nŭm*.

2. (a.) The enclitic *ně* asks for information, and is placed after the verb, usually standing with it at the beginning of the sentence. It is not translated. *Scrībīt-ně Caiŭs?* *is Caius writing?* *Pătěr tuŭs tībī ěquŭm dĕdīt-ně?* *has your father given you a horse?*

(b.) *Ně* stands with any especially emphatic word at the beginning of the sentence. *Tŭ-ně scrībīs?* *are you writing?*

3. *Nŭm* stands at the beginning of the sentence, and expects the answer *no*. It is not translated. *Nŭm tŭ pătřēm tuŭm nĕcāvistī?* *have you murdered your own father?*

4. *Nonně* (placed at or near the beginning of the sentence) expects the answer *yes*. *Nonně ěpistŏlām scripsistī?* *have you not written the letter?*

5. The answer *yes* is expressed in Latin by repeating the predicate: as, "Have you seen the king? Yes." *Vīdistī-ně rĕgĕm?* *Vīdī.* *No* is expressed by repeating the predicate with *nŏn*: "Have you seen the king? No." *Vīdistī-ně rĕgĕm?* *Nŏn vīdī.* Hence questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* are called *predicative questions*.

Vocabulary.

cŭbĭcŭlŭm, -ī, *bedchamber.*

cantŭs, -ŭs, *singing.*

vox, vŏc-ĭs, *voice.*

sālŭs, sālŭtĭs, *safety.*

tuæ sālŭtĭs causā, *for the sake of your own safety.*

scrīb-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, scrips-ī, script-ŭm, *to write.*

con-scrīb-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, conscrips-ī, conscript-ŭm, *to levy, enroll.*

rĕlinqu-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, rĕliqu-ī, rĕlict-ŭm, *to leave.*

vĕn-iŏ, -irĕ, vĕn-ī, vent-ŭm, *to come.*

dorm-iŏ, -irĕ, dormiv-ī, dormit-ŭm, *to sleep.*

Translate into English.

Audīs-nē vōcēm patrīs meī*? Nonnē magnitūdō ōpērīs consulēm sapiēntēm tardābit? Nonnē filiī impērātōrīs in castrīs dormiēbant? Nūm servūs tuūs tōtām noctēm in silvā mansit? Vidistī-nē magnūm ōviūm grēgēm in āgrō meō? Tū-nē rēgēm nostrūm vīdistī. Nostri (§ 60, *Rem.*) tōtūm diēm impētūm hostiūm sustinuerant. Vestrae sālūtis causā vōs mōnuī. Tuæ sālūtis causā in urbēm tē duxī. Audiēs-nē cantūm āviūm? Nūm consūl trēs lēgiōnēs parvō in vīcō conscripsit? Pulchrā puellā mănū suā ēpistolām scribēt.¹² Vēniēt-nē in urbēm impērātōr magnūs cūm omnībūs copiīs? Conscripsit-nē Cæsār lēgiōnēs duās in prōvinciā? Mātēr imprōbā suām filiām vēnēnō nēcāvit.¹⁴ Māriūs, dux Rōmānūs, omnēs cōpiās suās ex hibernīs ēduxērāt.

Translate into Latin.

1 Will the beautiful queen write the whole letter with her own hand? 2 Will a kind father murder his own children? No. 3 Will a wise king break the laws of the state? 4 Shall we sup with (*apud*) Tully's son-in-law? 5 Will not the brave general lead the forces of the republic to victory? Yes. 6 Has your father seen my slave in his garden? 7 Were your slaves carrying heavy burdens through the city? 8 Our kind brother will advise us for the sake of our own safety. 9 Will not the good shepherd defend all his own sheep from dogs and wolves? Yes. 10 Thou shalt sleep in the little bedchamber. 11 Will a brave general leave his army in the boundaries of the enemy? We shall hear the voice of the general.

* See model of analysis 4. (App. XI.)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 82. 1. Demonstratives are so called because they are used to *point out* things: as, *illě puēr, that boy*; *hæc silvǎ, this forest*.

2. They are *illě, istě, hěc, ǐs*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>il'-lē,</i>	<i>il'-lǎ,</i>	<i>il'-lūd,</i>
Gen.	<i>il-lǐ'-us,</i>	<i>il-lǐ'-us,</i>	<i>il'-lǐ'-us,</i>
Dat.	<i>il'-lī,</i>	<i>il'-lī,</i>	<i>il'-lī,</i>
Acc.	<i>il'-lūm,</i>	<i>il'-lām,</i>	<i>il'-lūd,</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>il'-lō;</i>	<i>il'-lā;</i>	<i>il'-lō;</i>

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>il'-lī,</i>	<i>il'-lǎe,</i>	<i>il'-lǎ,</i>
Gen.	<i>il-lō'-rūm,</i>	<i>il-lǎ'-rūm,</i>	<i>il-lō'-rūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>il'-līs,</i>	<i>il'-līs,</i>	<i>il'-līs,</i>
Acc.	<i>il'-lōs,</i>	<i>il'-lās,</i>	<i>il'-lǎ,</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>il'-līs.</i>	<i>il'-līs.</i>	<i>il'-līs.</i>

Istě is declined like *illě*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>hěc,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>
Gen.	<i>hū'-jūs,</i>	<i>hū'-jūs,</i>	<i>hū'-jūs,</i>
Dat.	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>
Acc.	<i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>hōc;</i>	<i>hāc;</i>	<i>hōc;</i>

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>hī,</i>	<i>hæ,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
Gen.	<i>hō'-rŭm,</i>	<i>hā'-rŭm,</i>	<i>hō'-rŭm,</i>
Dat.	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>
Acc.	<i>hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>hīs.</i>	<i>hīs.</i>	<i>hīs.</i>

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>īs,</i>	<i>e'-ă,</i>	<i>īd,</i>
Gen.	<i>ē'-jŭs,</i>	<i>ē'-jŭs,</i>	<i>ē'-jŭs,</i>
Dat.	<i>e'-ī,</i>	<i>e'-ī,</i>	<i>e'-ī,</i>
Acc.	<i>e'-ŭm,</i>	<i>e'-ăm,</i>	<i>īd,</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>e'-ō;</i>	<i>e'-ă;</i>	<i>e'-ō;</i>

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>ī'-ī,</i>	<i>e'-æ,</i>	<i>e'-ă,</i>
Gen.	<i>e-ō'-rŭm,</i>	<i>e-ā'-rŭm,</i>	<i>e-ō'-rŭm,</i>
Dat.	<i>ī'-īs or e'-īs,</i>	<i>ī'-īs or e'-īs,</i>	<i>ī'-īs or e'-īs,</i>
Acc.	<i>e'-ōs,</i>	<i>e'-ās,</i>	<i>e'-ă,</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>ī'-īs or e'-īs.</i>	<i>ī'-īs or e'-īs.</i>	<i>ī'-īs or e'-īs.</i>

3. *Istic* (sometimes written *isthic*) and *illie* are compounded of *istĕ hic* and *illĕ hic*, and are more emphatic than *istĕ* and *illĕ*. *Istic* is thus declined:—

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>is'-tīc,</i>	<i>is'-tæc,</i>	<i>is'tōc or is'-tŭc,</i>
Acc.	<i>is'-tunc,</i>	<i>is'-tanc,</i>	<i>is'tōc or is'-tŭc,</i>
Abl.	<i>is'-tōc;</i>	<i>is'-tæc;</i>	<i>is'-tōc;</i>

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	—	<i>is'-tæc,</i>	—
Acc.	—	—	<i>is'-tæc.</i>

Illie is declined in the same manner.

4. The suffix *děm* is annexed to *īs*, forming *īděm*, “the same,” which is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>ī'-děm,</i>	<i>e'-ǎ-děm,</i>	<i>ī'-děm,</i>
Gen.	<i>ē-jus'-děm,</i>	<i>ē-jus'-děm,</i>	<i>ē-jus'-děm,</i>
Dat.	<i>e-ī'-děm,</i>	<i>e-ī'-děm,</i>	<i>e-ī'-děm,</i>
Acc.	<i>e-un'-děm,</i>	<i>e-an'-děm,</i>	<i>ī'-děm,</i>
Voc.	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	<i>e-ō'-děm ;</i>	<i>e-ā'-děm ;</i>	<i>e-ō'-děm ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>i-ī'-děm,</i>	<i>e-æ'-děm,</i>	<i>e'-ǎ-děm,</i>
Gen.	<i>e-ō-run'-děm,</i>	<i>e-ā-run'-děm,</i>	<i>e-ō-run'-děm,</i>
Dat.	<i>e-is'-děm or i-is'- děm,</i>	<i>e-is'-děm or i-is'- děm,</i>	<i>e-is'-děm or i-is'- děm,</i>
Acc.	<i>e-os'-děm,</i>	<i>e-as'-děm,</i>	<i>e'-ǎ-děm,</i>
Voc.	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	<i>e-is'-děm or i-is'- děm.</i>	<i>e-is'-děm or i-is'- děm.</i>	<i>e-is'-děm or i-is'- děm.</i>

EXERCISE XXXVII.

IS, IDEM.

§ 83. 1. *Is*, that, is very often used as a substantive-personal pronoun (*he, she, it, they, them*, etc.) of the same gender with the noun for which it stands: as, *Cicēro multōs librōs scripsit ; eōs (i.e. librōs) libentēr lēgo ;* Cicero has written many books ; I read *them* (*i.e. the books*) with pleasure.

2. (a.) *His, her, its, their*, will be translated by *suūs* when they refer to the subject ; (b.) if they refer to any other word in the sentence, they will be translated by the genitive of the demonstrative, *īs, eā, id*.

(a.) Rex filiū suū ad sē vōcāt,	<i>The king calls his (own) son to him.</i>
(b.) Rex agricolām et filiū ejūs ad sē vōcāt,	<i>The king calls the farmer and his (the farmer's) son to him.</i>
Helvētī in Œduōrū finēs cōpiās suās transduxerant, eōrumquē āgrōs pōpūlabantūr,	<i>The Helvetians had led over their forces into the country of the Œduans, and were laying waste their (the Œduans') fields.</i>

Remark 1.—An idea is repeated emphatically by *et is* or *nec is*: as, *unā in dōmō, et eā angustā*, in one house, and that a small one; *unūm praeliū, nec id difficilē*, one battle, and that not a hard one.

Remark 2.—*Idēm* is often equivalent to *also* in English: as, *Cicero erat orator idemque philosophus*, Cicero was an orator, and also a philosopher (*literally*, and the same was a philosopher).

Remark 3.—The demonstratives are adjectives, and can properly be called *pronouns* only when they stand for nouns.

Vocabulary.

scriptor, -or-is, <i>writer.</i>	præstans, -ant-is, <i>excellent, distinguished.</i>
Ovidius, -i, <i>Ovid.</i>	libentē (adv.), <i>gladly, with pleasure.</i>
Virgilius, -i, <i>Virgil.</i>	Dumnorix, -ig-is, <i>Dumnorix.</i>
Platō, -ōn-is, <i>Plato.</i>	

gēr-ō, gēr-ērē, gess-i, gest-ūm, *to wage, carry on.*

contend-ō, contend-ērē, contend-i, content-ūm, *to strive, to fight, to contend.*

Translate into English.

Cæsār hostēs fūgāvit, et ab iis* obsidēs multōs postulāvit. Rōmānī cū Gallīs contendērunt, atquē in eōrū finibūs bellūm gessērunt. Rex mercatōrēs omnēs ad sē convōcāvit, atquē iis multū aurī (§ 73) dedit. Consulis filiā pulcherrimā est; eām in urbē vidī. Dumnorix eō (*that*) tempore (§ 66, 1) in Germāniā bellūm gērēbat. In eodēm oppidō multī milites fuerunt. Tullius eundēm servūm ad sē vōcābit. Eodēm diē impērator clārus ad castrā vēnit. Ovidius et Virgilius sunt poetæ clārissimī; opēra eōrū libentē legimūs. Cæsār Labienūm et ejūs filiū in Galliā reliquerāt. Poetæ opēra suā laudant.

* See model of analysis 5. (App. XI.)

Poētā clārūs impēratōrēm āmāt, ēt ējūs virtūtēm laudābīt.
Pātēr tuūs filiām suām āmāt, ēt ējūs libērīs multūm
argenti (§ 73) dābīt.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero is a very distinguished orator; we shall hear him with pleasure. Plato is an excellent writer; have you read all his works? Will the queen see her son and his daughter in our city? The king will not leave Tully and his (Tully's) son in the city. A wise man does not carry all his gold with him. In one day Cæsar led the whole army through the boundaries of the Helvetians to Lake Lemannus; on the same day he routed very great forces of the enemy. At that time the rains had swollen all the rivers, and were keeping (*continēre*) the Germans in their own boundaries. The king loved his faithful slave, and gave him a golden necklace. Have you seen the centurion's beautiful daughter? I saw her in the king's grove. Cæsar was a famous general, and also (*Rem. 2*) a distinguished writer.

HIC, ISTE, ILLE.

§ 84. 1. HIC, HÆC, HŌC, *this*, points out a thing near the speaker in place or time, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *first person*: as, *hic liber*, this book (near me); *hoc diē*, on this day.

2. ISTĒ, ISTĂ, ISTŮD, *this, that*, points out a thing near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *second person*: as, *istē liber*, that book (of yours).

3. ILLĒ, ILLĂ, ILLŮD, *that*, points out a thing remote from the speaker, and is often called the demonstrative of the *third person*: as, *illē liber*, that book (yonder).

Remark 1.—*Hic* — *illē*, and *illē* — *hic*, are translated *the former* — *the latter, the one* — *the other*, etc.: as, *Cæsār erat Cicerōnī æquālīs: hic impērātōr clārūs; illē præstans erat ōrātōr; Cæsār was contemporary with Cicero: the former was a famous general; the latter, a distinguished orator.*

Remark 2.—*Hic* and *illē* are sometimes used like *is*, as substantive personals (he, him, etc.), though generally more emphatic.

Remark 3.—*Hic* often refers to what follows: as, *Gallōrūm oppugnatio est hæc*, the mode of attack among the Gauls is as follows. *Illē* is sometimes used in the same way.

Remark 4.—*Istē* often expresses contempt: as, *istē hōmo*, that fellow.

Remark 5.—*Illē* often points out something well known or distinguished: as, *illē Pittācūs*, the well-known Pittacus.

Remark 6.—The emphatic suffix *cē* is added to some of the cases of *hic*: as, *hūjuscē, hoscē*.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Translate into English.

Hic servūs dōminūm amat. Hæc epistolā sōrōrēm meam delectābit. Hęc bellūm cīvilē grāvissimūm et atrōcissimūm est. Hic puēr bōnūs, illē est imprōbūs. Hic milēs omniūm est fortissimūs. Istē tuūs equūs pulchrūm animāl est. Istā tuā ōrātiō rempublicām servāvit. Istē-nē nōs pūniēt? Illē bōs magnā cornuā hābēt. Illōs milītēs in castrā dūcēmūs. Equitēs omnēs ad illūd oppidūm festinant. Hic pastōr bōnūs grēgēm servābit.

Translate into Latin.

This good master gives food to all his slaves. That dove of yours will fly through the thick woods. Those dogs of yours will frighten all the boys in the village. That fierce lion has torn in pieces many sheep and cows. This excellent orator will delight the common people with his speech.

That maid-servant of yours will prepare medicine for the queen and her (the queen's) daughters. Will you give that beautiful horse to my father? Has the king punished all the thieves and robbers in this city? These horsemen will urge on their horses with spurs.

INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

§ 85. The pronoun IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM, *himself, herself, itself*, is called *intensive*, because it makes the word to which it is added more emphatic: as, *rēgēm ipsūm vidī*, *I have seen the king himself*; *in ipsīs flūmīnīs rīpīs*, *on the very banks of the river*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>ip'-sě,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>
Gen.	<i>ip-sǐ'-us,</i>	<i>ip-sǐ'-us,</i>	<i>ip-sǐ'-us,</i>
Dat.	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sī,</i>
Acc.	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>	<i>ip'-sām,</i>	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>
Voc.	<i>ip'-sě,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>
Abl.	<i>ip'-sō;</i>	<i>ip'-sā;</i>	<i>ip'-sō;</i>

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sæ,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>
Gen.	<i>ip-sō'-rūm,</i>	<i>ip-sǎ'-rūm,</i>	<i>ip-sō'-rūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>ip'-sīs,</i>	<i>ip'-sīs,</i>	<i>ip'-sīs,</i>
Acc.	<i>ip'-sōs,</i>	<i>ip'-sās,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>
Voc.	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sæ,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>
Abl.	<i>ip'-sīs.</i>	<i>ip'-sīs.</i>	<i>ip'-sīs.</i>

Remark 1.—*Ipsě*, when used reflexively, agrees with the subject if that is to be made especially prominent: as, *ēgo mē ipsē laudo* (literally), *I myself praise me* (*i.e.* *I do the praising myself*; others do not do it). On the other hand, *ipsē* agrees with

the object if that is to be made especially prominent: as, *mē ipsū laudo*, I praise *myself* (i.e. I do not praise other people).

Remark 2.—The oblique cases of *ipsē* are used reflexively for the forms of *suī* and *suūs*, to avoid ambiguity, or for the sake of emphasis: as, *quī in ipsōrū linguā Celtæ appellantūr*, who in their own language are called Celts.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

§ 86. 1. *Rule of Syntax.*—The infinitive is often used as a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb: as, *grātū est tecū ambulārē*, it is pleasant to walk with you. (*Subject Infinitive.*)

2. *Rule of Syntax.*—The infinitive is used as a complement (filling up) with certain verbs and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea: as, *pārāt bellū gērēre*, he is preparing to wage war. (*Complementary Infinitive.*)

Vocabulary.

dē (prep. with abl.), <i>about, concerning.</i>	vincūlūm, -ī, <i>chain.</i>
dē sē ipsō, <i>about one's self, about himself.</i>	ferreūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>of iron, iron.</i>
Alexandēr, -drī, <i>Alexander.</i>	irācundiā, -æ, <i>hasty temper.</i>
Măcēdōniā, -æ, <i>Macedonia.</i>	orbīs, -īs, (§ 33), <i>circle.</i>
intēr (prep. with acc.), <i>between, among.</i>	orbīs terrārū, <i>the world (the circle of the countries).</i>
intēr sē, <i>among themselves, with one another.</i>	sempēr (adv.), <i>always.</i>
	făcīnūs, -ōr-īs, <i>deed, crime.</i>
	suā (§ 60, Rem.), <i>his (own) things, his (own) property.</i>
prădic-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to tell, to boast.</i>	
instru-ō, -ērē, instrux-ī, instruct-ūm, <i>to draw up.</i>	
constitu-ō, -ērē, constitu-ī, constitūt-ūm, <i>to determine.</i>	
ascend-ō, -ērē, ascend-ī, ascens-ūm, <i>to ascend.</i>	
vinc-iō, -irē, vinx-ī, vinet-ūm, <i>to bind.</i>	
vinc-ō, -ērē, vīc-ī, vict-ūm, <i>to conquer.</i>	

Translate into English.

¹ Egō ipsē tōtām noctēm vīgīlāvī. ² Rex ipsē exercītūm triplicī āciē instruxērāt. ³ Nonnē rēgīnā ipsā īn hāc dōmō dormīvīt? ⁴ Dēcīmā ipsā lēgiō magnītūdīnēm pēricūlī tīmēbāt. ⁵ Tū-nē tē ipsē laudābīs? ⁶ Mē ipsē nōn laudābō. ⁷ Poētā sē ipsē laudābāt. ⁸ Turpē est dē sē ipsō prādicārē. ⁹ Pātēr ipsē ēt filiūs suūs dē āgrī fīnībūs contendunt. ¹⁰ Alexandēr magnūs, rex Mācēdōniāe, orbēm terrārūm vincērē pārāvērāt. ¹¹ Alexandēr sē ipsūm nōn rexīt. ¹² Impērātōr magnūs suām īrācundiām nōn rēgīt. ¹³ Difficillīmūm (§ 67, *Rem.* 2) est montēm altūm ascēdērē. ¹⁴ Fācīnūs (§ 67, 3) est cīvēm Rōmānūm vincērē. ¹⁵ Sāpiens sempēr sē ipsē rēgīt. ¹⁶ Helvētīī suā omniā sēcūm portābant.

Translate into Latin.

¹ Our king has determined to conquer the whole world. ² Your king is a boy. ³ The common people have bound our king with chains. ⁴ These soldiers are always boasting about themselves. ⁵ It is not very difficult to ascend a hill. ⁶ Nothing is more difficult than to rule a hasty temper. ⁷ Have you read the works of Cicero, the distinguished orator? ⁸ Will a father and a son contend with one another about an eagle's wing? No. ⁹ Am I myself praising myself? ¹⁰ Has not this fellow (§ 84, *Rem.* 4) always praised himself? ¹¹ It is a great crime to kill (one's) father. ¹² The wicked judge is preparing to bind Roman citizens. ¹³ The common people will bind the judge himself. ¹⁴ The greatness of this work will hinder Cæsar himself. ¹⁵ The general has determined to put three legions into winter quarters.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 87. 1. The pronoun *quī*, *quæ*, *quōd* (*who*, *which*) is called *relative*, because it refers to some word or phrase going before, called the *antecedent*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī,	quæ,	quōd,
Gen.	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,
Acc.	quēm,	quām,	quōd,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	quō ;	quā ;	quō ;

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	quō'-rūm,	quā'-rūm,	quō'-rūm,
Dat.	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.

2. The other relatives are *quōt*, *quālīs*, *quantūs*, *quōtūs*, and their compounds ; with *quīcumquē* or *quīcunquē*, and *quisquīs*, compounds of *quī*.

3. The suffix *cunquē* (derived from *quisquē*) means *ever* or *soever*. *Quīcunquē*, *whoever*, *whosoever*, *what-ever*, *whatsoever*, is declined like *quī*.

quīcunquē,	quæcunquē,	quodcunquē,
cūjuscunquē,	cūjuscunquē,	cūjuscunquē,
cuīcunquē,	cuīcunquē,	cuīcunquē, etc.

4. *Quisquīs*, *whoever*, is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis'-quīs,</i>	<i>quis'-quīs,</i>	<i>quid'-quīd or quic'-quīd.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem'-quēm,</i>	—————	<i>quid'-quīd or quic'-quīd.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō'-quō,</i>	<i>quā'-quā,</i>	<i>quō'-quō.</i>
<i>Plural.</i>			

Masc.
Nom. <i>quī'-quī,</i>
Dat. <i>quī-būs'-quī-būs.</i>

Remark 1.—The demonstratives, when used as pronouns at all (*i.e.* when they stand for a noun), have antecedents, with which they agree in gender and number: as, *Cicēro multōs librōs scripsit*; *eōs (i.e. librōs) libentē lēgo*. *Puellā est pulcherrimā; eām (i.e. puellām) in hortō vīdī.*

Remark 2.—*Quī* is sometimes used for the ablative singular of all genders, and rarely for the ablative plural.

Remark 3.—*Quēis* (monosyllable) and *quīs* are sometimes used for *quībūs*.

EXERCISE XL.

1. Propositions are either principal or dependent. A principal proposition makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent proposition does not make complete sense alone, but must be connected with another proposition.

2. A proposition introduced by a relative pronoun is called a *dependent relative proposition*.

3. Every relative proposition is an adjective, limiting the antecedent. Thus, "The boy *who studies*" is equivalent to "The *studious* boy."

4. *Rule of Syntax.*—The relative pronoun agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; but the case depends upon the construction of the relative proposition: as, *ēgo quī scribo, I who write*; *vōs quī scribitis, you who write*; *puellā quā vīdī, the girl whom I saw*.

(Here *quām* is singular, feminine, third person, because *puellā* is the same; but accusative, because it is the object of the transitive verb *vīdī*.)

Remark 1.—The relative takes the case which the antecedent would have in the same circumstances, and frequently agrees with the antecedent repeated: as, *puellā quam puellām vīdī*, the girl which girl I saw.

5. *Rule of Position.*—The preposition *cūm* is annexed to the ablative plural of the relative *quī*, and sometimes also to the ablative singular: as, *quībuscūm*.

6. *Rule of Position.*—The relative generally stands at the beginning of the relative sentence, after the antecedent, and as near the latter as possible; but for the sake of emphasis the relative sentence is often placed first.

7. In general expressions the forms of *is* are often used merely as the antecedent of a relative clause: as, *Is stultūs est quī dē sē ipsō prædicāt*, he is foolish who boasts of himself. *Hic* is often used in the same way. *Is* is emphatic when it stands at the beginning of the principal sentence.

8. When the antecedent is *indefinite*, it is often omitted altogether: as, *quī tertiām partēm incōlunt Gallī appellantūr*, (*those*) who inhabit the third part are called Gauls. (Compare the English, “*Who steals my purse steals trash*,” *i.e.* *any one who*, etc.)

9. As an adjective, when the noun it limits is omitted, becomes a noun (§ 60, *Rem.*), so an adjective proposition becomes a noun when the antecedent is omitted. *Quī — incōlunt*, above, is the subject of *appellantūr*.

Vocabulary.

incōl-ō, -ērē, incōlu-ī, *to inhabit*.

dīvīd-ō, -ērē, dīvīs-ī, dīvīs-ūm, *to separate, divide*.

contīnentēr (adv.), *continually*.

trans (prep. with acc.), *across, over, beyond*.

Translate into English.

1 Omnis Galliae sunt partes tres, quarum* unam incolunt Belgae. 2 Trans Rhenum incolunt Germani, quibuscum Belgae continenter bellum gerunt. 3 Flumen Rhenus, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit, latissimus est atque altissimus. 4 Jura, qui una ex parte Helvetios continet, mons est altissimus. Caesar legiones duas, quae in Gallia hiemabant, ex hibernis eduxit. Puellae pulchrae, quas in horto vidisti, filiae sunt Ciceronis. Recentēs imbrēs, qui fluminā omnia auxerunt, opus nostrum tardabunt. Puēr cui māgister librū dedit, optimus est puērōrum. Agricolā cūjūs cānis ancillā terruit, in urbem venit. Helvetii eos qui leges reipublicae violant igni cremant. Qui sua omnia secum portat non sapiens est. Qui sese non regit, est-ne is vir magnus?

Translate into Latin.

Caesar will hasten into the province with three legions which he has levied in Gaul. The centurion has divided his field into three parts, one of which he will give to his son. Have you showed to your father the letter which the queen wrote with her own hand? The general had placed in winter quarters the legions which he had levied in the province. The great river which we saw is the Rhine. Will not the general slay the robber who lives in the forest? Is not he (is) a fool who holds (tēnērē) a fierce bull by the horns? The fields through which we were walking are very fertile. (He) who boasts about himself is a fool. (He) who conquers himself is a brave man.

INTERROGATIVES.

§ 88. 1. The interrogatives are used in asking questions. Though always called *pronouns*, they are

* See model of analysis 5. (App. XI.)

not properly such, as they do not stand for nouns. They are—

Quīs? } Who? Which? What?
 Quī? }

Quisnām? } (Stronger than *quīs* and *quī*.)

Quīnām? } Who then? Which then? What then? Who pray? etc.

Utēr? Which of the two? (§ 56.)

Quōt? How many? (Indeclinable.)

Quōtūs, -ā, -ūm? What? (in number: as, *Quōtā hōrā*? What o'clock?

Quālīs, -ē? Of what kind?

Quantūs, -ā, -ūm? How great? How large?

Quantūlūs, -ā, -ūm? How small? (Diminutive.)

Cūjūs? Whose?

Cūjās (cūjātīs)? Of what country?

Remark 1.—*Quī* and *quīnām* are declined like the relative *quī*. They are almost always adjectives, but sometimes substantives.

Remark 2.—*Quīs* and *quisnām* are usually substantives, but sometimes adjectives. *Quīd* is always a substantive.

2. *Quīs* is thus declined:—

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quīs,	quæ,	quīd,
Gen.	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,
Acc.	quēm,	quām,	quīd,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	quō;	quā;	quō;

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	quō'-rūm,	quā'-rūm,	quō'-rūm,
Dat.	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.

3. The genitive *cūjūs*, *whose?* is sometimes used as an adjective, agreeing with the noun which it limits in gender, number, and case: as, *cūjūm pēcūs est hōc?* *whose flock is this?* It is thus declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	<i>cū'-jūs,</i>	<i>cū'-jā,</i>	<i>cū'-jūm,</i>	<i>cū'-jæ,</i>
Acc.	<i>cū'-jūm,</i>	<i>cū'-jām,</i>	————	<i>cū'-jās.</i>
Abl.	————	<i>cū'-jā.</i>	————	

Remark 3.—The interrogatives are often exclamatory: as, *Quantā sunt præmiā virtūtis!* How great are the rewards of virtue!

EXERCISE XLI.

Translate into English.

Quis tēcūm in hortō ambulābāt? Quæ rēgiō est Galliā (§ 70, 2) fērāciōr? Quī consūl est Cīcērōnē prūdentiōr? Quēm hōmīnē vidistī quā Balbūm (§ 70, 1) turpiōrē? Quā in terrā est poētā Virgīliō præstantiōr? Cūjā ancillā est hæc? Rēgīnæ. Quī puēr calcēm Dāvī lāpidē vulnērāvīt? Quid argentī (§ 73) apūd tē hābēs? Quīnam rex tībī aurūm dābit, Dāvē? Quisnam tē vocāvīt, Tullī? (§ 24, *Rem. 2.*) Quī pastōr prūdēns ōvēs hiēmē tondēbīt? Cūjūs cānīs bōvēm meūm mōmordīt? Quā in civitatē impērātōr lēgiōnēs in hiberniis collōcābīt? Uter puērōrūm Balbūm lāpidē vulnērāvīt?

Translate into Latin.

Who, pray, will show (to) us the way through the king's forest? What enemy will sustain the attack of our warlike soldiers? What is baser than a lie? Who gave (to) you that (§ 83, 2) beautiful horse of yours? What citizens were with (apūd) Cicero? Who, pray, has called together all these merchants? Which of you slept in the little bedchamber? What general will leave his army in

the enemy's country (*fīnīs*)? How great a war will the king wage with the nearest states? How many legions are (there) in the province?

INDEFINITES.

§ 89. 1. The indefinites are adjective words, frequently used as nouns (§ 60, *Rem.*), but not properly pronouns, as they do not stand for nouns. They are—

Aliquīs (as a noun), *some one* (I do not know who); *any one*; neuter, *something, any thing*.

(as an adjective), *some* (I do not know what); *any*:—stronger than the simple *quīs*.

Quidā (as a noun), *some one, a certain one* (implying that I know who, though I may not wish to say); plural, *some*; neuter, *something*.

(as an adjective), *a certain, some*.

Quispiā (nearly equivalent to *aliquīs*), *some one, any one, some, any*.

Quīvis, } (as a noun), *any one* (where all are included), *any one you*
Quilibēt } *please*; neuter, *any thing you please*.

(as an adjective), *any, any you please*.

Quisquā, *any one* (where all are *excluded*); neuter, *any thing*. Almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences, or sentences implying a negative. *Any* (where all are excluded) is expressed adjectivally by *ullūs*.

Quis, quī (as an adjective), *any, some*; (as a noun), *any one, some one*; neuter, *any thing, something*:—used especially after relatives, and *sī, nē*, and the interrogative prefixes *ec-* and *num-*, forming *ecquis* and *numquis*. *Aliquīs* after *ne, si*, or a relative, is more emphatic than *quīs*.

Quisque (as an adjective). *each*; (noun), *each one, every one*.

Unusquisque (stronger than *quisque*), *each, each one, every one*.

Aliquōt (indeclinable), *some, a considerable number*.

Aliquantūs, -ā, -ūm, *somewhat great, considerable*.

2. All these (except *quisquā*, *aliquōt*, and *aliquantūs*) have *quōd* and *quīd* in the neuter: the *quod* forms are adjectives; the *quid* forms, nouns.

3. The indefinite *quīs* is thus declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quis <i>or</i> quī,	quā <i>or</i> quæ,	quid <i>or</i> quöd,
Gen.	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,
Acc.	quem,	quām,	quid <i>or</i> quöd,
Voc.	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	quō;	quā;	quō;

	<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī,	quæ,	quā,
Gen.	quō'-rūm,	quā'-rūm,	quō'-rūm,
Dat.	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
Voc.	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.

4. *Aliquis* is declined in the same way, except that it has no *quæ* form in the nom. singular feminine:—

āliquīs, āliquā, āliquīd *or* āliquöd;
ālicūjūs, etc.

The nominative form *āliquī* is rarely used.

5. *Quilibet*, *quivis*, and *quidam* are declined like the relative *quī*, with the addition of the *quid* form in the neuter:—

quīlibēt, quælibēt, quodlibēt *or* quidlibēt;
cūjuslibēt, etc.

In the forms of *quidam*, *m* passes into *n* before *d*: as, *quendām*, *quandām*, *quorundām*.

6. *Quisquē*, *quispiām*, and *quisquām* are declined like the interrogative *quis*, the first two having the *quod* form:—

quisquē, quæquē, quodquē or quidquē;
cūjusquē, etc.

quispiām, quæpiām, quodpiām, quidpiām, and
cūjuspiām, etc. [quippiām.

Quisquām, being almost invariably a substantive, wants the feminine, as the masculine includes the feminine; but *quamquām* is found in Plautus:—

quisquām, quidquām or quicquām,
cūjusquām, etc.

7. *Unusquisquē* is used only in the singular, and both *ūnūs* and *quisquē* are declined:—

ūnusquisquē, ūnāquæquē, ūnumquodquē or -quidquē,
ūnūscūjusquē, etc.

EXERCISE XLII.

§ 90. 1. After *quīdām*, *ex* with ablative is generally used instead of a partitive genitive: as, *quīdām ex milītībūs*, *a certain one of the soldiers*.

Vocabulary.

In urbēm pervēnirē, to reach the city.

nēquē (conj.), neither, nor.

occāsūs, -ūs, setting.

sōl, *sōl-is*, sun.

sōlīs occāsū (§ 66, 1), at sunset.

Cātīlinā, -æ, Catiline (a Roman nobleman).

āliquīd nōvī (gen. sing. neut. of *nōvūs*), some news (§ 73).

hērēdītās, -tāt-is, an inheritance.

pēcūniā, -æ, money.

mitt-ō, -ērē, *mīs-ī*, *miss-ūm*, to send.

per-vēn-iō, -irē, *pervēn-ī*, *pervent-ūm*, to come through, arrive, come in.

dēfend-ō, -ērē, *dēfend-ī*, *dēfens-ūm*, to defend.

discēd-ō, -ērē, *discess-ī*, *discess-ūm*, to depart.

occīd-ō, -ērē, *occīd-ī*, *occīs-ūm*, to kill, cut down.

rēlinquō, *rēlinquērē*, *rēlīquī*, *rēlictūm*, to leave.

Translate into English.

' Cicerō quendam Gallū ad Cæsarē mīsīt. ² Aliquis
 sōlis occāsū in dōmū tuā vēnit. ³ Quīdā ex milītibus
 sē suāquē (§ 60, *Rem.*) āb hostibus dēfendēbant. ⁴ Mātēr
 benignā unicuiquē libērōrū (§ 58, 3) suōrū dāt cībū.
⁵ Nostri copiās hostiū fūgāvērē, nēquē quisquā omnīū
 (§ 58, 3) in oppidū pervēnit. ⁶ Lūciūs in urbē āliquid
 novī audiēt. ⁷ Rex filiabus suis āliquā partē regnī
 dābit. ⁸ Milītes Cātīlinæ exercitū reipublicæ nōn timuē-
 runt, nēquē quisquā ex castris discessit. ⁹ Nonnē quisquē
 sēsē dēfendit? ¹⁰ Quodvis ānimāl cōr hābēt. ¹¹ Hērēditās
 est pēcūniā, quā mortē (§ 66, 1) ālicūjūs ad quēpiām
 pervēnit jūrē.

Translate into Latin.

' The faithful slaves will watch all night, nor will any
 one leave his place. ² Some one has wounded one of our
 horsemen with a javelin. ³ Cæsar sent a certain one of
 the Gallic (*Gallus*) horsemen to Cicerō's camp. ⁴ The
 cruel chiefs will kill some of the prisoners at sunset. ⁵ The
 general will hear some news at sunset. ⁶ The master gave
 (to) each of the boys a beautiful book. ⁷ Not every one
 (*any one you please*) will see our king.

CORRELATIVES.

§ 91. 1. Among the pronouns are usually classed
 the following 'adjectives, called *correlative*, because they
 answer to each other. Each set is formed on a single
 root, *t-* being the demonstrative prefix, *qu-* the inter-
 rogative and relative, and *ālī-* the indefinite. Thus,
t-antūs, *qu-antūs*, *ālī-quantūs*.

CORRELATIVES.

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	COMPOUND REL.	INTERROGATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
<p>tālis, -ē, such.</p>	<p>quālis, -ē, as.</p>	<p>{ quālis-quālis, quālescumquē, of whatever kind.</p>	<p>quālis, -ē? of what kind?</p>	<p>{ quālislibet, of whatever kind you please.</p>
<p>tantūs, -ā, -ūm, so great. tantusdēm, just so great.</p>	<p>quantūs, -ā, -ūm, as.</p>	<p>{ quantus-quantūs, quantuscumquē, however great.</p>	<p>quantūs, -ā, -ūm? how great?</p>	<p>{ ālquantūs, -ā, -ūm, somehow great. quantuslibet, as great as you please.</p>
<p>tōt, so many. tōtīdēm, just so many.</p>	<p>quōt, as.</p>	<p>{ quotquōt, quotcumquē, however many.</p>	<p>quōt, how many?</p>	<p>{ ālquōt, some. quotlibet, as many as you please.</p>
<p>tōtus, -ā, -ūm, that (of number or order). Very rare. tantūlis, -ā, -ūm, so small.</p>	<p>quōtus, -ā, -ūm, which (of num- ber or order). quantūlis, -ā, -ūm, as small.</p>	<p>quōtuscumquē, whatever (in num- ber or order). quantūlescumquē, however small.</p>	<p>quōtus, -ā, -ūm? what? (in num- ber or order). quantūlis, -ā, -ūm? how small?</p>	<p>ālquantūlis, little.</p>

CORRELATIVES.

EXERCISE XLIII.

§ 92. Vocabulary.

vōluptās, vōluptāt-īs, *pleasure.*

præmiūm, -ī, *reward.*

tīmōr, -ōr-īs, *fear, panic.*

ālīquantūm āgrī, *a considerable piece of ground.*

sententiā, -æ, *opinion.*

ōpērā, -æ, *labor, pains.*

tantā ōpērā, *so great labor.*

tantūm ōpēræ, *so much (of) labor.* Tantūs, meaning *so great*, agrees with the noun; meaning *so much*, it is neuter, and followed by the partitive genitive. Quantūs is used in the same way.

Quālis est dōmīnūs, tālis est servūs, *as is the master, so is the slave.* Or, *est* being omitted,

Quālis dōmīnūs, tālis servūs, *the slave is such as the master is.*

Translate into English.

Quantūm vōluptātīs virtūs præbēt? ¹ Tantūs tīmōr centuriōnēs occūpāvīt. } Quōt hōmīnēs, tōt sententiæ. ⁴ Quantūs est āgrīcōlæ taūrūs? ¹ Quantā sunt hūjūs bōvis cornuā? ⁶ Quōt lēgiōnēs in castrīs sunt? Quōt hōmīnēs, tōtīdēm ānimī. ⁸ Quālis est impērātōr, tālēs sunt milītēs. ⁹ Quantā præmiā virtūs hābēt? ¹⁰ Quantū* ōpēræ poētæ carminībūs suis dant! || Rex huic servō ālīquantūm aurī dēdīt.

* See § 88, Rem. 3

VERBS.

§ 93. 1. A verb is a word which declares or affirms something.

2. That of which the declaration is made is called the *subject*.

3. Verbs have—

(a.) *Moods*, or different forms which express different kinds of affirmation: as, *āmo*, I love; *āmārēm*, I might love.

(b.) *Tenses*, or different forms to show the *time* when the thing declared takes place, and whether the action is complete or incomplete: as, *āmo*, I love, I *am* loving; *āmābām*, I *was* loving; *āmāvī*, I have loved; *āmāvērām*, I *had* loved.

(c.) *Voices*, or different forms which show whether the subject *acts* (as, John *strikes*), or is *acted upon* (as, John *is struck*).

(d.) *Persons and Numbers*, or different forms which correspond with the person and number of the subject.

/ 4. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the stem is called CONJUGATION.

5. In respect to meaning, verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*.

6. A transitive verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense: as, *poētā rēgīnām laudāt*, the poet praises the queen.

7. An intransitive verb is one which does not require

an object to complete the sense: as, *ăquîlă vîlăt*, the eagle flies.

8. In respect to form, verbs are either *regular* or *irregular*. Irregular verbs vary, in some of their parts, from the usual rule of formation.

MOODS.

§ 94. 1. There are three moods,—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*.

2. The indicative mood declares a thing as a *fact*, or asks a question: as, *ămăt*, he loves; *ămat-ně?* does he love?

3. The subjunctive mood represents a thing not as a *fact*, but as *simply conceived in the mind*: as, *ămărəm*, I would love.

4. The imperative mood is used in *commanding*, *exhorting*, or *entreating*: as, *hîc vînî*, come hither.

5. The indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are called by grammarians the *finite* verb, because they limit the action to some particular subject. The *infinitive*, *participles*, *gerund*, and *supine* are called the *indefinite* verb, because they express action indefinitely, without reference to any subject.

TENSES.

§ 95. There are three divisions of time,—the *present*, the *past*, and the *future*. In each division there are two tenses: one expressing *incomplete* action; the other, *completed* action. There are, therefore, six tenses: three for incomplete action, viz.: the *present*, the *imperfect*, and the *future*; and three for completed action, viz.: the *present-perfect*, the *past-perfect*, and the *future-perfect*.

<i>Time.</i>	<i>Incomplete Action.</i>		<i>Name.</i>
<i>Pres. Time.</i>	āmō,	<i>I am loving.</i>	<i>Present.</i>
<i>Past Time.</i>	āmābām,	<i>I was loving.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
<i>Future Time.</i>	āmābō,	<i>I shall love.</i>	<i>Future.</i>

<i>Time.</i>	<i>Completed Action.</i>		<i>Name.</i>
<i>Pres. Time.</i>	āmāvī,	<i>I have loved.</i>	<i>Pres. Perf.</i>
<i>Past Time.</i>	āmāvērām,	<i>I had loved.</i>	<i>Past Perf.</i>
<i>Future Time.</i>	āmāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved.</i>	<i>Fut. Perf.</i>

I. The present tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time: as, *āmo*, I love, I am loving.

—*Remark 1.*—This tense also expresses an existing custom or general truth: as, *Rōmānī signūm tūbā dant*, the Romans give the signal with a trumpet.

—*Remark 2.*—The present tense is often used for a past to give greater animation to the narrative. This is called the *historical present*.

—*Remark 3.*—This tense may also express what has existed and still exists: as, *tōt annōs bellā gēro*, for so many years I have waged war, and am still waging it; or, for so many years I have been waging war.

II. The imperfect tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time: as, *āmābām*, I was loving.

Remark 4.—This tense expresses—

—(a.) (A customary past action) as, *āmābām*, I used to love.

—(b.) What had existed and was still existing in past time: as, *tōt annōs bellā gērēbām*, for so many years I had been carrying on war.

—(c.) The *beginning* or *attempting* of a thing in past time.

—(d.) In letters, this tense is sometimes used (in reference to their being read) for a present.

III. The future tense expresses *incomplete* action in *future* time: as, *āmābo*, I shall love.

IV. The present-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in *present* time: as, *āmāvi*, I have loved.

—The same form of the verb is used to express an action *indefinitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or completion. This is called the *aorist-perfect*, or *indefinite-perfect*: as, *cænāvi*, I supped (at some indefinite past time).

V. The past-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in *past* time: as, *āmāvērām*, I had loved.

VI. The future-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in *future* time: as, *āmāvēro*, I shall have loved.

VOICES.

§ 96. 1. There are two voices, the *active* and the *passive*.

—2. The active voice represents the subject as acting: as, *āmo*, I love.

—3. The passive voice represents the subject as *acted upon*: as, *āmōr*, I am loved.

Remark 1.—The same idea may be expressed both in the active and the passive form: as, *puēr librūm lēgīt*, the boy reads the book; or, *libēr ā puērō lēgītūr*, the book is read by the boy. The object in the active becomes the subject in the passive, and the subject in the active is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*.

Remark 2.—As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they have no personal passive form. (See § 114, 4.)

Remark 3.—The passive voice frequently represents the agent as acting upon himself: as, *fērōr*, I carry myself, I go. This use of the passive is common with the poets.

PERSONS AND NUMBERS.

§ 97. Verbs have three persons, the first, the second, and the third; and two numbers, the singular and the

plural. These either correspond to, or indicate, the person and number of the subject.

THE INDEFINITE VERB.

§ 98. 1. The *infinitive*, *participles*, *gerund*, and *supine* are called the *indefinite verb*, because they express action *indefinitely*, without reference to any subject. The participle is the *adjective-verb*; the infinitive, gerund, and supine, the *noun-verb*.

2. The *infinitive* expresses the action of the verb simply, without limiting it to any subject. It is an abstract noun in the nominative and accusative, the simple name of the action.

NOTE.—The infinitive has no idea of time connected with it, but represents the action as *incomplete* or *completed* at the time of the leading verb.

Dīcīt mē scrībērē, He represents me *to be writing*; *i.e.*
He says that I *am writing*.

Dixīt mē scrībērē, He represented me *to be writing*; *i.e.*
He said that I *was writing*.

Dīcīt mē scrīpsissē, He represents me *to have written*; *i.e.*
He says that I *have written*.

Dixīt mē scrīpsissē, He represented me *to have written*; *i.e.*
He said that I *had written*.

The infinitive present and perfect of *essē*, with the future active participle, form what grammarians call the *future* and *future-perfect* infinitive; but the futurity is expressed by the participle, not by the infinitive.

Dīcīt mē essē scriptūrūm, He represents me *to be about to write*; *i.e.*
He says that I *am about to write*; *i.e.*
He says that I *will write*.

3. Transitive verbs have two participles in the active, viz.: the *present* and the *future*: as, *āmans*, loving, *āmātūrūs*, about to love; and two in the passive, viz.: the *perfect* and the *future*: as, *āmātūs*, loved, having been

loved; *āmandūs*, to be loved. The future passive participle is also called the *gerundive*.

4. The *gerund* is a verbal noun of the second declension, in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive): as, *mōdūs ōpĕrandī*, the manner of working.

5. The *supine* is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, in the accusative and ablative: as, *āmātūm*, to love; *āmātū*, to be loved, or to love.

CONJUGATION.

§ 99. 1. There are four conjugations, distinguished from each other by the ending of the infinitive-present active.


The infinitive-present active of the 1st conj. ends in *ā'-rĕ*.

"	"	"	"	"	2d	"	"	<i>ē'-rĕ</i> .
"	"	"	"	"	3d	"	"	<i>ĕ-rĕ</i> .
"	"	"	"	"	4th	"	"	<i>ī'-rĕ</i> .

EXCEPTION.—*Dāre*, to give, has *āre* (*ā* short).

2. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the *stem* and the *ending*.


3. The *present-stem*, or *general-stem*, is found in every part of the verb, and may always be obtained by striking off the ending of the infinitive-present active or passive.

 For the true formation, see Appendix V.

4. Besides this general stem, there is also a *perfect-stem*, on which the perfect tenses in the active voice are formed; and a *supine-stem*, on which the supines, the future active participle, and the perfect passive participle, are formed.

5. The perfect-stem is formed, for the most part—
In the first conjugation, by adding *-āv* to the present-stem.


"	second	"	"	-ā	"	"
"	third	"	"	-s	"	"
"	fourth	"	"	-īv	"	"

 For other modes of formation, see Appendix VII.

6. The supine-stem is generally formed—

In the first conjugation, by adding *-āt* to the present-stem.

"	second	"	"	-īt	"	"
"	third	"	"	-t	"	"
"	fourth	"	"	-īt	"	"

 For other modes of formation, see Appendix VII.

§ 100. ESSĚ, to be.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>Indic. Perf.</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i>
sūm,	es'-sě,	fu'-ī,	fū-tū'-rūs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Person.</i>	1. sūm, <i>I am,</i>	sū'-mūs, <i>we are,</i>
	2. ės, <i>thou art,</i>	es'-tīs, <i>ye are,</i>
	3. est, <i>he is;</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>

Imperfect.

1. ǝ-rām, <i>I was,</i>	ǝ-rā'-mūs, <i>we were,</i>
2. ǝ-rās, <i>thou wast,</i>	ǝ-rā'-tīs, <i>ye were,</i>
3. ǝ-rāt, <i>he was;</i>	ǝ-rant, <i>they were.</i>

Future, *shall* or *will*.

1. ǝ-rō, <i>I shall be,</i>	ǝr'-ī-mūs, <i>we shall be,</i>
2. ǝ-rīs, <i>thou wilt be,</i>	ǝr'-ī-tīs, <i>ye will be,</i>
3. ǝ-rīt, <i>he will be;</i>	ǝ-runt, <i>they will be.</i>

Present-Perfect, *have been*; Aorist-Perfect, *was*.

Singular.

Plural.

1. *fu'-ī, I have been, or was,* *fu'-ī-mūs, we have been, or were,*
2. *fu-is'-tī, thou hast been, or wast,* *fu-is'-tīs, ye have been, or were,*
3. *fu'-īt, he has been, or was;* *fu-ē'-runt or -ē'-rě, they have been, or were.*

Past-Perfect.

1. *fu'-ě-rām, I had been,* *fu-ě-rā'-mūs, we had been,*
2. *fu'-ě-rās, thou hadst been,* *fu-ě-rā'-tīs, ye had been,*
3. *fu'-ě-rāt, he had been;* *fu'-ě-rant, they had been.*

Future-Perfect, *shall or will have*.

1. *fu'-ě-rō, I shall have been,* *fu-ěr'-ī-mūs, we shall have been,*
2. *fu'-ě-rīs, thou wilt have been,* *fu-ěr'-ī-tīs, ye will have been,*
3. *fu'-ě-rīt, he will have been;* *fu'-ě-rint, they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, *may*.

1. *sīm, I may be,* *sī'-mūs, we may be,*
2. *sīs, thou mayst be,* *sī'-tīs, ye may be,*
3. *sīt, he may be;* *sint, they may be.*

Imperfect, *might, would, or should*.

1. *es'-sēm, I would be,* *es-sē'-mūs, we would be,*
2. *es'-sēs, thou wouldst be,* *es-sē'-tīs, ye would be,*
3. *es'-sēt, he would be;* *es'-sent, they would be.*

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

1. *fu'-ě-rīm, I may have been,* *fu-ěr'-ĩ-mūs, we may have been,*
2. *fu'-ě-rīs, thou mayst have been,* *fu-ěr'-ĩ-tīs, ye may have been,*
3. *fu'-ě-rīt, he may have been;* *fu'-ě-rint, they may have been.*

Past-Perfect, *might, would, or should have.*

1. *fu-is'-sēm, I would have been,* *fu-is-sē'-mūs, we would have been,*
2. *fu-is'-sēs, thou wouldst have been,* *fu-is-sē'-tīs, ye would have been,*
3. *fu-is'-sēt, he would have been;* *fu-is'-sent, they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- Present.* 2. *ěs, be thou,* *es'-tě, be ye,*
- Future.* 2. *es'-tō, thou shalt be,* *es-tō'-tě, ye shall be,*
3. *es'-tō, he shall be;* *sun'-tō, they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

- Present.* *es'-sě, to be.*
- Perfect.* *fu-is'-sě, to have been.*
- Future.* *fũ-tũ'-rūs (-ă, -ũm) es'-sě, or fõ'-rě, to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

- Future.* *fũ-tũ'-rūs, -ă, -ũm, about to be.*

§ 101. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	<i>Infín. Pres.</i>	<i>Indic. Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>ă'-mō,</i>	<i>ă-mă'-rě,</i>	<i>ă-mă'-vī,</i>	<i>ă-mă'-tũm.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present, *love, do love, am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mǒ,	<i>I love,</i>
	ă'-mās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
	ă'-măt,	<i>he loves;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-mūs,	<i>we love,</i>
	ă-mā'-tīs,	<i>ye love,</i>
	ă'-mant,	<i>they love.</i>

Imperfect, *was loving, loved, did love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-bām,	<i>I was loving,</i>
	ă-mā'-bās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
	ă-mā'-băt,	<i>he was loving;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-bā'-mūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
	ăm-ā-bā'-tīs,	<i>ye were loving,</i>
	ă-mā'-bant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

Future, *shall or will love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-bǒ,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	ă-mā'-bīs,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
	ă-mā'-bīt,	<i>he will love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māb'-ī-mūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
	ă-māb'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye will love,</i>
	ă-mā'-bunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

Present-Perfect, *have loved.* Aorist-Perfect, *loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-vī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vis'-tī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-vīt,	<i>he has loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māv'-ī-mūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vis'-tīs,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vē'-runt or-rě,	<i>they have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *had loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rām,	<i>I had loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-răt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rā'-mūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rā'-tīs,	<i>ye had loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future-Perfect, *shall or will have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-mūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye will have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, *may love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mēm,	<i>I may love,</i>
	ă'-mēs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
	ă'-mět,	<i>he may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mē'-mūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
	ă-mē'-tīs,	<i>ye may love,</i>
	ă'-ment,	<i>they may love.</i>

Imperfect, *might, would, or should love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-rēm,	<i>I would love,</i>
	ă-mā'-rēs,	<i>thou wouldst love,</i>
	ă-mā'-rět,	<i>he would love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-rē'-mūs,	<i>we would love,</i>
	ăm-ā-rē'-tīs,	<i>ye would love,</i>
	ă-mā'-rent,	<i>they would love.</i>

Present-Perfect, *may have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-věr'-ī-mūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-věr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye may have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *might, would, or should have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ăm-ā-vis'-sēm,	<i>I would have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vis'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vis'-sēt,	<i>he would have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-vis-sē'-mūs,	<i>we would have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vis-sē'-tīs,	<i>ye would have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vis'-sent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i>	ă'-mā,	<i>love thou ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tě,	<i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tǒ,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
	ă-mā'-tǒ,	<i>he shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-tǒ'-tě,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
	ă-man'-tǒ,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	ă-mā'-rě,	<i>to love, to be loving.</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	ăm-ā-vis'-sě,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	ăm-ā-tū'-rūs (-ă,	
	-ŭm) es'-sě,	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ăm-ā-tū'-rūs fu-is'-sě,	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	ă'-mans,	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Future,</i>	ăm-ā-tū'-rūs, -ă, -ŭm,	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen.	ă-man'-dī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat.	ă-man'-dǎ,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc.	ă-man'-dǔm,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl.	ă-man'-dǎ,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

ă-mă'-tǔm,	<i>to love.</i>
ă-mă'-tū,	<i>to love, to be loved.</i>

§ 102. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	<i>Infinit. Perf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
ă'-mǎr,	ă-mă'-rī,	ă-mă'-tǔs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present, *am loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mǎr,	<i>I am loved,</i>
	ă-mă'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou art loved,</i>
	ă-mă'-tǔr,	<i>he is loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-mǔr,	<i>we are loved,</i>
	ă-mām'-ī-nī,	<i>ye are loved,</i>
	ă-man'-tǔr,	<i>they are loved.</i>

Imperfect, *was loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-bǎr,	<i>I was loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-bă'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wast loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-bă'-tǔr,	<i>he was loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ă-bă'-mǔr,	<i>we were loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-bām'-ī-nī,	<i>ye were loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-ban'-tǔr,	<i>they were loved.</i>

Future, *shall or will be loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-bör,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
	ă-māb'-ĕ-rīs or -rĕ,	<i>thou wilt be loved,</i>
	ă-māb'-ĭ-tūr,	<i>he will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māb'-ĭ-mūr,	<i>we shall be loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-bīm'-ĭ-nī,	<i>ye will be loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-bun'-tūr,	<i>they will be loved.</i>

Present-Perfect, *have been or was loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tūs ĕs or fu-is'-tī,	<i>thou hast been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tūs est or fu'-īt,	<i>he has been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ĭ-mūs,	<i>we have been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,	<i>ye have been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tī sunt, fu-ĕ'-runt or -rĕ,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *had been loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tūs ĕ'-rām or fu'-ĕ-rām,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tūs ĕ'-rās or fu'-ĕ-rās,	<i>thou hadst been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tūs ĕ'-rāt or fu'-ĕ-rāt,	<i>he had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tī ĕ-rā'-mūs or fu-ĕ-rā-	
	mūs,	<i>we had been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tī ĕ-rā'-tīs or fu-ĕ-rā'-tīs,	<i>ye had been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tī ĕ'-rant or fu'-ĕ-rant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

Future-Perfect, *shall have been loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tūs ĕ'-rō or fu'-ĕ-rō,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tūs ĕ'-rīs or fu'-ĕ-rīs,	<i>thou wilt have been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tūs ĕ'-rīt or fu'-ĕ-rīt,	<i>he will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tī ĕr'-ĭ-mūs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-	
	mūs,	<i>we shall have been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tī ĕr'-ĭ-tīs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tīs,	<i>ye will have been loved,</i>
	ă-mā'-tī ĕ'-runt or fu'-ĕ-rint,	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, *may be loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ'-mēr,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
	ǎ-mě'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou mayst be loved,</i>
	ǎ-mě'-tūr,	<i>he may be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-mě'-mūr,	<i>we may be loved,</i>
	ǎ-mēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye may be loved,</i>
	ǎ-men'-tūr,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

Imperfect, *might, would, or should be loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mā'-rēr,	<i>I would be loved,</i>
	ǎm-ā-rě'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wouldst be loved,</i>
	ǎm-ā-rě'-tūr,	<i>he would be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎm-ā-rě'-mūr,	<i>we would be loved,</i>
	ǎm-ā-rēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye would be loved,</i>
	ǎm-ā-ren'tūr,	<i>they would be loved.</i>

Present-Perfect, *may have been loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mā'-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou mayst have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt,	<i>he may have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-mā'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-	
	mūs,	<i>we may have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye may have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *might, would, or should have been loved.*

Singular.

ǎ-mā'-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,	<i>I would have been loved,</i>
ǎ-mā'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved,</i>
ǎ-mā'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt,	<i>he would have been loved ;</i>

Plural.

ă-mă'-tî es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,	<i>we would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tî es-sē'-tîs or fu-is-sē'-tîs,	<i>ye would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tî es'-sent or fu-is'-sent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-rě,	<i>be thou loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mām'-î-nî,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-tör,	<i>thou shalt be loved,</i>
	ă-mă'-tör,	<i>he shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	(ăm-ă-bîm'-î-nî,	<i>ye shall be loved),</i>
	ă-man'-tör,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	ă-mă'-rî,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	ă-mă'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	ă-mă'-tüm î'-rî,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.,</i>	ă-mă'-tūs fõ'-rě,	<i>to be about to have been loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect,</i>	ă-mă'-tūs,	<i>loved, or having been loved.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	ă-man'-dūs,	<i>to be loved.</i>

State the mood, tense, voice, person, number, and meaning of the following.

ămās, ămēs, ămā, ămans, ămant, ămēr, ămō, ămēt, ămāt, ămōr, ămārě, ămātîs, ămārî, ămābās, ămārēr, ămārēs, ămētîs, ămābant, ămābîs, ămābăt, ămābunt, ămērîs, ămātūr, ămătě, ămārîs, ămāvî, ămando, ămantîs, ămārent, ămābătîs, ămārentūr, ămātōtě, ămābîtîs, ămāmūr, ămābîmūr, ămārē-

mūs, āmāvistīs, āmāvērīs, āmāvissēm, āmāmīnī, āmābīmīnī,
āmātī ērātīs, āmāvērant, āmābāmīnī, āmāvissētīs, āmāremūs,
āmāvissē, essē āmātūrūs, āmātūs sīm, āmēmīnī, āmāvērās,
āmārēmīnī, āmātī ērunt, āmātūs sīt, āmātūs essē.

Translate into Latin.

We are loved, ye might be loved, they have loved, thou
wouldst have loved, ye will love, we were loving, ye loved,
I may have been loved, he shall be loved, be ye loved, to
have loved, to be about to love, they had loved, he would
have loved, we have been loved, we shall love, ye might
be loved, they might love, he would have loved, I would
have been loved, of loving, to love, ye were loved, he is
loved.

§ 103. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ō,</i>	<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ōr,</i>
<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-rē,</i>	<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-rī,</i>
<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	<i>mōn'-u-ī,</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>mōn'-ī-tūs.</i>
<i>Supine.</i>	<i>mōn'-ī-tum.</i>		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>I advise.</i>		<i>I am advised.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ō,</i> <i>mō'-nēs,</i> <i>mō'-nēt,</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ōr,</i> <i>mō-nē'-rīs or -rē,</i> <i>mō-nē'-tūr ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-mūs,</i> <i>mō-nē'-tīs,</i> <i>mō'-nent.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-mūr,</i> <i>mō-nēm'-ī-nī,</i> <i>mō-nen -tūr.</i>

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Imperfect.

I was advising.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-băm,
 mǒ-ně'-bās,
 mǒ-ně'-băt ;
Plur. mǒn-ē-bā'-mūs,
 mǒn-ē-bā'-tīs,
 mǒ-ně'-bant.

I was advised.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-bār,
 mǒn-ē-bā'-rīs or -rě,
 mǒn-ē-bā'-tūr ;
Plur. mǒn-ē-bā'-mūr,
 mǒn-ē-bām'-ī-nī,
 mǒn-ē-ban'-tūr.

Future.

I shall or will advise.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-bǒ,
 mǒ-ně'-bīs,
 mǒ-ně'-bīt ;
Plur. mǒ-nēb'-ī-mūs,
 mǒ-nēb'-ī-tīs,
 mǒ-ně'-bunt.

I shall or will be advised.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-bǒr,
 mǒ-nēb'-ē-rīs or -rě,
 mǒ-nēb'-ī-tūr ;
Plur. mǒ-nēb'-ī-mūr,
 mǒn-ē-bīm'-ī-nī,
 mǒn-ē-bun'-tūr.

Present-Perfect.

I advised or have advised.
S. mǒn'-u-ī,
 mǒn-u-is'-tī,
 mǒn'-u-īt ;
P. mǒ-nu'-ī-mūs,
 mǒn-u-is'-tīs,
 mǒn-u-ē'-runt or -rě.

I was or have been advised.
S. mǒn'-ī-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs est or fu'-īt ;
P. mǒn'-ī-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rě.

Past-Perfect.

I had advised.
S. mǒ-nu'-ē-rām,
 mǒ-nu'-ē-rās,
 mǒ-nu'-ē-răt ;
P. mǒn-u-ē-rā'-mūs,
 mǒn-u-ē-rā'-tīs,
 mǒ-nu'-ē-rant.

I had been advised.
S. mǒn'-ī-tūs ē'-rām or fu'-ē-rām,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs ē'-răt or fu'-ē-răt ;
P. mǒn'-ī-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī ē-rā'-tīs or fu-ē-rā'-tīs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Future-Perfect.

I shall have advised.

- S.* mǒ-nu'-ě-rǒ,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīt;
P. mǒn-u-ěr'-ī-mūs,

mǒn-u-ěr'-ī-tīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rint.

I shall have been advised.

- S.* mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rǒ or fu'-ě-rǒ,
mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rīt or fu'-ě-rīt;
P. mǒn'-ī-tī ěr'-ī-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-
mūs,
mǒn'-ī-tī ěr'-ī-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
mǒn'-ī-tī ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may advise.

- S.* mǒ'-ne-ām,
mǒ'-ne-ās,
mǒ'-ne-āt;
P. mǒ'-ne-ā'-mūs,
mǒ'-ne-ā'-tīs,
mǒ'-ne-ant.

I may be advised.

- S.* mǒ'-ne-ār,
mǒ'-ne-ā'-rīs or -rě,
mǒ'-ně-ā'-tūr;
P. mǒ'-ne-ā'-mūr,
mǒ'-ne-ām'-ī-nī,
mǒ'-ne-an'-tūr.

Imperfect.

*I might, would, or
should advise.*

- S.* mǒ-ně'-rēm,
mǒ-ně'-rēs,
mǒ-ně'-rēt;
P. mǒn-ē-rě'-mūs,
mǒn-ē-rě'-tīs,
mǒ-ně'-rent.

*I might, would, or should
be advised.*

- S.* mǒ-ně'-rēr,
mǒn-ē-rě'-rīs or -rě,
mǒn-ē-rě'-tūr;
P. mǒn-ē-rě'-mūr,
mǒn-ē-rēm'-ī-nī,
mǒn-ē-ren'-tūr.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present-Perfect.

*I may have advised.**I may have been advised.*

S. mǒ-nu'-ě-rīm,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīt ;

S. mǒn'-ĭ-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt ;

P. mǒn-u-ěr'-ĭ-mūs,
mǒn-u-ěr'-ĭ-tīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rint.

P. mǒn'-ĭ-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ěr'-ĭ-mūs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ěr'-ĭ-tīs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

Past-Perfect.

*I might, would, or should have advised.**I might, would, or should have been advised.*

S. mǒn-u-is'-sēm,
mǒn-u-is'-sēs,
mǒn-u-is'-sēt ;

S. mǒn'-ĭ-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt ;

P. mǒn-u-is-sē'-mūs,
mǒn-u-is-sē'-tīs,
mǒn-u-is'-sent.

P. mǒn'-ĭ-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mǒ-nē, advise thou ;*Pres. S.* mǒ-nē'-rě, be thou advised ;*P.* mǒ-nē'-tě, advise ye.*P.* mǒ-nēm'-ĭ-nī, be ye advised.*Fut. S.* mǒ-nē'-tǒ, thou shalt advise.*Fut. S.* mǒ-nē'-tǒr, thou shalt be advised.

mǒ-nē'-tǒ, he shall
advise.

mǒ-nē'-tǒr, he shall
be advised.

P. mǒn-ē-tǒ'-tě, ye shall
advise.

P. (mǒn-ē-bīm'-ĭ-nī, ye
shall be advised.)

mǒ-nen'-tǒ, they shall
advise.

mǒ-nen'-tǒr, they shall
be advised.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mǝ-ně'-rě, to advise.
Perf. mǝn-u-is'-sě, to have
 advised.
Fut. mǝn-ĩ-tũ'-rũs es'-sě, to be
 about to advise.
Fut. Perf. mǝn-ĩ-tũ'-rũs fu-is'-
 sě, to have been
 about to advise.

Pres. mǝ-ně'-rĩ, to be advised.
Perf. mǝn'-ĩ-tũs es'-sě or fu-
 is'-sě, to have been
 advised.
Fut. mǝn'-ĩ-tũm ĩ'-rĩ, to be
 about to be advised.
Fut. Perf. mǝn'-ĩ-tũs fǝ'-rě, to
 have been about to
 be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mǝ'-nens, advising.
Fut. mǝn-ĩ-tũ'-rũs, about to
 advise.

Perf. mǝn'-ĩ-tũs, advised.
Fut. mǝ-nen'-dũs, to be ad-
 vised.

GERUND.

Gen. mǝ-nen'-dĩ, of advising.
Dat. mǝ-nen'-dǝ, for advising.
Acc. mǝ-nen'-dũm, advising.
Abl. mǝ-nen'-dǝ, by advising.

SUPINE.

mǝn'-ĩ-tũm, to advise. | mǝn'-ĩ-tũ, to be advised, to advise.

State the mood, tense, voice, person, number, and meaning
 of the following.

¹ mǝnent, ² mǝnens, ³ mǝnēs, ⁴ mǝnē, ⁵ mǝnēt, ⁶ mǝneās, ⁷ mǝnē-
⁸ mūs, ⁹ mǝnētũr, ¹⁰ mǝnētĩs, ¹¹ mǝnērĩs, ¹² mǝnītĩs, ¹³ mǝnērě, ¹⁴ mǝnē-
¹⁵ bāt, ¹⁶ mǝneāt, ¹⁷ mǝnērēm, ¹⁸ mǝnuĩ, ¹⁹ mǝnentũr, ²⁰ mǝnendĩ, ²¹ mǝnu-
²² istĩ, ²³ mǝnuērāmũs, ²⁴ mǝneāmũs, ²⁵ mǝnētě, ²⁶ mǝnērĩ, ²⁷ mǝnuissě,
²⁸ mǝnītũ, ²⁹ mǝnītũm ĩrĩ, ³⁰ mǝnītũrũs fuissě, ³¹ mǝnītĩ ěrātĩs,

29 mōnēbīmīnī, mōnuērītīs, mōnuistīs, mōpētōtē, mōnuērīnt,
 34 mōnuissēmūs, mōneāmīnī, mōnēbāmīnī, mōnītī fuērīmūs,
 88 mōnītūs fuissēt.

Translate into Latin.

I advise, thou wast advising, thou wast advised, he shall advise, we have been advised, ye are advising, they had advised, ye shall have advised, we advised, he has been advised, I shall be advised, thou mayest advise, he may be advised, we may have advised, ye might have advised, they would have been advised, advise thou, be ye advised, to have been advised, to advise, advising, about to advise, to be advised, of advising. The girls have been advised. The boys may have been advised.

§ 104. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres. rě'-gǫ.
Inf. Pres. rěg'-ě-rě.
Ind. Perf. rěx'-ī.
Supine. rēc'-tūm.

Ind. Pres. rě'-gǫr.
Inf. Pres. rě'-gī.
Perf. Part. rēc'-tūs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I rule.

Sing. rě'gǫ,
 rě'-gīs,
 rě'-gīt;
Plur. rěg'-ī-mūs,
 rěg'-ī-tīs,
 rě'-gunt.

I am ruled.

Sing. rě'-gǫr,
 rěg'-ě-rīs or -rě,
 rěg'-ī-tūr;
Plur. rěg'-ī-mūr,
 rě-gīm'-ī-nī,
 rě-gun'-tūr.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.

I was ruled.

Sing. rě-gě'-bām,
rě-gě'-bās,
rě-gě'-băt ;
Plur. rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,
rěg-ē-bā'-tīs,
rě-gě'-bant.

Sing. rě-gě'-bār,
rěg-ē-bā'-rīs or -rě,
rěg-ē-bā'-tūr ;
Plur. rěg-ē-bā'-mūr,
rěg-ē-bām'-ī-nī,
rěg-ē-ban'-tūr.

Future.

I shall or will rule.

I shall or will be ruled.

Sing. rě'-gām,
rě'-gēs,
rě'-gět ;
Plur. rě-gě'-mūs,
rě-gě'-tīs,
rě'-gent.

Sing. rě'-gār,
rě-gě'-rīs or -rě,
rě-gě'-tūr ;
Plur. rě-gě'-mūr,
rě-gēm'-ī-nī,
rě-gen'-tūr.

Present-Perfect.

I ruled or have ruled.

I was or have been ruled.

Sing. rec'-ī,
rec'-is'-tī,
rec'-īt ;
Plur. rec'-ī-mūs,
rec'-is'-tīs,
rec'-ē'-runt or -rě.

S. rec'-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,
rec'-tūs ēs or fu'-is'-tī,
rec'-tūs est or fu'-īt ;
P. rec'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,
rec'-tī es'-tīs or fu'-is'-tīs,
rec'-tī sunt, fu'-ē'-runt or -rě.

Past-Perfect.

I had ruled.

I had been ruled.

Sing. rec'-ē-ram,
rec'-ē-rās,
rec'-ē-răt ;
Plur. rec'-ē-rā'-mūs,
rec'-ē-rā'-tīs,
rec'-ē-rant.

S. rec'-tūs ē'ram or fu'-ē-ram,
rec'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,
rec'-tūs ē'-răt or fu'-ē-răt ;
P. rec'-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu'-ē-rā'-mūs,
rec'-tī ē-rā'-tīs or fu'-ē-rā'-tīs,
rec'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Future-Perfect.

*I shall have ruled.**Sing. rex'-ě-rō,**rex'-ě-rīs,**rex'-ě-rīt;**Plur. rex-ěr'-ī-mūs,**rex-ěr'-ī-tīs,**rex'-ě-rint.**I shall have been ruled.**Sing. rec'-tūs ě'-rō or fu'-ě-rō,**rec'-tūs ě'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,**rec'-tūs ě'-rīt or fu'-ě-rīt;**Plur. rec'-tī ěr'-ī-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,**rec'-tī ěr'-ī-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,**rec'-tī ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*I may rule.**Sing. řě'-gām,**řě'-gās,**řě'-gāt;**Plur. řě-gā'-mūs,**řě-gā'-tīs,**řě'-gant.**I may be ruled.**Sing. řě'-gār,**řě-gā'-rīs or -rě,**řě-gā'-tūr;**Plur. řě-gā'-mūr,**řě-gām'-ī-nī, —**řě-gan'-tūr.*

Imperfect.

*I might, would, or
should rule.**Sing. řěg'-ě-rēm,**řěg'-ě-rēs,**řěg'-ě-rět;**Plur. řěg-ě-rē'-mūs,**řěg-ě-rē'-tīs,**řěg'-ě-rent.**I might, would, or should
be ruled.**Sing. řěg'-ě-rēr,**řěg-ě-rē'-rīs or -rě,**řěg-ě-rē'-tūr;**Plur. řěg-ě-rē'-mūr,**řěg-ě-rēm'-ī-nī, —**řěg-ě-ren'-tūr.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present-Perfect.

I may have ruled.

I may have been ruled.

*Sing. rex'-ě-rīm,
rex'-ě-rīs,
rex'-ě-rīt ;*

*S. rec'-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,
rec'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
rec'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt ;*

*Plur. rex-ěr'-ī-mūs,
rex-ěr'-ī-tīs,
rex'-ě-rint.*

*P. rec'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,
rec'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
rec'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.*

Past-Perfect.

*I might, would, or
should have ruled.*

*I might, would, or should have
been ruled.*

*Sing. rex-is'-sēm,
rex-is'-sēs,
rex-is'-sēt ;*

*S. rec'-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt ;*

*Plur. rex-is-sē'-mūs,
rex-is-sē'-tīs,
rex-is'-sent.*

*P. rec'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,
rec'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,
rec'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. rě'-gě, rule thou ;

*Pres. S. rěg'-ě-rě, be thou
ruled ;*

P. rěg'-ī-tě, rule ye.

*P. rě-gīm'-ī-nī, be ye
ruled.*

*Fut. S. rěg'-ī-tō, thou shalt
rule,
rěg'-ī-tō, he shall
rule ;*

*Fut. S. rěg'-ī-tōr, thou shalt
be ruled,
rěg'-ī-tōr, he shall
be ruled ;*

*P. rěg-ī-tō'-tě, ye shall
rule,
rě-gun'-tō, they shall
rule.*

*P. (rě-gēm'-ī-nī, ye shall
be ruled),
rě-gun'-tōr, they
shall be ruled.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. rĕg'-ĕ-rĕ, to rule.**Perf. rex-is'-sĕ, to have ruled.**Fut. rec-tŭ'-rŭs es'-sĕ, to be about to rule.**Fut. Perf. rec-tŭ'-rŭs fu-is'-sĕ, to have been about to rule.**Pres. rĕ'-gĭ, to be ruled.**Perf. rec'-tŭs es'-sĕ or fu-is'-sĕ, to have been ruled.**Fut. rec'-tŭm ĭ'-rĭ, to be about to be ruled.**Fut. Perf. rec'-tŭs fŏ'-rĕ, to have been about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Pres. rĕ'-gens, ruling.**Fut. rec-tŭ'-rŭs, about to rule.**Perf. rec'-tŭs, ruled.**Fut. rĕ-gen'-dŭs, to be ruled.*

GERUND.

*Gen. rĕ-gen'-dĭ, of ruling.**Dat. rĕ-gen'-dŏ, for ruling.**Acc. rĕ-gen'-dŭm, ruling.**Abl. rĕ-gen'-dŏ, by ruling.*

SUPINE.

*rec'-tŭm, to rule.**rec'-tŭ, to be ruled, to rule.*

State the mood, tense, voice, person, number, and meaning of the following.

¹ Rexit, ² rĕgis, ³ rĕgāt, ⁴ rĕgunt, ⁵ rĕgēt, ⁶ rĕgīt, ⁷ rĕgēs, ⁸ rĕgĕ, ⁹ rĕgēs, ¹⁰ rĕgī, ¹¹ rĕgant, ¹² rĕgās, ¹³ rĕgent, ¹⁴ rĕgens, ¹⁵ rexī, ¹⁶ rĕgērēs, ¹⁷ rĕgērē, ¹⁸ rĕgērē, ¹⁹ rĕgītē, ²⁰ rĕgīmīnī, ²¹ rĕgāmīnī, ²² rĕgēmīnī, ²³ rĕgentŭr, ²⁴ rĕguntŭr, ²⁵ rĕgantŭr, ²⁶ rĕgētŭr, ²⁷ rĕgītŭr, ²⁸ rĕgātŭr, ²⁹ rĕgītīs, ³⁰ rĕgātīs, ³¹ rĕgētīs, ³² rĕgentīs, ³³ rĕgendī, ³⁴ rĕgendo, ³⁵ rĕgīmŭs, ³⁶ rĕgēmŭr, ³⁷ rĕgāmŭs, ³⁸ rĕgātīs, ³⁹ rĕgērērīs, ⁴⁰ rĕgērīs, ⁴¹ rexērīs, ⁴² rexērītīs, ⁴³ rexissēs, ⁴⁴ rexissētīs, ⁴⁵ rĕgēbāmīnī, ⁴⁶ rĕgīmīnī, ⁴⁷ rĕgāmīnī, ⁴⁸ rĕgēmīnī, ⁴⁹ rĕgērēmīnī, ⁵⁰ rectī ērāmŭs, ⁵¹ rectī fuissētīs, ⁵² rectŭrŭs fuissē, ⁵³ rectŏs, ⁵⁴ rectŭ, ⁵⁵ rĕgītŏtē, ⁵⁶ rexistīs, ⁵⁷ rexērāmŭs.

Translate into Latin.

They may be ruled, ye are ruled, we may rule, he rules,
I may rule, thou mayst be ruled, they were ruling, ye
would be ruled, we might be ruled, ye were ruled, he was
ruling, thou wouldst be ruled, I was ruled, thou ruledst,
thou art ruled, thou hast ruled, he has been ruled, the
king will rule, we had ruled, ye had been ruled, they shall
be ruled, he will have ruled, ye might have ruled, ye had
ruled, rule ye, to be ruled, to have ruled, having been
ruled, for ruling, he would have ruled.

§ 105. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres. au'-di-ō,

Ind. Pres. au'-di-ōr.

Inf. Pres. au-dī'-rē,

Inf. Pres. au-dī'-rī.

Ind. Perf. au-dī'-vī,

Perf. Part. au-dī'-tūs.

Supine. au-dī'-tūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I hear.

I am heard.

Sing. au'-di-ō,

Sing. au'-di-ōr,

au'-dīs,

au-dī'-rīs or -rē,

au'-dīt;

au-dī'-tūr;

Plur. au-dī'-mūs,

Plur. au-dī'-mūr,

au-dī'-tīs,

au-dīm'-ī-nī,

au'-di-unt.

au-di-un'-tūr.

Imperfect.

I was hearing.

I was heard.

Sing. au-di-ē'-bām,

Sing. au-di-ē'-bār,

au-di-ē'-bās,

au-di-ē-bā'-rīs or -rē,

au-di-ē'-bāt;

au-di-ē-bā'-tūr;

ACTIVE VOICE.

Plur. au-di-ē-bā'-mūs,
au-di-ē-bā'-tīs,
au-di-ē'-bant.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Plur. au-di-ē-bā'-mūr,
au-di-ē-bām'-ī-nī,
au-di-ē-ban'-tūr.

Future.

I shall or will hear.

Sing. au'-di-ām,
au'-di-ēs,
au'-di-ēt ;

Plur. au-di-ē'-mūs,
au-di-ē'-tīs,
au'-di-ent.

I shall or will be heard.

Sing. au'-di-ār,
au-di-ē'-rīs or -rē,
au-di-ē'-tūr ;

Plur. au-di-ē'-mūr,
au-di-ēm'-ī-nī,
au-di-en'-tūr.

Present-Perfect.

*I heard or have
heard.*

S. au-dī'-vī,
au-dī-vis'-tī,
au-dī'-vīt ;

P. au-dīv'-ī-mūs,
au-dī-vis'-tīs,
au-dī-vē'-runt or -rē.

I have been or was heard.

S. au-dī'-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,
au-dī'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,
au-dī'-tūs est or fu'-īt ;

P. au-dī'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,
au-dī'-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,
au-dī'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē.

Past-Perfect.

I had heard.

S. au-dīv'-ē-rām,
au-dīv'-ē-rās,
au-dīv'-ē-rāt ;

P. au-dīv-ē-rā'-mūs,
au-dīv-ē-rā'-tīs,
au-dīv'-ē-rant.

I had been heard.

S. au-dī'-tūs ē'-rām or fu'-ē-rām,
au-dī'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,
au-dī'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt ;

P. au-dī'-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs,
au-dī'-tī ē-rā'-tīs or fu-ē-rā'-tīs,
au-dī'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Future-Perfect.

I shall have heard.
S. au-dīv'-ě-rō,
 au-dīv'-ě-rīs,
 au-dīv'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī-věr'-ī-mūs,
 au-dī-věr'-ī-tīs,
 au-dīv'-ě-rint.

I shall have been heard.
S. au-dī'-tūs ě'-rō or fu'-ě-rō,
 au-dī'-tūs ě'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
 au-dī'-tūs ě'-rīt or fu'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī'-tī ěr'-ī-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,
 au-dī'-tī ěr'-ī-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
 au-dī'-tī ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may hear.
Sing. au'-di-ām,
 au'-di-ās,
 au'-di-āt;
Plur. au-di-ā'-mūs,
 au-di-ā'-tīs,
 au'-di-ant.

I may be heard.
Sing. au'-di-ār,
 au-di-ā'-rīs or -rě,
 au-di-ā'-tūr;
Plur. au-di-ā'-mūr,
 au-di-ām'-ī-nī,
 au-di-an'-tūr.

Imperfect.

I might, would, or should hear.
Sing. au-dī'-rēm,
 au-dī-rēs,
 au-dī'-rēt;
Plur. au-dī-rě'-mūs,
 au-dī-rě'-tīs,
 au-dī'-rent.

I might, would, or should be heard.
Sing. au-dī'-rēr,
 au-dī-rě'-rīs or -rě,
 au-dī-rě'-tūr;
Plur. au-dī-rě'-mūr,
 au-dī-rēm'-ī-nī,
 au-dī-ren'-tūr.

Present-Perfect.

I may have heard.
S. au-dīv'-ě-rīm,
 au-dīv'-ě-rīs,
 au-dīv'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī-věr'-ī-mūs,
 au-dī-věr'-ī-tīs,
 au-dīv'-ě-rint.

I may have been heard.
S. au-dī'-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,
 au-dī'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
 au-dī'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,
 au-dī'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
 au-dī'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Past-Perfect.

PASSIVE VOICE.

*I might, would, or should
have heard.*

*S. au-dī-vis'-sēm,
au-dī-vis'-sēs,
au-dī-vis'-sēt ;*

*P. au-dī-vis-sē'-mūs,
au-dī-vis-sē'-tīs,
au-dī-vis'-sent.*

*I might, would, or should have been
heard.*

*S. au-dī'-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,
au-dī'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,
au-dī'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt ;*

*P. au-dī'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-
mūs,
au-dī'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tis,
au-dī'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. au'-dī, hear thou ;

P. au-dī'-tē, hear ye.

*Fut. S. au-dī'-tō, thou shalt
hear,*

*au-dī'-tō, he shall
hear ;*

*P. au-dī-tō'-tē, ye shall
hear,*

*au-di-un'-tō, they
shall hear.*

*Pres. S. au-dī'-rē, be thou
heard ;*

*P. au-dīm'-ī-nī, be ye
heard.*

*Fut. S. au-dī'-tōr, thou shalt
be heard,*

*au-dī'-tōr, he shall
be heard ;*

*P. (au-di-ēm'-ī-nī, ye
shall be heard),*

*au-di-un'-tōr, they
shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. au-dī'-rē, to hear.

*Perf. au-dī-vis'-sē, to have
heard.*

*Fut. au-dī-tū'-rūs es'-sē, to
be about to hear.*

*Fut. P. au-dī-tū'-rūs fu-is'-sē,
to have been about
to hear.*

Pres. au-dī'-rī, to be heard.

*Perf. au-dī'-tūs es'-sē or fu-
is'-sē, to have been
heard.*

*Fut. au-dī'-tūm ī-rī, to be
about to be heard.*

*Fut. P. au-dī'-tūs fō'-rē, to
have been about to be ruled.*

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>au'-di-ens, hearing.</i>		<i>Perf.</i>	<i>au-dī'-tūs, heard.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>au-dī-tū'-rūs, about to hear.</i>		<i>Fut.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dūs, to be heard.</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dī, of hearing.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dō, for hearing.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dūm, hearing.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dō, by hearing.</i>

SUPINE.

<i>au-dī'-tūm, to hear.</i>		<i>au-dī-tū, to be heard, to hear.</i>
-----------------------------	--	--

Tell where found, and the meaning.

¹Audīs, ²audiāt, ³audiens, ⁴audient, ⁵audiant, ⁶audītīs, ⁷audī-tūs, ⁸audītē, ⁹audirē, ¹⁰audīrī, ¹¹audīrīs, ¹²audīrēs, ¹³audīvīstī, ¹⁴audīvērē, ¹⁵audīmūr, ¹⁶audiēmīnī, ¹⁷audītōtē, ¹⁸audīvīssētīs, ¹⁹audī-
vērint, ²⁰audīvissent, ²¹audīrēmīnī, ²²audītī fuissent, ²³audītūrūs
essē, ²⁴audītūs fuissē, ²⁵audiēbāmūr, ²⁶audīrēmūs, ²⁷audiēbāmīnī,
²⁸audiuntōr, ²⁹audiuntūr, ³⁰audientūr, ³¹audientīs, ³²audiātīs, ³³audi-
antūr, ³⁴audīvērīmūs, ³⁵audīvērunt, ³⁶audītī fuissētīs

Translate into Latin.

We shall hear, he has been heard, they have heard, thou mightest have been heard, ye were heard, ye were hearing, they shall hear, ye have heard, he may have been heard, ye would have been heard, we might have been heard, be ye heard, to hear, to have been heard, by hearing, about to hear, to be heard, we hear, they are heard, they are hearing. The beautiful girl has been heard. Many songs had been heard.

*longissima
pulchra puella*

TABLE OF ENDINGS.

TERMINATIONS ADDED TO THE PRESENT STEM.
ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

				CONJUGATION.			

Imperfect.

1. <i>ā-rēm, ā-rēs, ā-rēt;</i>	<i>ā-rē-mūs, ā-rē-tīs, ā-rēt.</i>	1. <i>ā-rēr, ā-rēr-rīs or ā-rē-rē, ā-rē-tūr; ā-rē-mūr, ā-rēm'-inī, ā-ren'-tūr.</i>
2. <i>ē-rēm, ē-rēs, ē-rēt;</i>	<i>ē-rē-mūs, ē-rē-tīs, ē-rēt.</i>	2. <i>ē-rēr, ē-rēr-rīs or ē-rē-rē, ē-rē-tūr; ē-rē-mūr, ē-rēm'-inī, ē-ren'-tūr.</i>
3. <i>ērēm, ē-rēs, ē-rēt;</i>	<i>ērē-mūs, ē-rē-tīs, ē-rēt.</i>	3. <i>ērēr, ē-rēr-rīs or ē-rē-rē, ē-rē-tūr; ē-rē-mūr, ē-rēm'-inī, ē-ren'-tūr.</i>
4. <i>ī-rēm, ī-rēs, ī-rēt;</i>	<i>ī-rē-mūs, ī-rē-tīs, ī-rēt.</i>	4. <i>ī-rēr, ī-rēr-rīs or ī-rē-rē, ī-rē-tūr; ī-rē-mūr, ī-rēm'-inī, ī-ren'-tūr.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. <i>ā; ā-tē.</i>	<i>ā-tō; ā-tō;</i>	<i>ā-m'-inī.</i>	<i>ā-tōr, ā-tōr, (ā-ām'-inī), an'-tōr.</i>
2. <i>ē; ē-tē.</i>	<i>ē-tō; ē-tō;</i>	<i>ēm'-inī.</i>	<i>ē-tōr, ē-tōr, (ē-bēm'-inī), en'-tōr.</i>
3. <i>ē; ī-tē.</i>	<i>ītō; ītō;</i>	<i>īm'-inī.</i>	<i>ītōr, ītōr, (ēm'-inī), un'-tōr.</i>
4. <i>ī; ī-tē.</i>	<i>ī-tō; ī-tō;</i>	<i>im'-inī.</i>	<i>ī-tōr, ī-tōr, (i-ēm'-inī), i-un'-tōr.</i>
1. <i>ā-rē.</i> 2. <i>ē-rē.</i> 3. <i>ērē.</i> 4. <i>ī-rē.</i>		1. <i>an'-dī.</i> 2. <i>en'-dī.</i> 3. <i>en'-dī.</i> 4. <i>i-en'-dī.</i>	1. <i>ā-rī.</i> 2. <i>ē-rī.</i> 3. <i>ī.</i> 4. <i>ī-rī.</i>
1. <i>ans.</i> 2. <i>ens.</i> 3. <i>ens.</i> 4. <i>iens.</i>		1. <i>an'-dī.</i> 2. <i>en'-dī.</i> 3. <i>en'-dī.</i> 4. <i>i-en'-dī.</i>	1. <i>ā-rī.</i> 2. <i>ē-rī.</i> 3. <i>ī.</i> 4. <i>ī-rī.</i>
1. <i>ā-rē.</i> 2. <i>ē-rē.</i> 3. <i>ērē.</i> 4. <i>ī-rē.</i>		1. <i>an'-dī.</i> 2. <i>en'-dī.</i> 3. <i>en'-dī.</i> 4. <i>i-en'-dī.</i>	1. <i>ā-rī.</i> 2. <i>ē-rī.</i> 3. <i>ī.</i> 4. <i>ī-rī.</i>

TERMINATIONS ADDED TO THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the perfect and supine stems are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

ACTIVE VOICE.—PERFECT STEM.

PASSIVE VOICE.—SUPINE STEM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular. Perfect. <i>ī, is'-tī, īt;</i> Past-Perf. <i>ērām, ē-rās, ē-rāt;</i> Fut.-Perf. <i>ērō, ē-ris, ē-rit;</i>		Singular. Perfect. <i>ūs sūm or fū'-ī,</i> Past-Perf. <i>ūs ē-rām or fū'-ērām,</i> Fut.-Perf. <i>ūs ē-rō or fū'-ērō,</i>		Plural. Perfect. <i>ūs sēs or fū'-is'-tī,</i> etc. Past-Perf. <i>ūs ē-rās or fū'-ērās,</i> etc. Fut.-Perf. <i>ūs ē-rīs or fū'-ērīs,</i> etc.	
--	--	---	--	---	--

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Singular. Perfect. <i>ērīm, ē-ris, ē-rit;</i> Past-Perf. <i>is'-sēm, is'-sēs, is'-sēt;</i> Infinitive. <i>Perfect, -is'-sē.</i>		Singular. Perfect. <i>ūs sīs or fū'-ērīm,</i> Past-Perf. <i>ūs es'-sēm or fū'-is'-sēm,</i> Infinitive. <i>Perfect, ūs es'-sē or fū'-is'-sē.</i>		Plural. Perfect. <i>ūs sīs or fū'-ērīs,</i> etc. Past-Perf. <i>ūs es'-sēs or fū'-is'-sēs,</i> etc. Infinitive. <i>Perfect, ūs es'-sē or fū'-is'-sē.</i>	
Singular. Perfect. <i>ērīm, ē-ris, ē-rit;</i> Past-Perf. <i>is'-sēm, is'-sēs, is'-sēt;</i> Infinitive. <i>Perfect, -is'-sē.</i>		Singular. Perfect. <i>ūs sīs or fū'-ērīm,</i> Past-Perf. <i>ūs es'-sēm or fū'-is'-sēm,</i> Infinitive. <i>Perfect, ūs es'-sē or fū'-is'-sē.</i>		Plural. Perfect. <i>ūs sīs or fū'-ērīs,</i> etc. Past-Perf. <i>ūs es'-sēs or fū'-is'-sēs,</i> etc. Infinitive. <i>Perfect, ūs es'-sē or fū'-is'-sē.</i>	

SUPINE-STEM. INF. *Fut. ā-rūs es'-sē.* PART. *Fut. ā-rūs.* SUP. *-ūm, -ū.*

§ 106. CONJUGATION OF VERBS.— ENDINGS.

The table on pages 164, 165, exhibits the endings of the active and passive voices in all the conjugations.

Remark 1.—On the present-stem are formed all the moods of the present, imperfect, and future tenses (except the infinitive future, active and passive), the gerund, present active participle, and future passive participle.

Remark 2.—On the perfect-stem are formed all the perfect-tenses in the active voice.

Remark 3.—On the supine-stem are formed the supines, and the future active and perfect passive participles.

Remark 4.—The future and future-perfect infinitive active are compound tenses, made up of the future active participle and the infinitive of the verb *sūm*. The future infinitive passive is made up of the supine and the impersonal infinitive *īrī*. The future-perfect infinitive passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the future infinitive *fōrē*.

Remark 5.—The perfect tenses of the passive are made up of the perfect passive participle with the forms of the verb *sūm*, the latter designating the time, and the participle expressing completion passively: as, *āmātūs ērām*, I existed (at some past time) having been (previously) loved; *i.e.* *I had been loved*. The participle, being an adjective in the predicate, agrees with the subject.

§ 107. VERBS IN -IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Some verbs of the third conjugation insert *ī* before the ending in some of the parts formed on the present-stem, as shown in the following paradigm of *căpěřě*, to take.*

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŏ,	īs,	īt,	īmūs,	ītīs,	i-unt.
Imperf.	căp-i-	ēbām,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.
Fut.	căp-i-	ām,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	căp-i-	ām,	ās,	ăt,	āmūs,	ătīs,	ant.
Imperf.	căp-	ērēm,	ērēs,	ērēt,	ērēmūs,	ērētīs,	erent.
IMPERATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	—	ě,	—	—	ītě,	—
Fut.	căp-	—	ītŏ,	ītŏ,	—	ītŏtě,	i-untŏ.
INFINITIVE.							
căpěrě.							
PARTICIPLE, căp-i-ens.				GERUND, căp-i-endī.			
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŏr,	ěrīs,	ītŭr,	īmŭr,	īmīnī,	i-untŭr.
Imperf.	căp-i-	ēbār,	ēbārīs,	ēbātŭr,	ēbāmŭr,	ēbāmīnī,	ēbantŭr.
Fut.	căp-i-	ār,	ērīs,	ētŭr,	ēmŭr,	ēmīnī,	entŭr.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	căp-i-	ār,	ārīs,	ătŭr,	āmŭr,	āmīnī,	antŭr.
Imperf.	căp-	ērēr,	ērērīs,	ērētŭr,	ērēmŭr,	ērēmīnī,	erentŭr.
IMPERATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-		ěrě,	ītŏr,		īmīnī,	
Fut.	căp-		ītŏr,	ītŏr,		i-ēmīnī,	i-untŏr.
PARTICIPLE, căp-i-endŭs.							

* Pupils instructed in the English method of pronunciation should at this stage of advancement be able to syllabicate this paradigm for themselves.

The parts on the perfect and supine stems do not vary from the usual formation.

EXERCISE XLIV.

(Some verbs which insert *ĭ*.)

căp-i-ŏ, căp-ērē, cēp-i, capt-ŭm, to take.

rē-cĭp-i-ŏ, rēcĭp-ērē, rēcēp-i, rēcept-ŭm, to take back.

sē rēcĭpērē, to take one's self back, to retreat.

ac-cĭp-i-ŏ, accĭp-ērē, accēp-i, accept-ŭm, to take to one's self, to receive.

cŭp-i-ŏ. cŭp-ērē, cŭpĭv-i, cŭpit-ŭm, to desire.

făc-i-ŏ, făc-ērē, fēc-i, fact-ŭm, to do, to make.

con-fĭc-i-ŏ, confĭc-ērē, confēc-i, confect-ŭm, to finish.

răp-i-ŏ, răp-ērē, răpu-i, raptŭm, to seize, carry off.

dĭ-rĭp-i-ŏ, dĭrĭp-ērē, dĭrĭp-uĭ, dĭrept-ŭm, to plunder.

Remark 1.—The imperative present active second singular of *făcio* is *făc*, and the passive is supplied by the irregular verb *fio* (§ 111, 7). The compounds which change *ă* into *ĭ* have the regular passive: as, *confĭciŏr*, *confĭci*, *confectŭs*; but those which retain the *ă* have the irregular passive: as, *pătēfăcio*, passive *pătēfĭo*, *pătēfĭeri*, *pătēfactŭs*. The compounds with prepositions change *ă* into *ĭ*; those with verb-stems retain the *ă*; compounds with noun-stems are mostly of the first conjugation: as, *ădĭfĭco*, *nĭdĭfĭco*, etc.

Translate into English.

Germăni ănimăliă (39) quă bellŏ cēpērant diis mac-tăbant. Nostri ĭn hostēs impētŭm fēcērunt, atquē eŏs (§ 83, 1) ĭn fŭgăm dēdērunt. Helvĕtiĭ pēr Sēquănŏrŭm fĭnēs ĭtēr făciēbant. Hostēs, quĭ pēr prŏvinciăm ĭtēr ten-tăvērunt, ĭn fĭnēs suŏs sē rēcēpērunt. Căsar ăb Helvĕtiis obsĭdēs ęt armă accēpērăt. Impērătŏr aurŭm quŏd ă rĕgē accēpērăt, mĭlitĭbŭs dēdĭt. Mĭlitēs prŏeliŭm făcērē cŭpĭ-vērunt. Căsar dēcēm diēbŭs pontēm confēcĭt. Rŏmăni virgĭnēs Săbĭnŏrŭm răpuērunt. Hostēs atrŏcēs tŏtăm urbēm dĭrĭpĭent.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy will retreat from the mountain to the river. The king will lay waste the country (*āgrōs*) which he has conquered, with fire and sword. Our horsemen had made an attack upon the enemy's footmen. The forces of the enemy, that were making a journey through our province, plundered many villages. The lieutenant, with five legions which he had received from Cæsar, hastened into the boundaries of the Æduans. The consul will not finish the bridge in six days. The general desires to make an end of the war.

For peculiarities of tense-formation and conjugation, and composition of verbs, see Appendix.

EXERCISE XLV.

§ 108. THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

1. The same idea may be expressed both in the active and the passive form: as, *Helvētī lēgātōs mittunt*, the Helvetians send ambassadors; or, *lēgātī āb Helvētīs mittuntūr*, ambassadors are sent by the Helvetians.

2. The *object* in the active becomes the *subject* in the passive; and the *subject* in the active is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*. (ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT.)

Remark 1.—If the ablative expresses, not the agent, or *doer* of the action, but only the *cause*, *means*, *instrument*, the preposition will not be used: as, *stīmūlūs bōvēm concītāt*, the goad urges on the ox; passive, *bōs stīmūlō concītātūr*, the ox is urged on with the goad.

Remark 2.—As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they are not used personally in the passive, except with a cognate or equivalent subject. See § 150, *Remarks 1, 2.*

3. *Rule of Syntax.*—Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case: as, *māgistēr puērō librūm dāt*; *passive, librē puērō ā māgistrō dātūr.*

Translate into English.

Rēgīnā āb ancillīs āmātūr. Māgistēr bōnūs āb omnībūs puērīs āmābītūr. Tuæ sālūtīs causā (§ 29, 1) mōnērīs. Pātēr ā filiō suō āmātūs est. Templūm dē marmōrē (§ 40) āb impērātōrē ædificātūm est. Leō quī in silvā ā servīs vīsūs est, multōs hōmīnēs lāniāvērāt. Galliā est omnīs dīvisā in partēs trēs. Helvētiī ūnā ex partē flūmīnē Rhēnō altissimō atquē lātissimō, contīnentūr. Lēgiōnēs quæ in prōvinciā conscriptæ sunt, ā Cæsārē ex hibernīs ēdūcentūr. Quīdām ex milītībūs magnitūdīnē pēricūlī perterrītī sunt. Castrā tribūs diēbūs (§ 66, 2) ā consulē mōvēbītūr. Imprōbī omnēs ā deō pūnientūr. Hæc ā nōbīs audītā sunt.

Translate into Latin.

(Change each of the foregoing exercises from the passive to the active construction.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 109. 1. Deponent verbs are such as have a passive form with an active meaning.

They are called *deponent* (laying aside) because they *lay aside* their active form and passive meaning.

2. They are inflected throughout like passive verbs, and have also the gerund, participles, and supine of the active voice. The perfect and future passive participles, the infinitive-future passive, and the latter supine, have also a passive meaning.

PARADIGMS.

- First Conj.* mīr-ör, mīr-ārī, mīr-āt-ūs, to admire.
Second Conj. fāt-eör, fāt-ērī, fass-ūs, to confess.
Third Conj. { üt-ör, üt-ī, ūs-ūs, to use.
 { pāt-i-ör, pāt-ī, pass-ūs, to suffer.
Fourth Conj. mēt-iör, mēt-irī, mens-ūs, to measure.

INDICATIVE.

Present.	mīr-ör, <i>I admire.</i>	fāt-eör, <i>I confess.</i>	üt-ör, <i>I use.</i>	pāt-i-ör, <i>I suffer.</i>	mēt-iör, <i>I measure.</i>
Imperf.	mīr-ābār, <i>I was admir- ing.</i>	fāt-ēbār, <i>I was con- fessing.</i>	üt-ēbār, <i>I was using.</i>	pāt-i-ēbār, <i>I was suf- fering.</i>	mēt-iēbār, <i>I was measur- ing.</i>
Future.	mīr-ābör, <i>I shall ad- mire.</i>	fāt-ēbör, <i>I shall con- fess.</i>	üt-ār, <i>I shall use.</i>	pāt-i-ār; <i>I shall suf- fer.</i>	mēt-iār, <i>I shall mea- sure.</i>
Pres. Perf.	mīrāt-ūs sūm, <i>I have ad- mired.</i>	fass-ūs sūm, <i>I have con- fessed.</i>	ūs-ūs sūm, <i>I have used.</i>	pass-ūs sūm, <i>I have suf- fered.</i>	mens-ūs sūm, <i>I have mea- sured.</i>
Past-Perf.	mīrāt-ūs ērām, <i>I had ad- mired.</i>	fass-ūs ērām, <i>I had con- fessed.</i>	ūs-ūs ērām, <i>I had used.</i>	pass-ūs ērām <i>I had suf- fered.</i>	mens-ūs ērām, <i>I had mea- sured.</i>
Fut. Perf.	mīrāt-ūs ērō, <i>I shall have admired.</i>	fass-ūs ērō, <i>I shall have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs ērō, <i>I shall have used.</i>	pass-ūs ērō, <i>I shall have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs ērō, <i>I shall have measured.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	mīr-ēr, <i>I may ad- mire.</i>	fāt-eār, <i>I may con- fess.</i>	üt-ār, <i>I may use.</i>	pāt-i-ār, <i>I may suf- fer.</i>	mēt-iār, <i>I may mea- sure.</i>
Imperf.	mīr-ārēr, <i>I might ad- mire.</i>	fāt-ērēr, <i>I might con- fess.</i>	üt-ērēr, <i>I might use.</i>	pāt-ērēr, <i>I might suf- fer.</i>	mēt-irēr, <i>I might mea- sure.</i>
Pres. Perf.	mīrāt-ūs sīm, <i>I may have admired.</i>	fass-ūs sīm, <i>I might have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs sīm, <i>I may have used.</i>	pass-ūs sīm, <i>I may have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs sīm, <i>I may have measured.</i>
Past-Perf.	mīrāt-ūs es- sēm, <i>I might have admired.</i>	fass-ūs es- sēm, <i>I might have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs essēm, <i>I might have used.</i>	pass-ūs es- sēm, <i>I might have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs es- sēm, <i>I might have measured.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	mīr-ārē, <i>admire thou.</i>	fāt-ērē, <i>confess thou.</i>	ūt-ērē, <i>use thou.</i>	pāt-ērē, <i>suffer thou.</i>	mēt-īrē, <i>measure thou.</i>
Future.	mīr-ātōr, <i>thou shalt admire.</i>	fāt-ētōr, <i>thou shalt confess.</i>	ūt-itōr, <i>thou shalt use.</i>	pāt-itōr, <i>thou shalt suffer.</i>	mēt-itōr, <i>thou shalt measure.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	mīr-ārī, <i>to admire.</i>	fāt-ērī, <i>to confess.</i>	ūt-ī, <i>to use.</i>	pāt-ī, <i>to suffer.</i>	mēt-īrī, <i>to measure.</i>
Perfect.	mīrāt-ūs essē, <i>to have admired.</i>	fass-ūs essē, <i>to have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs essē, <i>to have used.</i>	pass-ūs essē, <i>to have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs essē, <i>to have measured.</i>
Future.	mīrāt-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to admire.</i>	fass-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to confess.</i>	ūs-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to use.</i>	pass-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to suffer.</i>	mens-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to measure.</i>
	mīrāt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be admired.</i>	fass-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be confessed.</i>	ūs-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be used.</i>	pass-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be suffered.</i>	mens-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be measured.</i>
Fut. Perf.	mīrāt-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to admire.</i>	fass-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to confess.</i>	ūs-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to use.</i>	pass-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to suffer.</i>	mens-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to measure.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	mīr-ans, <i>admiring.</i>	fāt-ens, <i>confessing.</i>	ūt-ens, <i>using.</i>	pāt-i-ens, <i>suffering.</i>	mēt-iens, <i>measuring.</i>
Perfect.	mīrāt-ūs, <i>having admired.</i>	fass-ūs, <i>having confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs, <i>having used.</i>	pass-ūs, <i>having suffered.</i>	mens-ūs, <i>having measured.</i>
Future.	mīrāt-ūrūs, <i>about to admire.</i>	fass-ūrūs, <i>about to confess.</i>	ūs-ūrūs, <i>about to use.</i>	pass-ūrūs, <i>about to suffer.</i>	mens-ūrūs, <i>about to measure.</i>
Fut. Pass.	mīr-andūs, <i>to be admired.</i>	fāt-endūs, <i>to be confessed.</i>	ūt-endūs, <i>to be used.</i>	pāt-i-endūs, <i>to be suffered.</i>	mēt-iendūs, <i>to be measured.</i>

GERUND.

	mīr-andī, <i>of admiring.</i>	fāt-endī, <i>of confessing.</i>	ūt-endī, <i>of using.</i>	pāt-i-endī, <i>of suffering.</i>	mēt-iendī, <i>of measuring.</i>
--	----------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

SUPINE.

	mīrāt-ūm, mīrāt-ū.	fass-ūm, fass-ū.	ūs-ūm, ūs-ū.	pass-ūm, pass-ū.	mens-ūm, mens-ū.
--	-----------------------	---------------------	-----------------	---------------------	---------------------

3. The verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fīdo*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I delight, and *sōleo*, I am accustomed, want the perfect stem. The perfect tenses have a passive form, but an active meaning: as, *ausūs sūm*, I have dared; *fīsūs sūm*, I have trusted; *gavisūs sūm*, I have rejoiced; *sōlītūs sūm*, I have been accustomed.

4. Here may also be observed the verbs *vāpūlo*, I am beaten; *vēneo*, I am sold; and *fīo*, I am made; which have an active form with a passive meaning.

5. Many deponents have a middle force: as, *prōfiscōr*, I begin to put myself forward, *i.e.* I set out; *ūtōr*, I employ myself (with a thing), *i.e.* I use (a thing).

EXERCISE XLVI.

§ 110. Vocabulary.

mōr-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to delay.	frūmentāriūs, -ā, -ūm, of corn.
cōn-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to attempt.	rēs frūmentāriā, provisions.
pōpūl-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to plunder.	publicūs, -ā, -ūm, public.
hort-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to exhort.	privātūs, -ā, -ūm, private.
īmīt-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to imitate.	mors, mort-īs, death.
tu-eōr, -ērī, tuītūs and tūtūs, to protect.	supplicium, -ī, punishment.
confīt-eōr, -ērī, confess-ūs, to confess.	peccātum, -ī, fault, sin.
sēqu-ōr, sēquī, sēcūt-ūs, to follow.	āmōr, -ōr-īs, love.
ulcisc-ōr, -ī, ultūs, to avenge.	scēlūs, -ēr-īs, crime, wickedness.
pāt-i-ōr, pāt-i, pass-ūs, to endure, suffer, permit.	causā, -æ, cause; abl., for the sake of.
con-grēd-i-ōr, congrēd-i, congress-ūs, to meet; in a hostile sense, to contend.	paucī, -æ, -ā, few.
	ment-iōr, -īrī, -itūs, to lie.
	mēt-iōr, -īrī, mens-ūs, to measure.

Translate into English.

Cæsār in hōc oppidō paucōs diēs (§ 66, 2) rēi frūmentāriæ causā mōrābātūr. Flūminā, quæ rēcentībūs imbrībūs auctā sunt (see *augērē*), multōs diēs consulēm mōrābuntūr.

3 Helvētīi in Æduōrūm finēs pervēnerant, cōrumquē āgrōs
 populābantūr. 4 Hostēs pēr prōvinciām nostrām itēr facēre
 cōnatī erant. 5 Impērātōr fortīs milītēs hortātūs est. 6 Lī-
 bēri non sempēr virtūtēm pārentiūm imitantūr. 7 Quī
 suōs libērōs nōn tuētūr (§ 87, 7), hōmō est turpissimūs.
 8 Turpē est mentīri. 9 Nonnē scēlērā tuā confessūs es?
 1 Equitēs nostrī hostēs ad flūmēn sēcūtī sunt. 11 Hīc latrō
 gravissimūm supplicium patiētūr. 12 Cūm Cicerōnē sēpē in
 urbē congressūs sūm. 13 Hāc in rē Cēsār publicās ac pri-
 vātās injūriās ultūs est.

Translate into Latin.

1 A wise man always confesses his faults. 2 Davus con-
 fessed his love for (*use gen.*) the maid-servant. 3 The brave
 son will avenge his father's death. 4 Our skirmishers
 delayed the journey of the enemy many hours. 5 The
 prudent consul will not suffer the enemy to lead their
 forces through the most fertile part of Gaul. 6 To lie is
 the basest of all things. 7 The thief had confessed all his
 crimes. 8 The general on the sixth day measured (out)
 corn to the soldiers. 9 It is easier to imitate vice than
 virtue. 10 The Æduans, having contended with Ariovistus,
 king of the Germans, were conquered. 11 Our men will
 attempt to follow the enemy through the forest.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 111. 1. Irregular verbs do not use, in some of their
 parts formed from the present-stem, the endings of
 either of the four conjugations. The forms called
 irregular are, for the most part, either syncopated or
 ancient forms. *The tenses formed on the perfect and
 the supine stems are alike in all verbs.*

2. The irregular verbs are, *essě*, to be; *vellě*, to be willing; *ferrě*, to bear; *ěděřě* or *essě*, to eat; *fieri*, to be made, to become; *īřě*, to go; *quīřě*, to be able; and their compounds.

3. *Vō'-lo*, **vel'-lē**,* *vōl'-u-ī*, to wish, to be willing.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	vō'-lō , vīs , vult vōl'-ā-mūs , vul'-tīs , vō'-lunt .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	vō-lē'-bām , vō-lē'-bās , etc. (<i>regular</i> .)
<i>Future</i> ,	vō'-lām , vō'-lēs , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	vōl'-u-ī , -is'-tī , -īt , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	vō-lu'-ērām , -ērās , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	vō-lu'-ērō , -ērīs , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	vě'-līm , vě'-līs , vě'-līt ; vě-lī'-mūs , vě-lī'-tīs , vě'-lint .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	vel'-lēm , vel'-lēs , vel'-lēt ; vel-lē'-mūs , vel-lē'-tīs , vel'-lent .
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	vō-lu'-ērīm , -ērīs , -ērīt , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	vōl-u-is'-sēm , -is'-sēs , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Present</i> , vel'-lē .		<i>Pres.</i> vō'-lens (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Perfect</i> , vōl-u-is'-sě (<i>reg.</i>)		

NOTE.—*Vōlo* is a verb of the third conjugation, the present-stem being *věl-*, *vōl-*, or *vūl-*. The forms *vīs*, *vūlt*, and *vultīs* are synco-pated from *vōl-īs*, *vōl-īt*, and *vōl-ītīs*, interchanging *ū* for *ō*. The ending *ūmūs* is an old form for *īmūs*. *Vellě* and *vellēm* are synco-pated forms of *věl-ěrě* and *věl-ěrēm*, *ě* being elided, and *r* passing into *l* for euphony: *věl-ě-rě*, *vel-rě*, *vel-lě*; *věl-ě-rēm*, *vel-rēm*, *vel-lēm*.

* In the following paradigms the irregular forms are in bold type.

The endings *īm*, *īs*, *īt*, etc. of the subjunctive present are old forms found also in *sīm*, *sīs*, etc., *ēdīm*, *ēdīs*, etc. (See § 224, 2.)

4. *Nōlo* is compounded of *nē* or *nōn*, and *vōlo*.

Nō'-lo, *nol'-lē*, *nōl'-u-ī*, to be unwilling.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>nō'-lō</i> , <i>non'-vīs</i> , <i>non'-vult</i> ; <i>nōl'-ū-mūs</i> , <i>non-vul'-tīs</i> , <i>nō'-lunt</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>nō-lē'-bām</i> , <i>nō-lē'-bās</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>nō'-lām</i> , <i>nō'-lēs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>nōl'-u-ī</i> , <i>-is'-tī</i> , <i>-īt</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>nō-lu'-ērām</i> , <i>-ērās</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>nō-lu'-ērō</i> , <i>-ērīs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>nō'-līm</i> , <i>nō'-līs</i> , <i>nō'-līt</i> ; <i>nō-lī'-mūs</i> , <i>nō-lī'-tīs</i> , <i>nō'-līnt</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>nol'-lēm</i> , <i>nol'-lēs</i> , <i>nol'-lēt</i> ; <i>nol-lē'-mūs</i> , <i>nol-lē'-tīs</i> , <i>nol'-lent</i> .
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>nō-lu'-ērīm</i> , <i>-ērīs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>nōl-u-is'-sēm</i> , <i>-is'-sēs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

IMPERATIVE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Present</i> , 2.	<i>nō'-lī</i> ,	2. <i>nō-lī'-tē</i> .
<i>Future</i> , 2.	<i>nō-lī'-tō</i> ,	2. <i>nōl-lī'-tō'-tē</i> ,
	3. <i>nō-lī'-tō</i> ;	3. <i>nō-lun'-tō</i> .

INFINITIVE.

Present, *nol'-lē*.
Perfect, *nōl-u-is'-sē* (*reg.*)

PARTICIPLE.

Present, *nō'-lens* (*reg.*)

NOTE —The same remarks apply to *nōlo* as to its primitive *vōlo*. The *n* and *v* are dropped, a contraction ensues, and hence the first

syllable is always long: *no(n-v)ðlo*, *no-ðlo*, *nðlo*. The uncontracted form is retained in the second and third singular and second plural of the indicative present. The imperative endings *ī*, *ī ē*, *ī o*, etc. are irregular, belonging properly to the fourth conjugation.

5. *Mālo* is compounded of *mā-* (the root of *māgīs*), more, and *vðlo*.

Mā'-lo, *mal'-lē*, *māl'-u-ī*, to prefer, to be more willing.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>mā'-lð</i> , <i>mā'-vīs</i> , <i>mā'-vult</i> ; <i>māl'-ūmūs</i> , <i>mā-vul'-tīs</i> , <i>mā'-lunt</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>mā-lē'-bām</i> , <i>mā-lē'-bās</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>mā'-lām</i> , <i>mā'-lēs</i> , <i>mā'-lēt</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>māl'-u-ī</i> , <i>-is'-tī</i> , <i>-īt</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>mā-lu'-ērām</i> , <i>-ērās</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>mā-lu'-ērð</i> , <i>-ērīs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>mā'-līm</i> , <i>mā'-līs</i> , <i>mā'-līt</i> ; <i>mā-lī'-mūs</i> , <i>mā-lī'-tīs</i> , <i>mā'-lint</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>mal'-lēm</i> , <i>mal'-lēs</i> , <i>mal'-lēt</i> ; <i>mal-lē'-mūs</i> , <i>mal-lē'-tīs</i> , <i>mal'-lent</i> .
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>mā-lu'-ērīm</i> , <i>-ērīs</i> , <i>-ērīt</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>māl-u-is'-sēm</i> , <i>-is'-sēs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present</i> , <i>mal'-lē</i> .	<i>Perfect</i> , <i>māl-u-is'-sē</i> .
-----------------------------------	--

NOTE.—*Mālo* is formed in the same manner with *nðlo*, and its first syllable is long for the same reason.

6. *Fðro* is a verb of the third conjugation, which has become irregular by syncopation: as, *fers* for *fðr-īs*; *fer-tīs* for *fðr-ī-tīs*; *fer-rð* for *fðr-ð-rð*; *fer-rēm* for *fðr-ð-rem*; *fðr* for *fðr-ð*; *fer-tð* for *fðr-ī-tð*; *fer-rðr* for *fðr-*

ě-rěr, etc. The perfect and supine stems are taken from the obsolete *tŭl-o* (whence *tollo*) and *tla-o* (*tla-*, by metathesis *lat-*).

ACTIVE VOICE.

Fě'-ro, fer'-rě, tŭ'-lī, lā'-tŭm, to carry.

INDICATIVE.

*Present, fě'-rŏ, fers, fert;
fěr'-īmŭs, -tīs, -unt.*

Imperfect, fě-rě'-bām, -rě'-bās, etc.

Future, fě'-rām, fě'-rēs, etc.

Pres. Perf. tŭ'-lī, tŭ-lis'-tī, etc.

Past Perf. tŭl'-ě-rām, -rās, etc.

Fut. Perf. tŭ'-lě-rŏ, -rīs, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fě'-rām, fě'-rās, etc.

fer'-rēm, -rēs, -rēt;

fer-rě'-mŭs, -rě'-tīs, -rent.

tŭ'-lě-rīm, tŭ'-lě-rīs, etc.

tŭ-lis'-sēm, -lis'-sēs, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Present, 2. fěr;

2. fer'-tě.

Future, 2. fer'-tŏ, 3. fer'-tŏ;

2. -tŏ'-tě. 3. -un'-tŏ.

INFINITIVE.

^{Pres}Perf. fer-rě,

Perf. tŭ-lis'-sě,

Fut. lā-tŭ'-rŭs es'-sě.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, fě'-rens,

Future, lā-tŭ'-rŭs.

GERUND. fě-ren'-dī.

*SUPINE. { lā'-tŭm,
lā'-tŭ.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fě'-rŏr, fer'-rī, lā'-tŭs, to be carried.

INDICATIVE.

Present, fě'-rŏr, fer'-rīs or -rě, -tŭr. Pl. fěr'-īmŭr, etc.

Imperfect, fě-rě'-bār, -bā-rīs, etc.

Future, fě'-rār, -rě'-rīs, etc.

Pres. Perf. lā'-tŭs sŭm, etc.

Past Perf. lā'-tŭs ě'-rām, etc.

Fut. Perf. lā'-tŭs ě'-rŏ, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>fě'-răr, -ră'-rīs, etc.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>fer'-rēr, -rē'-rīs or -rē'-rě, -rē'-tūr; fer-rē'-mūr, -rēm'-īnī, -ren'-tūr.</i>
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>lā'-tūs sīm, etc.</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>lā'-tūs es'-sēm, etc.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	2. <i>fer'-rě;</i>	<i>Future,</i>	2. <i>fer'-tōr, 3. fer'-tōr;</i>
	2. <i>fě-rīm'-īnī.</i>		2. <i>(fě-rēm'-īnī), 3. fě- run'-tōr.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>fer'-rī.</i>	
<i>Future,</i>	<i>lā'-tūm ī'-rī.</i>	<i>fě-ren'-dūs.</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>lā'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.</i>	<i>lā'-tūs.</i>

7. *Fīo* is used as the passive of *făcio*. It is originally an intransitive verb of the fourth conjugation, using only those parts formed from the present-stem. It differs from other verbs of the fourth conjugation only in not absorbing *ě* in the infinitive present and subjunctive imperfect.

Fī'-o, fī'-ērī, fac'-tūs, to be done, to be made, to become.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>fī'-ō, fīs, fīt; fī'-mūs, fī'-tīs, fī'-unt.</i>	<i>fī'-ām, -ās, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fī'-ē'-bām, -ē'-bās, etc.</i>	<i>fī'-ērēm, -ērēs, etc.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>fī'-ām, -ēs, etc.</i>	
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>fac'-tūs sūm, etc.</i>	<i>fac'-tūs sīm, etc.</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>fac'-tūs ẽ'-rām, etc.</i>	<i>fac'-tūs es'-sēm, etc.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>fac'-tūs ẽ'-rō, etc.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES
<i>Pres.</i> fī, fī'-tě.	fī'-ěri.	
<i>Fut.</i>	fac'-tūm ī'-rī.	fă-ci-en'-dūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	fac'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.	fac'-tūs.

8. *Ed-ěřě*, to eat, is a regular verb of the third conjugation; but, in addition to the regular tense-forms, it has some forms similar to the corresponding tense-forms of *essě*, to be, viz.:—

INDICATIVE PRES.	SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERF.
<i>S.</i> ě'-dō, ě'-dis or <i>ēs</i> , ě'-dīt or <i>est</i> ;	ěd'-ěřēm or <i>es'-sēm</i> , ěd'-ěřēs or <i>es'-sēs</i> , ěd'-ěřēt or <i>ēs'-sēt</i> .
<i>P.</i> ěd'-īmūs, ěd'-ītīs or <i>es'-tīs</i> , ě'-dunt.	ěd'-ě-rě'-mūs or <i>es-sě'-mūs</i> , ěd'-ě-rě'-tīs or <i>es-sě'-tīs</i> , ěd'-ěrent or <i>es'-sent</i> .

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> ě'-dě	<i>P.</i> ěd'-ītě or <i>es'-tě</i> .	<i>Fut. S.</i> ěd'-ītō	<i>P.</i> ěd'-ī-tō'-tě or <i>es-tō'-tě</i> , ě-dun'-tō.
-----------------------	--------------------------------------	------------------------	---

INFINITIVE PRES.

ěd'-ěřě or *es'-sě*.

PASSIVE.

Indic. Pres. ěd'-ītūr or *es'-tūr*.

Subj. Imp. ěd'-ě-rě'-tūr or *es-sě'-tūr*.

NOTE.—The irregular forms of this verb are syncopations of the regular ones. Thus, *ěd-īs*, *ed-s* (dropping *d* before *s*), *ēs*; *ěd-īt*, *ěd-t* (changing *d* before *t* into *s*), *est*. In *ěd-ěřēm*, etc., *ě* is elided, *d* before *r* passes into *s*, and *r* of the ending is assimilated with the last letter of the stem as in *vel-lě*:—*ěd-ě-rēm*, *ed-rēm*, *es-rēm*, *essēm*. The forms *ědīm*, *ědīs*, etc., are found in the subjunctive present. See § 224, 2.

9. *Irě*, to go, in most of its parts has the endings of the fourth conjugation. The radical *i* is replaced by *e*

in the indicative present, first singular and third plural ; in the subjunctive present ; in the oblique cases of the present participle ; and in the gerund.

E'-o, i'-rě, i'-vī, i'-tūm, to go.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	e'-ō, is, it ; i'-mūs, i'-tīs, e'-unt.	e'-ām, -ās, -āt ; e'-ā-mūs, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	i'-bām, i'-bās, i'-bāt ; i'-bām'-ūs, etc.	i'-rēm, i'-rēs, i'-rēt ; i'-rē'-mūs, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	i'-bō, i'-bīs, i'-bīt ; i'b'-i-mūs, etc.	
<i>Pres. P.</i>	i'-vī, i'-vis'-tī, i'-vīt ; i'-īmūs, etc.	i'v'-ērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt ; i'-vēr'-īmūs, etc.
<i>Past P.</i>	i'v'-ērām, -ērās, -ērāt ; i'v'-ērā'-mūs, etc.	i'-vis'-sēm, -is'-sēs, -is'-sēt ; i'v-is-sē'-mūs, etc.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	i'v'-ērō, -ērīs, etc.	

	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	i ; i'-tě.	i'-rě.	i'-ens (gen. e-un'-tīs).
<i>Fut.</i>	i'-tō, i'-tō ; i-tō'-tě, e-un'-tō.	i-tū'-rūs es'-sě. i-tū'-rūs.	
<i>Perf.</i>		i-vis'-sě.	

GERUND.

e-un'-dī,
e-un'-do, etc.

SUPINE.

i'-tūm, i'-tū.

10. *Quīrě*, to be able, and *něquīrě*, to be unable, are inflected like *īrě*, but they have no imperative or gerund, and their participles are rarely used. The passive forms *quītūr, queuntūr, queātūr, queantūr, quītūs sūm, nēquītūr*, and *nēquītūm*, occur with a passive infinitive.

11. For the conjugation of *essě*, see § 100.

Like *essě* are conjugated its compounds, except *prō-sŭm* and *possŭm*.

12. *Prōsŭm* inserts a *d*, to relieve the pronunciation, wherever the simple verb begins with *ě*: as,

Ind. Pres. **prō'-sŭm, prō'-dēs, prō'-dest, etc.**

“ *Imp.* **prōd'-ērām, prōd'-ērās, prōd'-ērāt, etc.**

13. *Possŭm* is compounded of *pōt-* (stem of *pōtis*), *able*, and *sŭm*, *t* before *s* passing into *s*. The *pōtis* is sometimes written separately, and is then usually indeclinable.

Pos'-sŭm, pos'-sě, pōt'-u-ī, I can, I am able.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. **pos'-sŭm, pōt'-ēs, pōt'-est;
pos'-sŭmŭs, pōt-es'-tīs, pos'-sunt.**

Imp. **pōt'-ērām, pōt'-ērās, pōt'-ērāt;
pōt-ě-rā'-mŭs, etc.**

Fut. **pōt'-ērō, pōt'-ērīs, pōt'-ērīt;
pōt-ěr'-īmŭs, -ěr'-ītīs, -ērunt.**

Perf. **pōt'-u-ī, -is'-tī, -īt;
pō-tu'-īmŭs, etc.**

Past P. **pō-tu'-ērām, -ērās, -ērāt;
pōt-u-ě-rā'-mŭs, etc.**

Fut. P. **pō-tu'-ērō, -ērīs, -ērīt;
pōt-u-ěr'-īmŭs, etc.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. **pos'-sīm, pos'-sīs, pos'-sīt;
pos-sī'-mŭs, pos-sī'-tīs, pos'-sint.**

Imp. **pos'-sēm, pos'-sēs, pos'-sēt;
pos-sē'-mŭs, pos-sē'-tīs, pos'-sent.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perf. pö-tu'-ērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt, etc.

Past Perf. pöt-u-is'-sēm, -is'-sēs, -is'-sēt, etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present, pos'-sē.

Perfect, pöt-u-is'-sē.

The participial form *pötens* is used only as an adjective.

§ 112. EXERCISE XLVII.

Puērī pēr silvām densām ibant. Impērātōrēs clārī captīvōs vĕnĕnō nĕcārē nōlunt. Æduī crūdĕlītātēm Ariōvistī, Germānōrūm rĕgīs, ferrē nōn pōtuērunt. Consūl urbēm dĕfendĕrē nōn pōtĕrīt. Cæsār hiēmē ōpūs conficĕrē cōnābītūr. Princeps pēr āmicōs pōtens fiĕbāt. Cæsār, cūm iīs lĕgiōnībūs quās ex hībernīs ĕduxĕrāt, īn Galliām īrē contendīt (*hastened*). In hāc cīvītātē sunt triā milliā (§ 64, *Rem.* 9) hōmīnūm quī armā ferrē possunt. Impērātōr ā mīlītībūs rex (§ 67, 3) factūs est. Nēmō ūnō diē sāpiens fiĕrī pōtest. Nōn quīvis ōrātōr prĕstantissimūs fiĕrī pōtest. Poētā nascītūr, nōn fīt. Sūperbiā nōbīlītātīs ā plĕbē ferri nōn pōtest.

Translate into Latin.

Who can bear the cruelty of such a king? Can any one (*numquīs*) bear the insolence (*insōlentiā*) of this slave?

Who is willing to be slain by a robber? We are unwilling to hold the farmer's bull by the horns. The citizens

are unwilling to give their gold to that fellow (§ 84, *Rem.* 4). Who is unwilling to become rich and powerful?

Some of the citizens will be unwilling to bear arms. The prudent leader will not go into the enemy's country (*finēs*).

Cicero was made consul by the best of the citizens. This

boy will become a distinguished poet in a few years. Who can suffer so great a punishment? //

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 113. 1. Defective verbs are such as want some of their parts.

2. There are many verbs which are not used in all the tenses. The following list contains such as are most defective:—

Odī, <i>I hate.</i>	Fāri, <i>to speak.</i>	Cēdō, <i>tell or give me.</i>
Cœpī, <i>I have begun.</i>	Quæsō, <i>I beseech.</i>	Confīt, <i>it is done.</i>
Mēmīnī, <i>I remember.</i>	Avē, <i>hail.</i>	Dēfīt, <i>it is wanting.</i>
Aiō, <i>I say.</i>	Salvē, <i>hail.</i>	Infīt, <i>he begins.</i>
Inquām, <i>I say.</i>	Apāgē, <i>begone.</i>	Ovāt, <i>he rejoices.</i>

Remark 1.—*Odī*, *cœpī*, and *mēmīnī* are used for the most part in the perfect tenses, and hence are sometimes called *preteritive* verbs.

	ōdī,	cœpī,	mēmīnī,
	ōdērām,	cœpērām,	mēmīnērām,
	ōdērō,	cœpērō,	mēmīnērō,
	ōdērīm,	cœpērīm,	mēmīnērīm,
	ōdissēm,	cœpissēm,	mēmīnissēm,
	ōdissē,	cœpissē,	mēmīnissē.
PART.	{ ōsūs,	cœptūs,	
	{ ōsūrūs,	cœptūrūs.	
DEP. FORM.	ōsūs sūm.		

IMP. mēmentō,
mēmentōtē.

Remark 2.—The passive form of *cœpī* (*cœptūs sūm*, etc.) is preferred with a passive infinitive: as, *urbs oppugnārī cœptā est*, the city began to be besieged.

Remark 3.—The tenses of *ōdī* and *mēmīnī*, though perfect in form, express incomplete action: thus, *ōdērām*, I hated; *ōdēro*, I shall hate; *mēmīnī*, I have kept in mind, *therefore* I remember; *mēmīnērām*, I remembered. The perfects *nōvī* and *consuēvī* have a similar meaning: thus, *nosco*, I find out, *nōvī*, I have

found out, *I know*; *consuesco*, *I accustom myself*, *consuēvī*, *I am accustomed*.

3. A-io, *I say*.

Ind. Pres. a'-iō*, a'-īs, a'-īt; —, —, a'-iunt*.

Ind. Imperf. a-iē'-bām, a-iē'-bās, etc.

Subj. Pres. —, a'-iās, a'-iāt; —, —, a'-iant.

Imper. Pres. a'-ī. *Part.* a'-iens.

4. Inquām, *I say*, used only after one or more words of a quotation.

Ind. Pres. in'-quām, in'-quīs, in'-quīt; in'-quī-mūs, in'-quī-tīs, in'-qui-unt.

Ind. Imperf. —, —, in-qui-ē'-bāt or in-quī'-bāt; —, —, in-qui-ē'-bant.

Ind. Future, —, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-ēt; —, —, —.

Ind. Pres Perf. —, in-quis'-tī, in'-quīt; —, —, —.

Subj. Pres. —, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; —, in-qui-ā'-tīs, in'-qui-ant.

Imper. —, in'-quē, in'-quī-to.

5. Fārī, *to speak*.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. —, —, fār-tūr.

Fut. fā'-bōr, —, fāb'-itūr.

Pres. Perf. fā'-tūs sūm, etc.

Past Perf. fā'-tūs ērām, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

fā'-rē.

INFINITIVE.

fā'-rī.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. Perf. fā'-tūs sīm, etc.

Past Perf. fā'-tūs es'-sēm, etc.

PARTICIPLES.

fan'-tīs, etc., without nom.

fā'-tūs, fan'-dūs.

GERUND, fan'-dī, etc.

SUPINE, fā'-tū.

* i between two vowels is pronounced like y: a'-yo, a'-yunt, a'-ye'-bam,

Some other forms are used in the compounds, though all of them are defective.

6. Quæso (*old form of quæro*), *I beseech.*

Ind. Pres. quæ'-sǫ, —, quæ'-sīt; quæs'-ǔ-mūs, —, —.

Inf. Pres. quæs'-ěřě.

7. Avē, *hail!*

Imperative, ā'-vē, ā'-vē'-tě, ā'-vē'-tǫ.

Inf. ā'-vē'-rě.

8. Salvē, *hail!*

Imperative, sal'-vē, sal'-vē'-tě, sal'-vē'-tǫ.

Inf. sal'-vē'-rě. *Ind. Fut.* sal'-vē'-bīs.

9. Āpāgě, *begone.*

This is an old imperative, used as an interjection.

10. Cědo, *tell thou, give me.*

Imper. 2d Sing. cě'-dǫ; *pl.* cet'-tě, contracted from cěd'-ǐ-tě.

11. Confīt, *it is done.*

Ind. Pres. con'-fīt. *Fut.* con-fī'-ět.

Subj. Pres. con-fī'-ăt. *Imperf.* con-fī'-ě-rět. *Inf.* con-fī'-ě-rī.

12. Děfīt, *is wanting.*

Indic. Pres. dě'-fīt, dě-fī'-unt. *Fut.* dě-fī'-ět.

Subj. Pres. dě-fī'-ăt. *Inf.* dě-fī'-ě-rī.

13. Infīt, *he begins.*

Indic. Pres. in'-fīt, in-fī'-unt.

14. Ovăt, *he rejoices.*

Indic. Pres. ō'-văt. *Subj. Pres.* ō'-vět. *Imperf.* ō'-vā'-rět.

15. To these may be added,—

fǫ'-rēm, fǫ'-rēs, fǫ'-rět, —, —, fǫ'-rent, same as *essēm*.

Inf. fǫ'-rě, same as *fūtūrūs essē*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 114. 1. Verbs used only in the third person, and not admitting of a *personal* subject, are called *Impersonal*.

2. An infinitive, or a sentence used as a noun, is usually the subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice, and in the passive the verb may agree with the cognate notion understood: as, *ventūm est ā Cæsārē*, (a coming) was come by Cæsar. As the English language abhors a verb without a subject, the pronoun *it* is placed before an impersonal verb.

Latin idiom. Becomes you to study,
English idiom. It becomes you to study, } Dēcēt tē stūdērē.

3. The various tenses of impersonal verbs are formed by adding the endings of the third person singular to the proper tense-stem.

ENDINGS.

	FIRST CONJ.		SECOND CONJ.		THIRD CONJ.		FOURTH CONJ.	
	<i>Inf. Pres. ārē.</i>		<i>Inf. Pres. ērē.</i>		<i>Inf. Pres. ěrē.</i>		<i>Inf. Pres. ĭrē.</i>	
	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	-āt.	-ēt.	-ēt.	-eāt.	-īt.	-āt.	-īt.	-iāt.
<i>Imp.</i>	-ābāt.	-ārēt.	-ēbāt.	-ērēt.	-ēbāt.	-ērēt.	-iēbāt.	-īrēt.
<i>Fut.</i>	-ābīt.		-ēbīt.		-ēt.		-iēt.	
	<i>Ind. Pres. Perf. -īt;</i>		<i>Past Perf. -ĕrāt;</i>		<i>Fut. Perf. -ĕrīt.</i>			
	<i>Subj. " " -ĕrīt.</i>		<i>" " -issĕt.</i>		<i>Inf. " -issĕ.</i>			

The pupil will add these endings to the stem:—

- 1st conj. jŭv-, (*perf.* jŭv-) of jŭv-āt, *it pleases, delights.*
 2d " dēc-, (*perf.* dēc-ŭ-) of dēc-ēt, *it becomes.*
 3d " contīg-, (*perf.* contīg-) of contīg-īt, *it happens.*
 4th " ĕvēn-, (*perf.* ĕvēn-) of ĕvēnīt, *it turns out, happens.*

4. Many verbs, not strictly impersonal, are used impersonally : as, *dēlectāt*, it delights.

5. Most *intransitive* and many *transitive* verbs are used impersonally in the passive voice, the agent being either omitted, or put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb* : as, *Helvētīū fortitēr pugnāvērunt* ; passive, *āb Helvētīs fortitēr pugnātūm est*, the Helvetians fought bravely, *or*, it was fought bravely by the Helvetians.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

§ 115. Vocabulary.

vespēr, -ēr-ī, *evening*.

cālāmītās, -tāt-īs, *disaster*.

diū (adv.), *a long time, long*.

pēcūniā, -æ, *money, a bribe*.

acrītēr (adv.), *actively, fiercely*.

āb utrisquē, *by both parties*.

utrimquē (adv.), *on both sides*.

eō, irē, ivī, itūm (§ 111, 9), *to go*.

vēn-iō, vēnī-rē, vēn-ī, vent-ūm, *to come*.

consūl-ō, -ērē, consūlu-ī, consult-ūm, *to consult*.

in-fērō, in-ferrē, in-tūl-ī, il-lāt-ūm, *to bring upon, inflict*.

pugn-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to fight*.

Remark.—Impersonal verbs which are *transitive* in meaning have a direct object in the accusative.

Translate into English.

Lībērōs dēcēt pārentēs suōs āmārē. Rēgēm nōn dēcēt lēgēs cīvītātīs violārē. Bellā magnā gērērē Rōmānōs dēlectābāt. Diū ēt acritēr āb utrisquē pugnātūm¹ est. Ab hōrā septimā ād vespērūm pugnātūm¹ ērāt. Eōdēm diē quō (§ 167) īn fīnēs Sēquānōrūm ventūm est,¹ principēs Gallīæ ād eūm convēnērunt. A consūlībūs dē rēpublicā consūltūm est.¹ Cantūm āviūm audirē poētām jūvāt. Tē nōn dēcēt nōbīs bellūm inferrē. Dēlectāt-nē tē maximās (§ 72, 5) cālāmītātēs reipublicæ intūlissē? *had been*

Translate into Latin.

It becomes masters to give food to their servants. It becomes no one (*nēmo*) to do an injury. It delights this wicked chief to burn prisoners with fire. It was fought fiercely by both parties from the fourth hour till (to) sunset. The noble chief will consult (*express it impersonally*) concerning the safety of the commonwealth. It does not become a judge to receive a bribe. This wicked centurion has brought a great disaster upon the army.

PARTICLES.

§ 116. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called *particles*. They are *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

ADVERBS.

§ 117. 1. An adverb is a word used to limit the meaning of a verb, adjective, or another adverb. Some adverbs also limit nouns.

2. In respect to form, adverbs are *primitive* or *derivative*.

3. In respect to meaning, adverbs may be divided into several classes: as,—

TEMPORAL, denoting time: as, *hōdiē*, to-day; *crās*, to-morrow.

LOCAL, denoting place: as, *ibi*, there; *indē*, thence.

MODAL, denoting manner: as, *běně*, well; *mālě*, badly.

NEGATIVE: as, *nōn*, not; *ně-quǐdēm*, not even.

4. Some adverbs are also correlative, and such are derived from pronouns:—

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROG.	INDEFINITE.
{ <i>ibi</i> , there. <i>ibidēm</i> , just there.	{ <i>ūbi</i> , where. <i>ūbicunquē</i> , wherever.	<i>ūbi</i> ? where?	{ <i>ālicūbi</i> , somewhere. <i>ūbiquē</i> , everywhere <i>ūbivis</i> , wherever you please.
{ <i>indē</i> , thence. <i>indēdēm</i> , from the same place.	{ <i>undē</i> , whence. <i>undēcunquē</i> , whence- soever.	<i>undē</i> ? whence?	{ <i>ālicundē</i> , from somewhere. <i>undīquē</i> , from all sides. <i>undēvis</i> , from any- where you please.
{ <i>eō</i> , to that place. <i>eōdēm</i> , to the same place.	{ <i>quō</i> , whither. <i>quōquō</i> , } whither- <i>quōcumquē</i> , } soever.	<i>quō</i> ? whither?	{ <i>āliquō</i> , to some place. <i>quōvis</i> , <i>quōlibēt</i> , whithersoever you please.
<i>tūm</i> , then. —	<i>cūm</i> or <i>quūm</i> , when. { <i>quandō</i> , when. <i>quandōquē</i> , } when- <i>quandōcumquē</i> , } ever.	— — <i>quandō</i> ? when?	{ <i>āliquando</i> , at some time. <i>quandōlibēt</i> , in due time.

5. Derivative adverbs are formed for the most part from adjectives and participles by adding *-ē* to the stem if the primitive be of the second declension; and *-itēr* (sometimes *-tēr*), if the primitive be of the third declension: as, *libēr*, free;—adverb, *libēr-ē*, freely; *brēvis*, short; *brēvītēr*, shortly.

6. Some adverbs are derived from nouns by adding *-tūs* or *-tīm* to the stem with a connecting vowel: as, *coel-ī-tūs* (*coel-ūm*), from heaven; *grēg-ā-tīm* (*grex*), in flocks.

7. Cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are used as adverbs: as, *noctū*, by night; *multūm*, much; *multō*, by much; *eō* (old accusative, for *eōn*), to that place.

8. The adverbs derived from *aliūs*, when contrasted with themselves or with the forms of *aliūs*, have the same construction as their primitives. See § 56, *Rem.*

2. Alit̃er — ālit̃er, *in one way*, — *in another*; āliās — āliās, *at one time*, — *at another*; ālit̃er āliīs lōquit̃ur, *he talks one way to one, another way to another*.

9. Two negatives destroy each other: as, non-nullī, *some*.

EXERCISE XLIX.

§ 118. 1. *Rule of Syntax*.—Intransitive verbs, though they do not admit of a direct object, may have an indirect object in the dative.

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage any thing is, or is done. (DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE.)

3. *Rule of Position*.—The adverb usually precedes the word it limits; but *fērē* usually stands between the adjective and the noun: as, *omnēs fērē hōmīnēs*, *almost all men*.

NOTE.—Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin.

Vocabulary.

fort-īt̃er (fortis), *bravely*.

cēl̃er-it̃er (cēl̃er), *swiftly*.

audac-t̃er (audax), *boldly*.

gr̃eg-ā-tīm (grex), *in flocks*.

paul-ā-tīm (paulus), *by degrees*.

nē-quidēm (the limited word being placed between), *not even*.

gēñer-ā-tīm (gēnūs), *by tribes*.

beāt-ē (beātūs), *happily*.

bēn-ē (bōnūs), *well*.

fēr-ē, *almost*.

fācīl-ē (fācīlis), *easily*.

sæp̃ē, *frequently, often*.

rēpent-ē (rēpens), *suddenly*.

præcīpu-ē (præcīpuūs), *especially*.

phālanx, phālang-īs (acc. sing.

-ēm and -ā; acc. pl. -ās), *a phalanx*.

lanx.

ac-cēd-ō, accēd-ērē, access-ī, access-ūm, *to come up*.

vīv-ō, -ērē, vix-ī, viet-ūm, *to live*.

constitu-ō, -ērē, constitu-ī, constitūt-ūm, *to establish, post*.

curr-ō, -ērē, cūcurr-ī, curs-ūm, *to run*.

prō-curr-ō, -ērē, prōeūcurr-ī and prōcurr-ī, prōcursūm, *to run forward.*

per-fring-ō, -ērē, perfrēg-ī, perfract-ūm, *to break through.*

pār-eō, -ērē, pārū-ī, pārīt-ūm (intr.), *to obey.*

indulg-eō, -ērē, indulg-ī, indult-ūm (intr.), *to indulge.*

nōc-eō, -ērē, nōcu-ī, nōcīt-ūm (intr.), *to hurt, injure.*

crēdō, crēd-ērē, crēdīd-ī, crēdīt-ūm (intr.), *to believe, trust.*

Translate into English.

Nostrī tōtūm diēm fortitēr* pugnāvērant. Hostēs rēpentē cēlērīterquē prōcurrērunt. Quī bēnē vīvīt (§ 87, 8, 9,) beātē vīvīt. Omniā fērē ānīmāliā grēgātīm currunt. Impērātōr paulātīm exercitūm īn ūnūm lōcūm condūcēbāt. Nostrī fācīlē hostiūm phālangēm perfrēgērunt. Filiūm dēcēt patrī suō pārērē. Gallī cūm Germānīs sēpē contēdēbant. Nē Cēsār quīdēm hanc cīvītātēm vīncērē pōtēst. Milītēs ād mūrōs oppīdī audactēr accessērunt. Tūm Germānī cōpiās suās gēnērātīm constituērunt. Cēsār huic lēgiōnī prēcīpuē indulgērāt. Quīs nostrūm (§ 58, 3) istī (§ 84, *Rem. 4*) crēdīt? Num (81, 3) bōnūm dēlectāt āliīs nōcērē?

Translate into Latin.

To live well is to live happily. Wicked men always injure themselves. Our men ran forward suddenly and swiftly, and easily routed the enemy's footmen. The cavalry of the Thracians came up boldly to the very (*ipsē*) gates of the city. I will not believe even the consul himself. The prudent general was unwilling to lead his army through the by-paths of the forest. This boy can easily swim across a very deep river. The enemy will not attempt to break through our line-of-battle.

* See model of analysis 8. (App. XI.)

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 119. Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. The comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ūs* into *e*: as, *fácilē, fáciliūs, fácilimē; celerit̃er, celerīūs, celerrimē*.

Remark 1.—The superlative of the adverb sometimes ends in *ō* or *ūm*: as, *mēritissimō, prīmūm*.

Remark 2.—If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, that of the adverb is so likewise: as, *bēnē, mēliūs, optimē; mālē, pējūs, pessimē; pārūm, mīnūs, mīnimē; multūm, plūs, plūrīmūm; priūs, prīmō or prīmūm; ōciūs, ōcissimē; dētēriūs, dētērrimē; pōtiūs, pōtissimē or pōtissimūm; mēritō, mēritissimō; sātīs, sātīūs. Māgīs, maximē, has no positive; and nūpēr, nūperrimē, has no comparative.*

Remark 3.—Notice also the following: *prōpē, prōpiūs, proximē; diū, diūtiūs, diūtissimē; sœpē, sœpiūs, sœpissimē; sēcūs, sēcīūs.*

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 120. Prepositions express the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative:—

ad, to, towards, at.	contrā, against.	pōnē, behind.
antē, before.	ergā, towards.	post, after, since.
adversūs, } against,	extrā, without, beyond.	prætēr, past, besides.
adversūm, } towards.	infrā, under, beneath.	prōpē, near.
apūd, at, with.	intēr, between, among.	proptēr, on account of.
circā, } around.	intrā, within.	sēcundūm, after, next to
circūm, }	juxtā, next to.	according to.
circit̃er, about, near.	ōb, for, on account of.	suprā, above.
cīs, } on this side.	pēnēs, in the power of.	trans, over, beyond.
citrā, }	pēr, through.	ultrā, beyond.

2. Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative:—

ā,	} from, after, by.	cōrām, in presence of.	pālām, in presence of.
āb,		cūm, with.	præ, before, in comparison
abs,	} out of.	dē, down from, after,	with.
absquē, but for.		concerning.	prō, before, for, instead of.
clām, without the know- ledge of.	ē,	sīnē, without.	
	ex,	tēnūs, up to.	

3. Four prepositions are followed by the accusative, when *motion to a place* is implied; by the ablative, when *rest in a place* is implied:—

īn, in, on; into, upon.

sūpēr, over, above.

sūb, under, near.

sūbtēr, under, beneath.

Remark 1.—*Clām* is sometimes followed by the accusative.

Remark 2.—*Tēnūs* is placed after its case; and *cūm* is annexed to the ablative of the substantive personal and relative pronouns.

Remark 3.—*A* and *ē* are used only before consonants; *āb* and *ex*, before vowels and consonants.

Remark 4.—A preposition without its case is an adverb: *as*, ut *antē* dictū est, *as was said* before.

EXERCISE L.

§ 121. Vocabulary.

*bēnē (adv.), well.

ullūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56), any.

*mālē (adv.), badly, unfortunately.

nēquē (conj.), and — not, neither.

*pārūm (adv.), little.

cultūs, -ūs, civilization.

*māgīs (adv.), more.

hūmānitās, -tāt-īs, refinement.

*longē (adv.), far.

tēlūm, -ī, a dart.

*prōpē (adv.), near.

consiliūm, -ī, wisdom, prudence.

dūbitātiō, -ōn-īs, doubt.

plāc-eō, -ērē, plāc-uī, plācīt-ūm, to please.

dis-plīc-eō, -ērē, displicu-ī, displicīt-ūm, to displease.

fūg-i-ō, fūg-ērē, fūg-ī, fūgīt-ūm, to flee.

comme-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to go back and forth.

dē-sist-ō, -ērē, destīt-ī, destīt-ūm, to cease.

ab-sūm, āb-essē, ab-fuī, ab-fūtūrūs, to be away, distant.

con-jīc-i-ō, con-jīc-ērē, conjēc-ī, conjēc-ūm, to hurl.

Translate into English.

Omniūm quī in Galliā hābitant, fortissimī sunt Belgæ. A cultū atquē hūmānitātē prōvinciæ longissimē absunt. Ad eōs mercātōrēs mīnimē sæpē commeant. Nōn mīnūs fortēs fuērunt Gallī quān Rōmānī. Hōrās (§ 153) sex acritēr utrimquē pugnātūm ērāt (§ 114, 5), nēquē hostēs nostrōrū impētū diūtius sustinērē pōtuērunt. Equitēs Ariōvistī prōpiūs accessērunt, ac lāpidēs tēlāquē in nostrōs conjēcērunt. Ariōvistūs māgis consiliō quān virtūtē Eduōs vīcīt.

Translate into Latin.

Without any doubt virtue is a more excellent thing (*præstantiūs*) than gold. This song displeases me (dative, § 118, 1) more than that (one) pleases me. The Belgians were farther away than the Æduans from the civilization and refinement of the Roman province. Through the whole night the enemy did not cease to flee. The boys came up nearer, and boldly hurled stones and darts upon the fierce wild boar. Which of us can fight without arms? Orgetorix was far the noblest and richest (man) among (*apud*) the Helvetians.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ 122. Most prepositions are used as prefixes, in composition with other words. The following are called *inseparable* prepositions, because they are never found alone:—

ambī, or amb (ambō), around, about.

dī, or dīs, asunder.

rē, or rēd, again, back.

sē, apart, aside.

vē, not.

Remark.—*Cōn*, usually classed among the inseparable prepositions, is only another form of *cūm*.

EXERCISE LI.

Vocabulary.

haud (adv.), <i>not</i> .	Generally used	rēliquūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>remaining</i> .
with adverbs.		Belgæ rēliquī, <i>the rest of the Belgians</i> .
intēr sē, <i>among themselves, with one another, from one another</i> .		āēr, aēr-īs, <i>the air</i> .
Gallīcūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>Gallie</i> .		cōlūm, -ī (pl. -ī), <i>heaven</i> .
phīlōsōphūs, -ī, <i>philosopher</i> .		
jūb-eō, -ērē, juss-ī, juss-ūm, <i>to order</i> .		
con-vēn-iō, -irē, convēn-ī, convent-ūm, <i>to come together</i> .		
con-dūc-ō, -ērē, condux-ī, conduct-ūm, <i>to lead together</i> .		
dif-fēr-ō, differrē, dis-tūl-ī, dī-lāt-ūm, <i>to differ</i> .		
dis-sent-iō, -irē, dissens-ī, dissens-ūm, <i>to differ in opinion, to disagree</i> .		
con-jung-ō, -ērē, conjunx-ī, con-junct-ūm, <i>to join</i> .		
con-jūr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to swear together, conspire</i> .		
sē-cēd-ō, -ērē, sēcēss-ī, sēcēss-ūm, <i>to secede, go apart</i> .		
sē-cern-ō, -ērē, secrēv-ī, secrēt-ūm, <i>to separate</i> .		

Translate into English.

1. Māgistēr hunc puērūm haud mīnūs quā m filiūm suūm
 āmāt. 2. Cēsār omnēs Galliæ principēs ād sē convēnīrē (§
 86, 2) jussīt. 3. Germānī nōn multūm (§ 66, 2) ā Gallīcā
 consuētūdīnē diffērunt. 4. Exercītūs ūnūm īn lōcūm ā lēgātō
 paulātīm condūcēbātūr. 5. Omnēs Belgæ īn armīs sunt,
 Germānīquē, quī cīs Rhēnūm incōlunt, sēsē cūm hīs con-
 junxērunt. 6. Rēmī contrā pōpūlūm Rōmānūm cūm Belgīs
 relīquīs nōn conjūrāvērant. 7. Aēr cōlūm ā terrīs sēcernīt.
 8. Phīlōsōphī dē nātūrā deōrūm intēr sē sempēr dissensē-
 runt.

Translate into Latin.

1. The general ordered the first line (āciēs) to retreat
 to (in) the mountain. 2. The common people frequently

seceded from the nobility.³ The shepherds had separated the sheep from the kids.⁴ The Remians differed in opinion from the rest of the Belgians.⁵ These wicked citizens are conspiring against the republic.⁶ The Germans will not easily break through our line.⁷ The enemy's forces are not far from the town.⁸ A lion differs much from a dog. The lieutenant had been ordered to cross the river.

CONJUNCTIONS. *

§ 123. Conjunctions connect words and sentences. They are commonly divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE, which connect things that are to be considered together—(*and*): they are *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *etiā*, *quodque*, *item*, and *itidē*.

Remark 1.—*Et* connects things which are independent of each other, and of equal importance: as, *M. Pisonē et M. Messalā consūlibūs*. *Et* — *et* is to be translated *both* — *and*: as, *et rex et reginā*, “both the king and the queen.” It sometimes means *also*.

Remark 2.—*Que* (enclitic) introduces a mere appendage, the two constituting but one idea, and is rather adjunctive than copulative: as, *glādīs pilisquē*—(*offensive armor*).

Remark 3.—*Atque* (used before vowels or consonants) contracted into *ac* (used before consonants only) is compounded of *ad* and *que*, and means *and in addition*: it usually introduces something of greater importance: as, *in hostēs impētum fecit atque cōs fugāvit*, “— and routed them too.” *Cognostinē hōs versūs? Ac mēmōritēr*, “— and that, too, by heart.” This peculiar force is often lost in *ac*, and it is used alternately with *et*; it is preferred in subdivisions, the main propositions being connected by *et*. *Difficilē est tantām causām et diligentīā consēquī, et mēmōriā complecti, et orātiōnē exprōmērē et vocē ac viribūs sustinērē*.

Remark 4.—*Nēque* or *nec* (*and not*), compounded of *nē* and *que*, when repeated, is translated *neither* — *nor*. *Et nōn* is used instead when only one word, and not a whole sentence, is to be negated: as, *pātiōr et nōn mōlestē fēro*. *Et nōn* is frequently used also

when *et* precedes. *Nēc nōn, nēquē nōn*, the two negatives destroying each other, is equivalent to *et*, but is used, in classical prose, only to connect sentences, and the two words are separated.

Remark 5.—*Etiām* (*et-jam*) (*also, even*) has a wider meaning than *quōquē*, and adds a new circumstance, while *quōquē* is used when a thing of a similar kind is added.

Remark 6.—The copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted in animated discourse. *Cōpiās suās in proximū collēm subducit, aciem instruit.* This omission is called *asyndeton* (not-tied-together).

Remark 7.—*Itēm* and *itēdem* are derived from *is*, and are properly adverbs; *just so, also*.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE**, which connect things that are to be considered separately (*either, or*): they are *aut, vėl, vė, sīvė, seu*, and the interrogative particle *ān*.

Remark 8.—*Aut* (*either, or*) expresses an essential difference in things, and ordinarily implies that one thing excludes another: as, *aut vivit aut mortuus est*, “he is *either* living *or* dead.” *Aut* and *vė* serve to continue a negation, where in English we use *nor*: as, *Verrēs nōn Hōnōrī aut Virtūtī vōtā dēbēbāt.*

Remark 9.—*Vėl*, on the other hand (akin to *vellē*), indicates a difference of expression merely, and is used where either of two or more things may be taken indifferently. *Conjunctiō tectorū oppidū vėl urbs appellātūr*,—a town *or* city (whichever you please). *Vėl impērātōrē vėl milītē mē ūtīmīnī*, “use me *either* as a commander *or* as a soldier.” When one of the alternatives is omitted, *vėl* often has the sense of *even*. *Volo ūt oppēriārē sex diēs mōdō.*—*Vėl sex mensēs oppēribōr.* “I wish you to wait six days only.”—“I will wait *even* six months,” *i.e.* six days or six months, if you choose. *Vė* is merely *vėl* apocopated.

Remark 10.—*Sīvė, seu* (*or if, whether, or*), is strictly either conditional or interrogative, and when used as a simple disjunctive always implies a doubt, at least in the earlier writers. Thus (Cæsar, *Bell. Gall.*), *Sīvė cāsā, sīvė deōrū immortalīūm prōvidentia.* *Sīvė timōrē perterriti, sīvė spē sālūtis inducti* (“perhaps by one, perhaps by the other,—I do not know by which”).

Remark 11.—*An* (or) is used in double questions, usually after *utrūm* or the enclitic *nē*: as, *utrūm tāceām ān prædicēm?* or, *tāceamnē ān prædicēm?* shall I be silent or speak? But the first part of a double question is often omitted: as, *cūjūm pēcūs est hōc? ān Mēlibœi?* “whose flock is this? (is it somebody else’s or) Melibœus’s?” The later writers use *ān* in indirect questions in the sense of *whether*, without *utrūm* or *nē*; and it is very commonly so used after *nēscio*, *haud scio*, *dūbiūm est*, *dūbito*, *incertūm est*, etc., which may in such cases be translated *perhaps*: as, *contigit tibi quōd haud scio ān nēmīnī*, “there has happened to you what has perhaps happened to no one (else).”

Remark 12.—The enclitic *nē* is sometimes used disjunctively in the latter part of a double question, instead of *ān*: as, *nēquē intēressē ipsosnē interficiant impēdimentisnē exuant*, “and that it makes no difference whether they kill (the Romans) themselves, or strip them of their baggage.”

3. ADVERSATIVE, which express opposition of thought (*but*): they are *sēd*, *autēm*, *vērūm*, *vēro*, *āt* and its compounds, *tāmēn* and its compounds, and *cētērūm*.

Remark 13.—*Sēd* denotes strong and direct opposition, and usually sets aside what precedes. *Vērā dīco, sēd nēquidquām, quōniām nōn vīs crēdērē*, “I speak truth, but to no purpose, since you will not believe me.” *Nōn bestiā, sēd hōmo*, “not a brute, but a man.”

Remark 14.—*Autēm* adds something that is different, without setting aside what precedes (*on the contrary, however, on the other hand, but*). *Gyḡēs ā nullō vidēbātūr; ipsē autēm omniā vidēbāt*, “— he himself, however, saw every thing.” Frequently it simply marks a transition, or adds a more important circumstance (*moreover, furthermore*).

Remark 15.—*Vērūm* (*as to the truth, in fact, but*) is nearly the same in meaning as *sēd*. It is strengthened by *enīm*, *vēro*, *enīm-vēro* (*but indeed, but in fact, but assuredly*).

Remark 16.—*Vēro* (*in truth, assuredly, but, however*) does not express as strong opposition as *vērūm*, just as *autēm* is weaker than *sēd*. *Ubi pēr explorātōrēs Cēsār certiōr factūs est trēs jām*

cōpiārūm partēs Helvētiōs id flūmēn transduxissē, quartām vērō partēm citrā flūmēn, Arārīm rēliquām essē, “— that the fourth part, however,” etc.

Remark 17.—*At* does not, like *sēd*, alter or set aside what precedes, but expresses a contrast, often a strong one. *Brēvis ā nātūrā nobīs vitā datā est, āt mēmōriā bēnē readdītā vitā sempiternā*, “a short life has been given us by nature; but the memory of a well-spent life is eternal.” It frequently follows *sī* in the sense of *at least*; *etsī nōn sāpientissimūs āt amīcissimūs*, though not very wise, *at least* very friendly. It frequently introduces an objection, and *enīm* is then often added to assign a reason for the objection: “*āt sūmūs*,” *inquiunt*, “*civitātis principēs*.”

Remark 18.—*Atquī* admits what precedes, but opposes something else to it. *Magnūm narrās, vix crēdibilē: atquī sic hābēt; “— yet such is the fact.”* It is used in hypothetical syllogisms to introduce the minor premise. *Quodsī virtūtēs sunt pārēs intēr sē, pariā etiām vitiā essē nēcessē est: atquī pārēs essē virtūtēs facīlē pōtest perspīcī*, “now if the virtues are equal to each other, the vices must also be equal; *but* it can easily be seen that the virtues are equal.”

Remark 19.—*Cēlērūm*, literally, “as to the rest,” is frequently used in the sense of *sēd*.

Remark 20.—*Tāmēn* is properly an adverb.

4. CORROBORATIVE, which adduce a proof or a reason (*for*): they are *nām*, *namquē*, *enīm*, and *ētēnīm*.

Remark 21.—*Nām* shows the grounds of a preceding assertion; so, also, *enīm*, except that the assertion must frequently be supplied by the mind. *Enīm* is originally only a corroborative adverb, *truly, certainly, to be sure, indeed*. In *namquē* and *ētēnīm*, *quē* and *et* repeat the preceding assertion, while *nām* and *enīm* introduce the proof.

5. CAUSAL, which express a cause or reason (*for, because*): they are *quīā*, *quōd*, *quōniām*, *quippē*, *quūm*, *quando*, *quandō-quidēm*, *siquidēm*.

Remark 22.—*Quōd* (acc. sing. neut. of *quī*) means originally

with respect to what, in what respect, in that; and hence its causal meaning, *inasmuch as, because*. *Quōd omnis Galliā ad septentrionē vergit, mātāræ sunt hiēmēs*, because Gaul lies towards the north, the winters are early. It is very often preceded by *propterea, hōc, ob hanc causam*, and similar causal expressions.

Remark 23.—*Quōd* is very often used merely to connect a sentence with that which precedes, and may be translated “and” or “but,” especially with *sī, nīsī*, etc. In such cases it is a relative pronoun accusative of limitation (§ 155). *Quōd sī vītērīs contumeliæ obliviscī vellēt*, “but if he were willing to forget the old insult.” *Quōd sī fūrōrē et āmentīā impulsūs bellū intulissēt*, “but if, impelled by rage and madness, he should bring on a war.”

Remark 24.—*Quiā* (acc. pl. neut. of *quī*) has the same origin as *quōd*, but is purely causal (*because*), and never has the sense of *that* or *in that*, like *quōd*. When contrasted with *quōd*, it expresses a real motive or reason, while *quōd* expresses merely an alleged or pretended reason (*nōn quōd* —, *sed quiā*).

Remark 25.—*Quōniām* (*quūm — jā*m) introduces a well-known reason, *since then, since as everybody knows*.

Remark 26.—*Quippē* is originally a corroborative adverb (*indeed*), and hence derives its causal meaning. It is frequently united with relative words to express a subjective reason.

Remark 27.—In *quūm, quandō, quandōquidē*m, the causal idea is derived from that of time (compare the English *since*). *Siquidē*m is conditional originally (though the antepenult has become short). *Antiquissimū ē doctis gēnūs est poetarū*m, *siquidē*m (if, indeed, as every one admits,—since) *Hōmērūs fuit et Hēsiodūs antē Rōmām conditām*.

5. CONCLUSIVE, which express a conclusion or inference (*therefore*): they are *ergō, eō, ideō, idcirco, igitur, itaque, proinde, propterea*, and the relative words *quapropter, quārē, quāmobrēm, quōcircā, undē*.

Remark 28.—*Ergō* and *igitur* express a logical consequence (*therefore*), while *itaque* expresses a natural consequence (*and so*). *Ergō* and *eō* are causal ablatives, and all the other conclusives may be considered adverbial expressions of cause or result, limiting the predicate.

6. FINAL, which express an end aimed at—*purpose*; or an end reached—*result* (*that, in order that*): they are *ūt, nē, quō, quīn, quōmīnūs, nēvē, neu*.

7. CONDITIONAL, which express a condition (*if, unless*): they are *sī, sīn, nīsī* or *nī, dūm, mōdō, dum-mōdō*.

8. CONCESSIVE, which express something granted (*although*): they are *etsī, quanquām, tāmetsī, tāmēnetsī, etiamsī, licēt, quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibēt; ūt* and *quūm* in the sense of *although*.

9. TEMPORAL, expressing time (*when, as soon as, after, before*): they are *quūm, ūt, ūbī, postquām, post-āquām, antēquām, priusquām, quandō, quōtiēs, quamdiū, sīmūlāc, sīmūl, dūm, dōnēc, quoad*.

10. COMPARATIVE, expressing comparison (*than, as*): they are *quām, ūt (as), sīcūt, vėlūt, proūt, tanquām, quāsī, utsī, acsī, ceu*, with *āc* and *atquē* in the sense of *as* or *than*.

Remark 29.—The following conjunctions stand always at the beginning of a sentence, viz.: *ēt, etēnīm, āc, āt, atquē, atquī, nēquē, nēc, aut, vėl, sīvē, sīn, sēd, nām, vērūm*, and the relatives *quārē, quōcircā, quāmobrēm*.

Remark 30.—*Enīm, autēm, and vērō* are placed after the first word, or the second if the first two belong together; rarely after three or more words.

Remark 31.—The other conjunctions usually stand at the beginning, unless some word or expression is especially emphatic and is therefore placed first in the sentence.

Remark 32.—The copulative and disjunctive conjunctions are often repeated when things are emphatically connected:—

ēt — ēt, both — and.

ēt — ēt — ēt, not only — but also — and

nēquē — ēt, both not — and.

ēt — nēquē, both — and not.

něquě — něquě,	}	<i>neither — nor.</i>
něc — něc,		
něquě — něc,		

ět — quě, *both — and*; sometimes used in prose.

quě — quě, *both — and*; frequently used by Sallust and the poets.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 124. Interjections are used to express strong or sudden emotion: as, *væ nōbīs!* woe to us!

SYNTAX.

§ 125. 1. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A proposition is a thought expressed in words: as, *snow melts*. A sentence consists of one proposition, or of several connected together so as to make complete sense.

3. Every proposition consists of—

(a.) A *predicate*; i.e. that which is *declared*.

(b.) A *subject*; i.e. that of which the declaration is made.

4. The predicate consists of a verb alone (as, *melts*, in the above example), or the verb *essě*, *to be*, with a noun, adjective, or participle: as, *nix gělīdā est*, snow is cold.

5. The subject consists of a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking

the question *who?* or *what?* with the predicate: as, *John runs.* (*Who runs? John.*) *To play is pleasant.* (*What is pleasant? To play.*)

6. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have words or sentences limiting its meaning. Thus, *prīmā lūcē, quūm mons ā Tītō Lābiēnō tēnērētūr, idēm Consīdiūs quī cūm explorātōribūs præmissūs ērāt, equō admissō, ād Cæsārēm accurrīt*, at daylight, when the mountain was held by Titus Labienus, the same Considius who had been sent forward with the scouts, runs to Cæsar with his horse at full speed.

Here the leading thought is *Consīdiūs accurrīt*, Considius runs. The subject is limited by the adjective *idēm*, and the adjective sentence *quī* — *præmissūs ērāt*. The predicate is limited by *prīmā lūcē*, designating the point of time when Considius ran; by *quūm mons tēnērētūr*, farther specifying the time or circumstances of the running; by *equō admissō*, participial sentence, expressing the manner of the running,—an adverbial limitation; and by *ād Cæsārēm*, the point to which the running was directed.

7. A sentence consisting of a single subject and a single predicate is commonly called a *simple* sentence; and one which consists of *two or more* simple sentences combined, is commonly called a *compound* sentence.

AGREEMENT.

§ 126. RULE I.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

Remark 1.—If the subject consists of more than one, the verb

is plural: as, *fūrōr irāquē mentēm præcipitant*, fury and rage hurry on my mind. Hence—

(a.) A collective noun *may* have a plural verb: as, *plebs clāmant*.

(b.) A noun connected to an ablative with *cūm* often has a plural verb: as, *Bocchūs cūm pēditibūs postrēmām aciēm invādunt*, Bocchus and the footmen attack the rear.

(c.) A plural verb is sometimes used with *ūterquē* and *quisquē*.

Remark 2.—But the verb often agrees with the nearest nominative, especially when the nouns denote things without life: as, *Mens, enim ēt rātio, ēt consiliūm in sēnībūs est*, for mind, and skill, and wisdom, are in old men.

Remark 3.—If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as, *sī tū ēt Tulliā vālētis. ego ēt Cicēro vālēmūs*, if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

Remark 4.—The verb is frequently omitted when it may be readily supplied. This is especially the case with the verb *essē* with adjectives and participles: as, *quōt hōmīnēs (sunt) tōt (sunt) sententiæ. Cæsār mēmōriā tēnēbāt L. Cassiūm consulēm occisūm (essē) exercitūquē ejūs pulsūm (essē) ēt sūb jūgūm missūm (essē)*, Cæsar remembered that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain, and his army beaten and sent under the yoke.

Remark 5.—The subject is omitted—

(a.) When it can be readily supplied from what precedes: as, *Mūsā profluīt ex montē Vōsēgō ēt in Oceānūm influīt*, the Meuse flows from mount Vosegus and runs into the ocean.

(b.) When it is indefinite: as, *aiunt, fērunt*, they say.

(c.) With impersonal verbs, when it is the cognate notion: as, *pugnātūm est*, (a fight) was fought.

(d.) The pronouns *ego*, *tū*, *nōs*, and *vōs*, are expressed only for the sake of emphasis or contrast, as the ending of the verb sufficiently indicates the subject.

APPOSITION.

§ 127. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

RULE II.—Nouns in apposition agree in case: as, *Jūgurthā rex*, Jugurtha the king.

Remark 1.—A noun in apposition often expresses character, purpose, time, cause, etc.: as, *Cicēro prætōr lēgēm Māniliām suāsīt, consūl conjūrātiōnēm Cātilinæ oppressīt*; Cicero, *when prætōr* (or, *as prætōr*), advocated the Manilian law, *when consul*, suppressed Catiline's conspiracy.

Remark 2.—The personal pronoun is often omitted before a noun in apposition with it: as, *consūl dixī*, I the consul have said.

Remark 3.—A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in the plural: as, *Jūgurthā et Bocchūs, rēgēs*, Jugurtha and Bocchus, kings.

Remark 4.—The ablative is used in apposition with the name of a town in the genitive (see § 166, Exc.): as, *Cōrinthī, Achaiæ urbē*, at Corinth, a city of Achaia.

Remark 5.—A noun may be in apposition with a sentence: as, *cōgitet orātōrēm instituī, —rēm arduām*; let him reflect that an orator is training, —*a difficult thing*.

Remark 6.—PARTITIVE APPPOSITION.—Expressions denoting the *parts* are often placed in apposition with a noun denoting the *whole*: as, *ōnērariæ, pars maximā ad Ægimūrūm, —aliæ adversūs urbem ipsām, dēlātæ sunt*; the transports were carried, the greatest part to Ægimurum, —others, opposite the city itself. *Quisquē* in partitive apposition with a noun is in the nominative: as, *multis sibi quisquē impēriūm pētentibūs*, while many were seeking power, *each for himself*.

Remark 7.—A proper name with *nōmēn* or *cognōmēn* may be—
(a.) In the same case: as, *nōmēn Arctūrūs mihi est*, I have the name Arcturus.

(b.) In the genitive: as, *nōmēn Arctūrī mihi est*.

(c.) By attraction, in the dative, if the verb is followed by a

dative: as, *nōmēn Arctūro mīhi est*, I have the name Arcturus.

Remark 8.—A genitive is sometimes used instead of an apposition: as, *urbs Pātāvī*, the city of Patavium.

Remark 9.—When the apposition has forms of different genders, it agrees in gender with the limited noun: as, *ūsūs, māgister egrēgiūs*, experience, an excellent teacher; *philōsophiā, māgistrā vītā*, philosophy, the mistress of our life. If nouns of different genders are connected, the apposition takes the more worthy gender: as, *Ptōlēmāūs ēt Cleōpatrā rēgēs*, Ptolemy and Cleopatra, sovereigns.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. An adjective may limit a noun: as, *puellā pulchrā saltāt*, the beautiful girl dances; or it may form part of the predicate: as, *puellā pulchrā est*, the girl is beautiful.

RULE III.—(a.) Adjective words agree with the nouns which they limit, in gender, number, and case.

(b.) An adjective word in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Remark 1.—An adjective belonging to two or more nouns is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective is of that gender: as, *lŭpūs ēt agnūs sītī compulsī*, a wolf and a lamb compelled by thirst. When the nouns are of different genders,—

(a.) If they denote animate things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine: as, *pātēr mīhī ēt mātēr mortuī sunt*, my father and mother are dead.

(b.) If they denote inanimate things, the adjective is generally neuter: *irā ēt āvāritiā impēriō pōtentiōrā ērant*, rage and avarice were stronger than government.

(c.) If names of living things and things without life are combined, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of the living being, whichever idea is uppermost.

Nūmīdæ atquē signā mīlitāriā obscurātī sunt, the Numidians and their military standards were concealed. (Here the idea of *persons* is uppermost.) *Inimicā sunt libērā civitās et rex*, a free state and a king are *hostile things*.

Remark 2.—The adjective, however, often agrees with the nearest noun.

Remark 3.—SYNESIS OF THE ADJECTIVE.—An adjective word (especially in the predicate) often agrees with the *sense* of the noun rather than with its form (*constructio ad s̄ynēsīn*): as, *pars in flūmēn actī sunt*, part were driven into the river.

Remark 4.—An adjective word in the predicate, instead of agreeing with the subject, often agrees—

(a.) With a noun in apposition with the subject (especially the words *urbs*, *oppidūm*): as, *Cōrīnthūs, lūmēn Grēcīæ, extinctū est*, Corinth, the light of Greece, was destroyed (*put out*).

(b.) With a predicate noun: as, *gens ūnīversā Vēnētī appellātī*, the whole race were *called* Veneti.

Remark 5.—An adjective without a noun is often used as a noun. Masculine adjectives, when so used, denote persons; neuter adjectives, things: as, *bōnī*, the good; *bōnā*, property, goods. Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: as, *multūm*, much (§ 150, *Rem. 3*); *multō*, by much (§ 168). Such words are rather nouns than adverbs.

Remark 6.—In general expressions, an adjective in the predicate is often neuter: as, *lūpūs tristē est stābulīs*, the wolf is a sad thing to the folds. The adjective is here a noun.

Remark 7.—A possessive pronoun, being equivalent to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, may have an adjective word in the genitive agreeing with it: as, *meā ipsiūs causā*, for my own sake; or a noun in the genitive in apposition with it: as, *tuūs, vīrī fortīs, glādiūs*, the sword of thee, a brave man.

Remark 8.—The adjectives *prīmūs*, *mēdiūs*, *ultimūs*, *extrēmūs*, *intīmūs*, *infīmūs*, *imūs*, *summūs*, *suprēmūs*, *rēliquūs*, and *cētērā*, express the first part, middle part, etc.: as, *summūs mons*, the top of the mountain.

Remark 9.—An adjective often agrees with the subject, but limits the predicate: as, *prōnūs cecidit*, he fell headlong.

RELATIVES.

§ 129. RULE IV.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends upon the construction of the relative sentence: as, *ego quī scribo*, *I who write*; *vōs quī scribitis*, *you who write*; *puellā quā vīdī*, *the girl whom I saw*.

Remark 1.—The antecedent is so called because it usually goes before the relative sentence. But it also stands—

(a.) In the relative sentence, especially when this latter is emphatic: *in quē prīmū egressi sunt lōcū*, *Trōjā vocātūr*, the place upon which *they first disembarked is called Troy*.

(b.) Both in the principal and relative sentence: as, *erant omnīnō itīnērā duō*, *quibūs itīnērībūs dōmō exīrē possent*, there were only two routes, by which routes they could go out from home.

Remark 2.—The antecedent, especially when indefinite, is often omitted: as, *quī bēnē vivit*, *beātē vivit*.

Remark 3.—ATTRACTION.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent: as, *ejūs gēnērīs cūjūs dēmonstrāvimūs*, of that kind which we have shown. The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative: as, *urbēm quā stātūō vestrā est*, the city which I am building is yours.

Remark 4.—The relative often agrees with a noun in apposition with the antecedent: as, *flūmēn Rhēnūs*, *quī agrū Helvētiūm ā Germānīs dividit*, the river Rhine, which separates the Helvetian territory from the Germans.

Remark 5.—A relative or demonstrative usually agrees with a predicate noun after the verb *essē* or a verb of *naming*, *esteeming*, etc., instead of agreeing with the antecedent: as, *Thēbæ*, *quōd Bæōtiæ cāpūt est*, Thebes, which is the capital of Bæotia. *Animāl quēm vocāmūs hōmīnē*, the animal which we call man.

But if the predicate noun is a foreign word, the relative agrees with the antecedent: as, *gēnūs hōmīnū quōd Hēlōtēs vocātūr*, the race of men which is called Helots.

Remark 6.—A numeral, comparative, or superlative, which in English limits the antecedent, is usually placed in the relative sentence: as, *noctē quā in terris ultimā ēgit*, on the last night which he spent on earth. Other adjectives have sometimes a similar position: as, *int̄r jōcōs quōs inconditōs jāciunt*, among the rude jokes which they utter.

Remark 7.—SYNESIS OF THE RELATIVE.—The relative often agrees with the sense of the antecedent, instead of its form: as, *Cæsār ēquitātūm prēmittit quī videant*, Cæsar sends forward the horse to see; etc.

Remark 8.—An explanatory noun is often introduced into the relative sentence: as, *antē cōmitiā, quōd tempūs haud longē āberāt*, before the election, which time was not far distant.

Remark 9.—*Quī* at the beginning of a sentence is often translated like a demonstrative: as, *quibūs rēbūs cognītis*, these things being found out. Here also observe the idiomatic expression *quæ est temp̄rantiā*, or *quā ēs temp̄rantiā* (ablative of quality), instead of *prō tuā temp̄rantiā*: as, *tū, quæ est temp̄rantiā, jā m̄ vālēs*, you, such is your temperance, are already well.

Remark 10.—The adverbial is often used for the adjectival relative: as, *locūs undē vēnit*, the place from which he came.

THE CASES. THE NOMINATIVE.

§ 130. 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, and is called the *subject nominative*.

2. A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, after a verb expressing an incomplete idea, is in the nominative, and is called the *predicate nominative*: as, *Caiūs ēt Lūciūs fratrēs fuērunt*.

3. A predicate nominative is used with verbs denoting, *to be*, *to become*, *to appear*, *to be named*, *to be called*, *to be esteemed*, etc.

Remark 1.—The verb sometimes agrees with the predicate nominative: as, *āmantiūm iræ amōris integratio est*, the quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love.

Remark 2.—If the subject is in the accusative, the predicate noun must be in the accusative also: as, *dicīt Cæsārēm essē rēgēm*, he says that *Cæsar* is a *king*.

Remark 3.—When the subject of the infinitive is omitted, a predicate noun or adjective is often put in the dative, if a dative precedes: as, *nēmīnī mēdiō essē licēt*, no man may be *neutral*.

THE GENITIVE.

§ 131. The genitive case expresses the precise limit within which the meaning of a word is to be taken.

Thus, in the expression *āmōr glōriæ*, the genitive, *glōriæ*, expresses the limit within which the meaning of *āmōr* is restricted.

RULE V.—A noun in the genitive limits the meaning of another noun denoting a different thing: as, *Cicērōnīs ōrātiōnēs*, Cicero's orations: *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

Remark 1.—The genitive is said to be *subjective* when it expresses that which does something, or to which something pertains or belongs: as, *Cicērōnīs ōrātiōnēs*, Cicero's orations. It is *objective* when it expresses the object to which an action or feeling is directed: as, *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

Remark 2.—A noun may be limited both by a subjective and an objective genitive: as, *Cæsārīs āmōr glōriæ*, Cæsar's love of glory.

Remark 3.—Instead of an objective genitive, a preposition with its case is often used to avoid ambiguity: as, *āmōr in rempublicām*, or *ergā rempublicām*, love towards the state.

Remark 4.—The genitive of a substantive pronoun is usually objective: as, *cūrā meī*, care for me;—while possessive adjectives and pronouns usually express subjective relations: as, *cūrā meā*, my care; *causā regiā*, the king's cause. But the latter are sometimes objective: as, *meā injuriā*, injury done to me; *mētūs hostilīs*, fear of the enemy.

§ 132. RULE VI.—*Genitive of Quality*.—The genitive, limited by an adjective agreeing with it, is used to express the quality of a thing: as, *vīr magnæ virtūtis*, a man of great valor.

The ablative is used in the same way.

Remark 1.—This genitive may limit a noun, or form part of the predicate, like an adjective: as, *maximī animī fuit*, he was very brave.

Remark 2.—Here belong such expressions as *libertātis conservandæ est*, it has a tendency to preserve liberty.

Remark 3.—*Sēcūs, gēnūs, librām, and librās* are sometimes put in the accusative instead of the genitive, to express a quality: as, *ōrātiōnēs aut āliquīd id gēnūs*, instead of *ējūs gēnērīs*.

§ 133. RULE VII.—*Genitive of Property*.—The genitive, the limited noun being omitted, is used with the verb *essē* to denote that to which something belongs, or to which something is peculiar: as, *hæc dōmūs Marcī est*, this house is *Mark's* (house). *Paupěrīs est nūmērārē pęcūs*, it is characteristic of a poor man to count his flock.

Remark 1.—Instead of the genitives *meī, tuī, suī*, etc., the neuter possessives *meūm, tuūm, suūm*, etc., are used: as, *tuūm est vīdērē quīd āgātūr*, it is your business to see what is going on. A possessive adjective may be used in the same way: as, *hūmānūm est errārē*, it is human, i.e. characteristic of man, to err.

§ 134. RULE VIII.—*Partitive Genitive*.—With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole: as, *ūnūs mīlitūm*, one of the soldiers.

This genitive is used with nouns expressing a part; with adjectives, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals; with many pronouns; and with adverbs of time, place, and quantity.

Remark 1.—The partitive word, if an adjective, usually agrees in gender with the genitive; but adjectives of quantity are used as nouns in the neuter: as, *quid novī?* what news? *tantum aurī*, so much gold.

Remark 2.—Instead of a genitive, the prepositions *ex*, *dē*, and sometimes *in*, *intēr*, are used: as, *quidā ex militibūs*, *intēr omnēs fortissimūs*.

Remark 3.—Here may be noticed a peculiar use of the genitives *locī*, *locōrū*, and *tempōris* with *id*, *adhūc*, *postea*, etc.: as, *ad id locōrū*, up to that time; *postea locī*, afterwards.

Remark 4.—The genitive with *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē* is subjective, these words being ablatives of the adjectives *prīs* or *prūs* and *postērūs*, with *diē*. *Postrīdiē ejūs diēi*, on that day's successor, on the next day.

§ 135. RULE IX.—*Objective Genitive with Adjectives and Verbs.*—The genitive is used to express the object to which an action or feeling is directed, with—

(a.) Adjectives expressing *desire*, *experience*, *knowledge*, *capacity*, *participation*, *fulness*, *memory*, *care*, *certainty*, *fear*, *guilt*, and their contraries: as, *āvidūs laudīs*, desirous of praise.

Here also belong participial adjectives in *ns*; *āmāns pēcūniæ*.

(b.) Verbs of remembering, reminding, and forgetting: *rēcordōr*, *mēmīnī*, *rēmīniscōr*, *oblīviscōr*, *mōneo* and its compounds: as,

Mēmīnī bēnēficiī tuī (= *mēmōr sūm*, etc.), I remember your kindness.

Tē officiī mōneō (= *mēmōrēm faciō*), I remind you of your duty.

The thing remembered or forgotten is also put in the accusative.

(c.) Verbs expressing pity, shame, etc.,—*mīsereōr*, *mīseresco*, and the impersonals *mīsērēt*, *pœnitēt*, *pūdet*, *pīgēt*, *tædēt*: as, *mīseresco infēliciūm*, I pity the unfortunate; *pœnitēt mē peccāti*, I repent of my sin.

Remark 1.—With these impersonals the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

Remark 2.—The cause or object of the feeling may be expressed by an infinitive or a sentence: as, *pœnitēt mē peccāvissē* or *quōd peccāvī*, I repent of having sinned.

(d.) Verbs of plenty or want (sometimes): as, *ēgēt* (= *ēgens est*) *argentī*, he is in need of silver.

(e.) The impersonals *rēfert* and *intērest*: as, *rēipublīcæ intērest*, it is of importance to the state.

Remark 3.—Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the forms *meū*, *tuū*, *suū*, *nostrū*, *vestrū*, are used with *rēfert* and *intērest*; as, *nōn tuū intērest*, it is not your business.

NOTE.—Grammarians are divided as to the origin of this expression, some regarding the pronoun as an ablative; others, as accusative plural neuter; while others, with better reason, consider it an accusative (*m* being cut off, and *a* lengthened for compensation), agreeing with *rēm* (understood with *intērest* and forming the first part of *rēfert*), thus:

meū intērest = *intēr meām rēm est*.

meū rē-fert = *meām rēm fert*.

Remark 4.—The thing with reference to which any thing is important may be expressed by the accusative with *ad*; the degree of importance, by the genitives *magnī*, *parvī*, etc. (see Rule XI.), or by an adverb; while the subject may be an infinitive, a neuter pronoun, or a noun-clause: as, *hōc ad laudēm civitātis magnī intērest*, this is of great importance to the glory of the state.

Remark 5.—*Simīlis* and its compounds, especially with the names of living beings, take a genitive (see § 142, *Remark 3*): as, *simīlis patrīs*, like his father.

Remark 6.—The poets use an objective genitive with a great variety of expressions; as, *divēs opūm*, rich in resources; *fīdens ānimī*, confident in mind.

§ 136. RULE X.—*Genitive of Crime.*—With verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, etc., the genitive expresses the crime or offence charged: as, *servūm furtī accūsāt*, he accuses the slave of theft.

Remark 1.—With some of these verbs the ablative, with or without *dē*, is used to express the crime: as, *āliquām dē vī accūsārē*, to accuse one of violence.

Remark 2.—With *damno* and *condemno* the penalty is expressed by the genitive, but oftener by the ablative, especially when it consists of money or land: as, *damnātūr cāpītis* or *cāpītē*, he is condemned to death. *Tertiā partē agrī damnātūr*, he is fined a third of his land.

§ 137. RULE XI.—*Genitive of Price.*—The genitive is used to express the price or value of a thing indefinitely: as, *magnī aestimābāt pēcūniām*, he esteemed money highly.

In this manner are used the genitive of adjectives, and the genitives *assīs*, *flocē*, etc.; also *pensī* and *hūjūs*. This genitive is originally a genitive of quality, agreeing with *prētū* understood: (*rēm*) *magnī (prētū) aestimābāt pēcūniām*, he esteemed money a thing of great value.

Remark 1.—To this rule may be referred the expression *aequē* or *bōnī faciō* or *consūlo*, I take in good part, I am satisfied with.

Remark 2.—With *aestimo*, and verbs of buying and selling, the ablatives *magnō*, *permagnō*, *plūrīmō*, *parvō*, *mīnīmō*, and *nīhīlō*, are often used.

For the genitive of place, see § 166, Exc.

For the genitive with *opūs*, and *ūsūs*, see § 160, Rem. 1.

EXERCISE LII.

§ 138. Vocabulary.

patriā, -æ, country, native land.
sōlūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56), only, alone.
peccātūm, -ī, sin, fault.
philōsōphūs, -ī, philosopher.
ultīmūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 74, 1), last.
impēriūm, -ī, power, command.
cāsūs, -ūs, chance.

Cingētōrix, *Cingētōrigīs*, *Cingetorix*.
prudentiā, -æ, prudence.
Hannībāl, -bāl-īs, *Hannibal*.
ōdiūm, -ī, hatred.
autōritās, -tāt-īs, authority.
ādōlescens, -cent-īs, young man.
carcēr, *carcēr-īs*, prison.

arx, arc-īs, *citadel*.

dulcīs, -ē, *sweet*.

dēcōrūs, -ā, -ūm, *honorable*.

turbīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *muddy, troubled*.

āmicītiā, -æ, *friendship*.

Oxūs, -ī, *Oxus (river)*.

Tullianūm, -ī, *Tullian (a dungeon built by King Servius Tullius)*.

spectāt-ūs, -ā, -ūm (spect-ārē), *ap-proved*.

fortītūdō, -īn-īs, *courage*.

fīdēs, -ei, *faith, promise*.

corrīg-ō, -ērē, correx-ī, correct-ūm, *to correct*.

ā-mitt-ō, -ērē, amīs-ī, amiss-ūm, *to lose*.

āg-ō, -ērē, ēg-ī, act-ūm, *to lead, drive; (of time,) to spend*.

mōr-iōr, mōr-irī and mōr-ī, mortuūs, mōrītūrūs, *to die*.

sīn-ō, -ērē, sīv-ī, sīt-ūm, *to place*.

appell-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to call*.

per-dūc-ō, -ērē, perdux-ī, perduct-ūm, *to extend*.

īn-flu-ō, -ērē, influx-ī, influx-ūm, *to flow into*.

rē-vēr-eōr, -ērī, rēvērītūs, *to respect, revere*.

EXAMPLES.

Stultī est (§ 133),

Adōlescentīs est (§ 133),

Meūm est,

Tuā ipsiūs (§ 128, *Rem. 7*) causā,

Cūjusvis hōmīnīs est,

Noctē quām ultimām (§ 129, *Rem.*

6) ēgīt,

It is *characteristic* of a fool.

It is *the duty* of a young man.

It is my *duty*.

For *your own* sake.

It is every man's *duty*.

On the *last* night which he spent.

Translate into English.

Sōliūs¹ meūm peccātūm corrīgī nōn pōtest. Philōsōphūs, noctē quām ultimām² īn terrīs ēgīt, āmicōs omnēs convōcāvīt. Helvētīi oppīdūm quōd optīmūm² hābēbant amīsērant. Cātōnīs pātēr ēt mātēr mortuī³ sunt. Regnā, impēriā, hōnōrēs, dīvitiāe, īn Deī mānībūs sītā sunt. Fīliūs Alexandrī cūm matrē īn arcēm missī⁴ ērant. Dulcē ēt dēcōrūm est prō patriā mōrī. Amīcītiā bōnūm⁵ est. Ad flūmēn Oxūm perventūm est,⁶ quī⁷ turbīdūs sempēr est.

¹ § 128, *Rem. 7*.

² § 129, *Rem. 6*.

³ § 128, *Rem. 1 (a)*.

⁴ § 126, *Rem. 1 (b)*.

⁵ § 128, *Rem. 6*.

⁶ § 114, 5.

⁷ § 129, *Rem. 4*.

Ad locum in carcere quod¹ Tullianum vocatur perventum est. Animam qui² homo vocatur, sine legibus beatus esse non potest. Cingetorix, qui a senatu rex atque amicus appellatus erat, summæ auctoritatis³ apud Gallos fuit. Hannibal is odium erga Romanos⁴ atrocissimum fuit. Cæsar a lacu Lemanno ad flumen Rhenum, fossam quindecim pedum⁵ perduxit. Adolescentis⁶ est parentes suos amare ac revereri. Cuiusvis hominis⁶ est virum spectatae fortitudinis revereri. Stulti⁶ est de se ipso predicare. Non meum⁷ est nuncios ad consulem mittere.

Translate into Latin.

Your father corrects your faults for *your own* sake. On the last day which the consul spent in the winter quarters, he called together the centurions of the seventh legion. It is the general's duty to conquer the enemies of the republic. On the next (*postero*) day they reached (*it was come to*) the river Rhone, which flows into our sea. Rome, which is the capital (*head*) of Italy, was taken by the Gauls. Is not a friend a good *thing*? Fabius was a man of the greatest prudence. A general of the greatest (*summus*) valor does not always lead his army to victory. It is the *duty* of children to respect their parents, and of parents to love their own children and correct their (*eorum*) faults.

EXERCISE LIH.

§ 139. *Vocabulary.*

avarus, -a, -um, *covetous*.

avidus, -a, -um, *eager, desirous*.

ferox, ferox-is, *productive*.

propositum, -i, *purpose*.

consciens, -a, -um, *conscious*.

veritas, -tat-is, *truth*.

¹ § 129, *Rem. 5*.

⁴ § 131, *Rem. 3*.

⁷ § 133, *Rem. 1*.

² § 129, *Rem. 5*.

⁵ § 132.

³ § 132, *Rem. 1*.

⁶ § 133.

āmans, āmant-īs, *fond.*

expers, expert-īs, *destitute.*

impēritūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant.*

mēmōr, mēmōr-īs, *mindful.*

immēmōr, -ōr-īs, *unmindful.*

insuētūs, -ā, -ūm, *unaccustomed.*

impōtens, -ent-īs, *unable to control.*

tantūs-dēm, -ā-dēm, -un-dēm, *just so much.*

prōditiō, -ōn-īs, *treachery.*

lēgestās, -tāt-īs, *poverty.*

cūpīditās, -tāt-īs, *desire, lust.*

officiūm, -ī, *duty.*

floccūs, -ī, *lock of wool (something of small value).*

mīsēr-ēt, mīsēru-īt (impers.), *it pities.*

pōenīt-ēt, pōenītu-īt (impers.), *it repents.*

pīg-ēt, pīgu-īt or pīgīt-ūm est (impers.), *it troubles, disgusts.*

tād-ēt, tādu-īt or tās-ūm est (impers.), *it wears.*

pūd-ēt, pūdu-īt or pūdīt-ūm est (impers.), *it shames.*

vend-ō, -ērē, vendīd-ī, vendīt-ūm, *to sell.*

ēm-ō, -ērē, ēm-ī, empt-ūm, *to buy.*

mōn-eō, -ērē, mōnu-ī, mōnīt-ūm, *to warn.*

ad-mōn-eō, -ērē, -u-ī, -īt-ūm, *to remind.*

mēmīnī (§ 113, Remark 1), *I remember.*

rē-fert, rē-fēr-ēbāt, rē-tūl-īt (impers.), *it concerns.*

intēr-est, intēr-ērāt, inter-fuīt, *it is of importance, it interests.*

ac-cūs-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to bring to trial, accuse.*

ab-solv-ō, -ērē, absolv-ī, absōlūt-ūm, *to acquit.*

con-demn-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to condemn.*

āstīm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to value, esteem.*

fāc-i-ō, -ērē, fēc-ī, fact-ūm (§ 107, Remark 1), *to do, to make.*

oblīvisce-or, -ī, oblītūs, *to forget.*

opprim-ō, -ērē, oppress-ī, oppress-ūm, *to suppress.*

EXAMPLES

(a.) Pātiens lābōrēm,

Enduring labor.—Participle.

(b.) Pātiens lābōrīs,

Capable of enduring labor.—Participial.

(a.) *The participle expresses a single action at the time spoken of.*

(b.) *The participial expresses capability at any time.*

Mīsērēt mē tuī,

I pity you. (It pities me of you.)

Mē rēgis mīsēruīt,

I pitied the king.

Pōenītēt puērūm stultitiā,

The boy repents of his folly.

Pūdēt mē scēlērīs,

I am ashamed of my wickedness.

Pīgēt tē vitā,

You are disgusted with life.

Cāpītīs or rei cāpītālīs accūsārē,

To accuse of a capital crime.

Cāpītīs or cāpītē condemnārē,

To condemn to death.

Flocci nōn fācīt,
Meā rēfert,
Quantī hōc fācīs?

*He cares not a straw—a rush, etc.
It is my business.
How much do you value this?*

Translate into English.

In hōc ōrātōrē plūs ēlōquentiæ¹ est quām fortitūdīnis. Rēgis frātēr āvidūs est glōriæ,² pātiens lābōris,² sēd impōtens iræ,² vēritātis² expers, rērū² impēritūs, atquē multōrūm scēlērū² consciūs. Quantī³ quisquē sē ipsē⁴ fācīt, tantī³ fīt āb āmicīs. Mercātōrēs nōn tantīdēm³ vendunt, quantī³ ēmērunt. Fūrēs vēritatēm nōn flocci³ fāciunt. Bōnī omnēs vīrtutēm magnī³ aestīmant. Quantī³ istōs ēquōs ēmistī? Hunc latrōnēm scēlērīs⁵ suī nēquē pūdēt, nēquē pōnitēt. Mē cīvītātis mōrū⁵ tādēt pīgetquē. Cīvīs quī rei cāpītālīs⁶ accūsātūs est, tertiā partē⁷ āgrī condemnātūs est. Puērōs stultitiæ⁵ pōnitēbīt. Cātīlīnā āliūm (*one man*) ēgestātīs,⁸ āliūm (*another*) cūpīditātīs⁸ admōnēbāt. Tuā ipsiūs causā tē officiī mōneō. Cīcērōnis⁹ magnī³ intērest conjūratiōnēm Cātīlīnæ opprīmērē. Nōn meā¹⁰ sēd rēgis rēfert fūrēs latrōnesquē pūnīrē.

Translate into Latin.

The general is desirous of money, but more desirous of praise. The farmer's fields are very productive of corn. The consul is fond of war and tenacious (*tēnax*) of his purpose, but ignorant of business (*rērūm*) and destitute of truth. Lucius remembers a kindness and (*nēquē*) does not forget an injury. The soldiers who were accused of treachery have been condemned to death. Those who (§ 129, *Rem. 2*) are unaccustomed to navigation (§ 135) fear the sea. The

¹ § 134, *Rem. 1.*

² § 135 (*a*).

³ § 137.

⁴ § 85.

⁵ § 135 (*c*).

⁶ § 136.

⁷ § 136, *Rem. 2.*

⁸ § 135 (*b*).

⁹ § 135 (*e*).

¹⁰ § 135, *Rem. 3.*

king cares not a straw for the laws of the state. ⁸ It is of great importance to us to lead the army into the enemy's country (*fīnēs*). ⁹ For how much did you sell your horse? For the same (*tantīdēm*) for which (*for how much*) I bought (him). ¹⁰ Do you remember the speech of the excellent orator? ¹¹ The scouts had not warned the general of the danger. ¹² The tribune has been acquitted of treachery. Do you pity me?

THE DATIVE.

§ 140. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to which*, any thing is, or is done.

§ 141. RULE XII.—*Dative of Indirect Object*.—The indirect object of a verb is in the dative: as, *servūs dōmīnō mēdicīnām pārāt*, the slave prepares medicine *for his master*.


The *indirect object* of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends*, without necessarily *reaching* it.

NOTE.—This dative is used with most verbs, especially with verbs compounded with *ād*, *antē*, *cōn*, *īn*, *intēr*, *ōb*, *post*, *præ*, *prō*, *sūb*, *sūpēr*.

Remark 1.—Transitive verbs have also a direct object in the accusative.

§ 142. RULE XIII.—*Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.—The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage any thing is, or is done: as, *insīdiīs aptūs*, suitable *for ambush*; *servūs dōmīnō fīdūs*, a servant faithful *to his master*.

NOTE.—This dative is used with nouns and adjectives expressing *goodness, usefulness, fitness*, etc.; with verbs meaning *to favor, please, trust, obey, threaten, be angry*, and their contraries; and with some adverbs and interjections.

 For the dative with verbs of *taking away*, see § 163, *Rem. 3*.

Remark 1.—The verbs *jūvo*, *dēlecto*, *lædo*, *offendo*, are transitive, and have a direct object in the accusative. *Fīdo* and *confīdo* are often followed by a causal ablative, instead of a dative.

Remark 2.—Many adjectives take an accusative with a preposition, instead of a dative: as, *servūs* in *dōmīnūm fidēlis*; *locūs* *ad insīdiās aptūs*.

Remark 3.—*Dative of Reference.*—The dative expresses the person or thing *to* or *with* reference to which any thing is *clear*, *equal*, *like*, *unlike*, *near*, etc.: as, *simīlis patrī*, like his father; *pār fratrī*, equal to his brother.

Remark 4.—*Prōpiōr* and *proximūs* are sometimes limited by an accusative, with or without *ad*.

§ 143. RULE XIV.—*Dative of Possession.*—The dative is used with *essē* to express the person who has or possesses something, the thing possessed being the subject: as, *est mīhi libēr*, (*a book is to me*) I have a book; *sunt tibi libri*, thou hast books; *sunt Caiō librī*, Caius has books; *est nobīs libēr*, we have a book.

Remark 1.—The *possessor* is expressed by the *dative* when the idea of *possession* is chiefly referred to: as, *Cæsārī dōmūs est*, Cæsar has a house;—by the *genitive*, when the *possessor*, or *thing possessed*, is referred to, rather than the fact of possession: as, *hæc dōmūs Cæsāris est*, *illā Cicerōnis*, this house is Cæsar's, that one is Cicero's.

§ 144. RULE XV.—*Dative of Purpose or End.*—The dative is used with *essē*, and verbs of *giving*, *coming*, *sending*, *imputing*, and some others, to express the purpose of the action: as, *hæc mīhi curæ sunt*, these things are for a care to me, or, I have these things for a care.

NOTE.—These verbs may have a personal object in the dative, and, if transitive, a direct object in the accusative: as, *collēgæ*

vēnit auxiliō, he came for an aid to his colleague (i.e. to his colleague's assistance); *mīhī librūm dōnō dedit*, he gave me the book for a gift.

Remark 1.—The verbs most commonly using two datives are *essē*, *fiērī*, *dārē*, *dūcērē*, *hābērē*, *mittērē*, *rēlinquērē*, *tribuērē*, *vērērē*, *vertērē*.

Remark 2.—The purpose may be expressed by a predicate nominative, or an apposition (see § 127, *Rem. 1*): as, *mīhi cōmēs Lūciūs est*, I have Lucius for a companion; *cōrōnām Jōvī dōnūm mittunt*, they send a crown to Jupiter, as a present.

§ 145. *RULE XVI.—Dative of the Agent.*—With the gerundive in *dūs* the dative expresses the *agent* or *doer*: as, *adhībendā est nōbīs dīlīgentiā*, diligence must be used by us.

Remark 1.—The poets sometimes use this dative with any of the passive forms: as, *nēquē cernītūr ullī*, nor is he seen by any one. But with prose writers it is rarely used with any other part of the verb than the gerundive, and occasionally with the perfect passive participle.

Remark 2.—Instead of the dative, the ablative with *ā* or *āb* is sometimes, though rarely, used with the gerundive.

§ 146. *Dātīvūs Ethīcūs.*—The dative of the personal pronouns is used sometimes to express strong feeling, and can scarcely be rendered into English: as, *ān illē mīhi libēr cū mūliēr impērāt?* is he free whom a woman rules?

Remark.—Here may be noticed the use of the participles *vōlens*, *cūpiens*, etc. with a dative, in imitation of the Greek: as, *nēquē plēbī mīlitiā vōlentī (essē) pūtābātūr*, neither was the war thought to be agreeable to the common people (literally, to the common people wishing it).

§ 147. The dative is sometimes used almost like a genitive, but always with the idea of advantage, disadvantage, or reference: as, *cū corpūs porrīgītūr*

(compare the English), his body is stretched out for him.

EXERCISE. LIV.

§ 148. *Vocabulary.*

sīmīlis, -ē, *like*.

proximūs, -ā, -ūm, *nearest, next*.

aptūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, suitable*.

æquūs, -ā, -ūm, *just*.

blandūs, -ā, -ūm, *flattering*.

ūtilīs, -ē, *useful*.

cārūs, -ā, -ūm, *dear*.

ingrātūs, -ā, -ūm, *disagreeable*.

fācilīs, -ē, *easy*.

per-fācilīs, -ē, *very easy*.

noxīūs, -ā, -ūm, *hurtful*.

ignōtūs, -ā, -ūm, *unknown*.

impēdimentūm, -ī, *hindrance*.

dēdēcūs, -ōr-īs, *disgrace*.

ūsūs, -ūs, *use, advantage*.

impiētās, -tāt-īs, *undutifulness*.

Nūmantinūs, -ī, *Numantian*.

vēhementēr (adv.), *extremely*.

commōdūm, -ī, *convenience, advantage*.

inquām (§ 113, 4), *I say*.

innōcentiā, -æ, *innocence, integrity*.

fāv-eō, -ērē, *fāv-ī*, *faut-ūm*, *to favor*.

st-ō, *stārē*, *stēt-ī*, *stāt-ūm*, *to stand*.

parc-ō, -ērē, *pēperc-ī* and *pars-ī*, *parcīt-ūm* and *pars-ūm*, *to spare, to be merciful*.

prō-sūm, *prōd-essē*, *prō-fuī*, *prō-fūtūrūs* (§ 111, 12), *to do good*.

præ-fic-i-ō, *præfic-ērē*, *præfēc-ī*, *præfect-ūm*, *to put over*.

circum-dō, *circumdārē*, *circumdēd-ī*, *circumdāt-ūm*, *to put around, to surround*.

circum-fund-ō, -ērē, *-fūd-ī*, *-fūs-ūm*, *to pour around, to surround*.

mālē-dic-ō, -ērē, *-dix-ī*, *-dict-ūm*, *to be abusive*.

prætēr-eō, -irē, *prætēriv-ī* and *prætēri-ī*, *prætēr-ītūm* (§ 111, 9), *to pass by*.

EXAMPLES.

Audiens dictō (§ 142), *Obedient (attentive to the word)*.

Mihī magnō est dōlōrī (§ 144), *It is (for) a great grief to me*.

Hibernīs Lābiēnūm præfēcīt, *He put Labienus over the winter quarters*.

Rēgībūs (§ 143) *mānūs sunt longæ*, *Kings have long arms (hands)*.

Dīi omnībūs cōlendī sunt, *The gods ought to be worshipped by all*.

Urbēm mūrō (§ 159) *circumdārē*,
Urbī (§ 141) *mūrūm circumdārē*, } *To surround the city with a wall.*

Terrās mārī (§ 159) *circumfundērē*,
Terrīs (§ 141) *mārē circumfundērē*, } *To surround the land with sea.*

Aptūs insidiīs (§ 142 and *Rem. 2*) or ad insidiās, *Suitable for ambush.*

Sīmīlis patrīs, *Like his father* (in character). (§ 135, *Rem. 5*).

Sīmīlis patrī, *Like his father* (outwardly). (§ 142, *Rem. 3*.)

Mētuō patrēm, *I fear my father.*

Mētuō patrī (§ 142), *I fear for my father, i.e. for his safety.*

Sēnātūm consūlō, *I consult the senate, i.e. take its advice.*

Senātuī (§ 142) consūlō, *I consult for the senate, i.e. provide for its safety.*

Translate into English.

Helvētīi proximī Germānīs¹ incōlunt, quibuscūm continentēr bellūm gērunt. Lōcā proximā Carthāginēm² Nūmīdiā appellātūr.³ In lōcō insidiīs aptō, duās lēgiōnēs collōcāvīt. Nonnē lūpūs est cānī sīmīlis? Ferrūm hōmīnībūs⁴ ūtīliūs est quām aurūm. Jūgurthā nostrīs⁵ vēhementēr cārūs, Nūmantīnīs⁶ maxīmō terrōrī⁷ fuīt. Cuīvis⁵ faciļē est amīcīs suīs⁴ fāvērē. Ventūs noxiūm⁸ ēst arbōribūs. Lēgātūs cōhortēs duās præsīdiō⁷ castrīs⁹ rēliquit. Milītēs impērātōrī⁹ audientēs dictō nōn ērunt. Milītēs nōn mūliērībūs,⁴ nōn infantībūs⁴ pēpercērunt. Nēmīnī licet suī commōdī causā altērī⁴ nōcērē. Cēsār lēgiōnībūs,⁹ quās in prōvinciā conscripsērāt, Lābiēnūm prāfēcīt. Deūs tōtī orbī terrārūm mārē circumfūdīt. Cēsār oppidūm vallō fossāquē circumdēdīt. Grāviā ōnērā equitībūs⁶ magnō sunt impēdīmentō.⁷ Innōcentiā¹⁰ sēpē plūs pērīcūlī¹¹ est quām hōnōrīs.¹¹ Hēc mīhī¹² prætēreundā nōn sunt. Hādūs, in dōmūs tectō stans, lūpō⁴ prætēreuntī mālēdixīt. Cuī lūpūs, “Nōn tū,” inquit, “sēd lōcūs mīhī⁴ mālēdīcīt.” Sēnātūs ā consūlē dē fōdērē cōnsultūs est. Dictātōr reīpublicæ consūluit. Nonnē lībērīs tuis mētuis?

¹ § 142, *Rem. 3.*

² § 142, *Rem. 4.*

³ § 130, *Rem. 1.*

⁴ § 142.

⁵ § 142, *Rem. 3.*

⁶ § 143 or § 142.

⁷ § 144.

⁸ § 128, *Rem. 6.*

⁹ § 141.

¹⁰ § 143.

¹¹ § 134.

¹² § 145.

Translate into Latin.

The number of the enemy was unknown to the general. The undutifulness of children is a great grief to (their) parents.³ The thick woods were a very great advantage (§ 144) to our skirmishers.⁴ It is sweet and honorable to do good to the commonwealth.⁵ Children are not always like their parents.⁶ It was very easy for our men to cross the river.⁷ The consul's speech was very disagreeable to the Gauls.⁸ The snares of the enemy have been (for) a very great hindrance to our cavalry.⁹ God ought to be worshipped by all men.¹⁰ The causes of this rebellion ought not to be passed over by me.¹¹ It is the greatest disgrace (§ 144) to a soldier to leave his place in battle.¹² The Roman people gave to the king for a gift the fields which he had conquered.¹³ Nature had surrounded the town with a broad and deep river.¹⁴ It is lawful for no man to lead an army against his country. Be kind and just to all, but flattering to none.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 149. The accusative case marks the *direct object* of an action, *i.e.* the thing actually reached by the action; also the limit of space or time which an action or motion reaches.

§ 150. RULE XVII.—*Direct Object*.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Remark 1.—Cognate Accusative.—An intransitive verb, though it does not require an object to complete its meaning, may be limited by an accusative of *similar* or *kindred* signification: as, *currĕre cursū*, to run a race; *vivĕre vitā*, to live a life.

Remark 2.—Equivalent Accusative.—Instead of the cognate noun, a noun or noun-sentence equivalent to it in meaning may be used: as, *dōcĕre grammaticā*, to teach grammar; *interro-*

gāvīt quis vēnirēt, he asked who came; *longām viām irē*, to go a long way.

Remark 3.—Elliptical Accusative.—The cognate or equivalent noun is often omitted, and in its stead a neuter adjective is used, limiting the cognate notion understood: as, *multū ambulāt*, he walks much (walking). This accusative is used as an adverb.

Remark 4.—A cognate, equivalent, or elliptical accusative may be used with a passive verb: as, *dōceōr doctrinām*, I am taught teaching, science; *dōceōr grammaticām*, I am taught grammar; *nīmīūm doctūs*, taught too much, too learned.

Remark 5.—Many verbs which are transitive in English, represent in Latin an action only as done *with reference to* the object, and hence have a dative (see § 142, *Rem. 3*).

§ 151. RULE XVIII. (a.)—Verbs meaning to *ask* and *teach*, with *cēlārē*, to conceal, take two accusatives,—one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*: as, *rōgo tē nummōs*, I ask you for money; *dōcuīt mē mūsicām*, he taught me music.

(The thing asked or taught is an *equivalent accusative*.)

(b.) *Second Accusative.*—Verbs meaning to *name* or *call*, *choose*, *appoint*, *make*, *esteem*, or *reckon*, take, besides the direct object, a second accusative of the *name*, *office*, or *character*: as, *urbēm vōcāvīt Rōmām*, he called the city Rome; *mē consulēm fēcistis*, you have made me consul.

Remark 1.—With verbs of asking, the *person* is often put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, instead of the accusative: as, *hēc ā tē posco*, I demand these things of you. *Exigo, pēto, postūlo, quēro, scītōr, sciscītōr*, never have an accusative of the person: as, *pācēm ā Cēsārē pētunt*.

Remark 2.—The name is clearly an equivalent accusative. *He named the city a name* (to wit), Rome. So, also, but indirectly, the *choice*, *appointment*, etc. *Mē consulēm creāvistis*, you have made me consul. You have created a creation (*consulēm*), and the object upon which the act of consul-making has been performed is *me*. *Consulēm* is therefore an equivalent accusative,

and *mē* is the direct object of the compound verbal notion *consulēm creāvistis*, rather than of *creāvistis* alone:—"you have *consul-made* me."

§ 152. RULE XIX.—Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative. See § 120, 1.

NOTE.—As a general rule, prepositions expressing *motion to a place* take the accusative.

Remark 1.—Many intransitive verbs, when compounded with a preposition, become transitive: as, *transivē flūmēn*; *succēdere tectūm*, to go under *a roof*.

Remark 2.—A preposition in composition often has an object in the accusative: as, *ēquitātūm pontēm transdūcīt*, he leads the cavalry over *the bridge*; *ēquitātūs pontēm transdūcītūr*, the cavalry are led-over *the bridge*.

Remark 3.—The preposition is often repeated: as, *ēquitātūm trans pontēm transdūcīt*.

§ 153. RULE XX.—*Accusative of Time and Space.*—Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative: as, *trēs hōrās mansīt*, he remained *three hōurs*; *fossā duōs pēdēs lātā*, a ditch *two feet* wide.

NOTE.—The limit of time within which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative: as, *ūnō annō*, within *one year*.

Remark.—The accusative of time and space is an equivalent accusative.

§ 154. RULE XXI.—*Accusative of Place whither.*—The names of towns and small islands are put in the accusative to express the point which a motion reaches: as, *Rōmām vēnīt*, he came *to Rome*.

Remark 1.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs* are construed in the same way: as, *dōmūm rēdīt*, he returned *home*.

Remark 2.—A preposition is generally used when the name of a town is limited by an adjective or an apposition,—*urbis*, *oppidūm*, etc.: as, *Dēmārātūs sē contūlīt Tarquīniōs ād urbē*.

Etrūriæ,—to Tarquinii, a town of Etruria. Ad doctās Athēnās *prōfīciscī*.

Remark 3.—The preposition is sometimes omitted in prose, often in poetry, before the name of any place to which motion is directed. *Dēveniunt spēluncām*.

Remark 4.—The poets sometimes express the *place whither* by a dative. *It clāmōr cœlō*, the outcry rises to heaven.

§ 155. As the accusative expresses the limit actually *reached* by an action or motion, so also it expresses the limit to which the truth of a proposition extends. Thus, *membrā nūdūs est*, he is naked,—not *entirely*, but only *as to his limbs*. Hence,

RULE XXII.—The accusative is sometimes used to express a special limitation (*accusative of limitation*): as, *nūdūs membrā*, naked *as to his limbs*.

Remark 1.—This is a Greek construction, and is rarely used in prose.

Remark 2.—The poets often use an accusative with a passive verb in the sense of the Greek middle: as, *Priāmūs inūtīlē ferrūm cingītūr*, Priam girds himself with (puts on) the useless sword.

§ 156. **RULE XXIII.**—The accusative expresses the object of a feeling, with or without an interjection: as, *Heu mē mīsērūm! Ah wretched me!*

For the accusative with *prōpiōr* and *proximūs*, see § 142, *Rem. 4*; with *mīsērēt*, etc., see § 135, *Rem. 1*; with the infinitive, see § 188.

EXERCISE LV.

§ 157. Vocabulary.

Antiōchūs, -ī, *Antiochus*.

Antiōchiā, -æ, *Antioch*.

Ancūs Martiūs, -ī, *Ancus Martius*,
fourth king of Rome.

Mercūriūs, -ī, *Mercury*.

inventōr, -ōr-īs, *inventor*.

jūventūs, -tūt-īs, *youth*.

mūsicā, -æ, *music*.

grammāticā, -æ, *grammar*.

fīdēs, -iūm (fem.), *strings, a lute*.

Socrātēs, -īs, *Socrates*.

tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *cowardly*.

Antigōnūs, -ī, *Antigonus*.

quōtīdiē, *daily*.

jūcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *delightful*.

servītūs, -tūt-īs, *slavery*.

Rēgūlūs, -ī, *Regulus*.

certūs, -ā, -ūm, *certain*.

stūdiūm, -ī, *zeal, desire, pl. study*.

vastītās, -tāt-īs, *devastation*.

arbitr-ārī, *to think, deem*.

hāb-eō, -ērē, hābu-ī, hābīt-ūm, *to have, hold, consider*.

cēl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hide, conceal*.

flāgīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to ask for, demand earnestly*.

serv-iō, -īrē, -īvī, -ītūm (intr.), *to be a slave, to serve*.

trans-dūc-ō, -ērē, -dux-ī, -duct-ūm, *to lead over*.

trans-jic-ī-ō, -ērē, -jēc-ī, -ject-ūm, *to throw over, ship over*.

rēd-eō, -īrē, rēdi-ī, rēdīt-ūm, *to return*.

dis-cēd-ō, -ērē, discess-ī, discess-ūm, *to depart*.

pōn-ō, -ērē, pōsu-ī, pōsīt-ūm, *to put, place*.

sēqu-ōr, sēquī, sēcūt-ūs, *to follow*.

per-sēqu-ōr, persēquī, persēcūt-ūs, *to follow through, pursue*.

dōc-eō, -ērē, dōcu-ī, doct-ūm, *to teach*.

ē-dōc-eō, -ērē, ēdōcu-ī, ēdoct-ūm, *to teach thoroughly*.

nasc-ōr, nasc-ī, nāt-ūs, *to be born*.

illīc-ī-ō, -ērē, illex-ī, illect-ūm, *to allure, decoy*.

red-dō, reddērē, reddīd-ī, reddīt-ūm, *to render*.

sōl-eō, -ērē, sōlītūs (§ 109, 3), *to be accustomed*.

prōficisc-ōr, prōficisc-ī, prōfect-ūs, *to set out*.

posc-ō, -ērē, pōpose-ī, —, *to demand, ask*.

EXAMPLES.

Itēr omnēs cēlāt,

He conceals his journey from all.

Rēgēm pācēm poscunt,

They ask the king for peace.

Unūs diēī itēr,

One day's journey.

Annōs (§ 153) quindēcim nātūs,

Fifteen years old. (Born fifteen years.)

A vitā discēdērē,

To depart from life, to die.

A millībūs passuūm duōbūs castrā
pōsuīt,

He pitched his camp two miles off.

Milliā passuūm duō (acc.), or, mil-
libūs passuūm duōbūs (abl.),
(§ 153), āb urbē,

Two miles from the city.

Mē fidībūs dōcuīt,

*He taught me to play on the lyre (with
the strings. Abl. of instrument).*

Cæsārēm certiōrēm (§ 151 b)
fāciunt,

*They inform Cæsar (make more cer-
tain).*

Translate into English.

Urbem, ex Antiöchī patrīs¹ nōmīnē, Antiöchīam² vōcāvīt. Ancūm Martiūm pōpūlūs rēgēm³ creāvīt. Vētērēs Rōmānī Mercūriūm omniūm inventōrēm⁴ artiūm hābēbant. Antīgōnūs ītēr exercītūs omnēs cēlāt. Quōtīdiē Cēsār Aeduōs frūmentūm⁵ flāgītābāt. Nūm tīmīdūs vītām⁶ jūcundām vīvērē pōtest? Quī⁷ aurī servūs est, turpissimām servītūtēm⁸ servīt. Ariōvistūs maximās Germānōrūm cōpiās Rhēnūm⁹ transjēcērāt, nēquē multōrūm diērūm⁷ ītēr⁸ ā Cēsārīs castrīs abfuit. Quīs rēgēm fīdībūs dōcuīt? Alexander mensēm⁹ ūnūm, annōs⁹ trēs ēt trīgintā nātūs, ā vītā discessīt. Jam vīcēsīmūm annūm⁹ Itāliāe vastitātēm pātīmūr. Rēgūlūs Carthāgīnēm¹⁰ rēdiīt. Consūl īn Afrīcām prōfectūs, Carthāgīnēm vēnīt. Consūl milliā⁸ passuūm duō āb oppīdō castrā pōsuērāt. Cātīlinā jūventūtēm quām illexērāt mālā faciūrā³ ēdōcēbāt. Socrātēs tōtīūs mundī sē incōlām² ēt cīvēm arbitrābātūr. Explōrātōrēs dē hostiūm adventū consūlēm certiōrēm faciunt. Jūvērēs Rōmānī Athēnās¹⁰ stūdiōrūm causā prōfīciscī sōlēbant.

Translate into Latin.

1 Labienus followed Cæsar into Gaul; Marius returned home. 2 Our cavalry pursued the enemy ten miles. Cæsar set out from the winter quarters to Rome. 3 The place and time often render cowards brave. 4 Lust makes (renders) men blind. 5 Which of the teachers (masters) taught the boys grammar and music? My brother taught me to play on the lute. 6 The general led all his forces across the bridge in one night. 7 My brother is twenty years old.

¹ § 127.² § 151 b.³ § 151 a.⁴ § 150, Rem. 1.⁵ § 129, Rem. 2.⁶ § 152, Rem. 2.⁷ § 132.⁸ § 153.⁹ § 153.¹⁰ § 154.

9 Cæsar asked the senate for an army. 10 The robbers demanded money from Caius. 11 Are you going to Rome for the sake of study? 12 Cæsar was distant ten days' journey from the camp of Ariovistus. 13 It is characteristic of a good general to throw his forces over a river quickly. 14 A boy twelve years old used to inform the enemy of the approach of our forces. 15 The Germans will pitch their camp ten miles off.

THE VOCATIVE.

§ 158. The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative.

The vocative has no grammatical connection with the sentence, but merely serves to call the attention of the person to whom the discourse is directed.

THE ABLATIVE.

§ 159. RULE XXIV.—*Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, Instrument.* The ablative expresses the cause, manner, means, and instrument: as,

<i>Cæcūs āvāritiā,</i>	Blinded by avarice.
<i>Hōc mōdō fēcīt,</i>	He did it in this manner.
<i>Aquilā ālis volāt,</i>	The eagle flies with his wings.
<i>Captivū glādiō occidit,</i>	He kills the captive with a sword.

Remark 1.—The *causal ablative* is used mostly with intransitive and passive verbs, and with adjectives.

Remark 2.—The cause, especially with transitive verbs, is often expressed by *ob* or *proptēr*, with the accusative.

Remark 3.—Akin to the causal ablative is the ablative of *source* with participles expressing origin: as, *nātūs deā*, born of a goddess.

Remark 4.—The *manner* is expressed by the ablative of words meaning manner,—*mōdūs*, *mōs*, *rātiō*, *rītūs*;—or by the ablative

of other words with *cūm*: as, *cūm vōluptātē tē audio*. When an adjective is added to the noun, *cūm* is usually omitted: as, *æquō ānīmō cālāmītātēs ferrē*, to bear calamities with patience.

Remark 5.—When the means or instrument is a person, *pēr* with the accusative must be used: as, *pēr tē libērātūs sām*, I was freed through you. But the use of *pēr* is not confined to persons: as, *pēr vim*, *pēr fidēm*.

Remark 6.—To this rule may be referred the ablative with the deponents *ūtōr*, I employ myself with, I use; *fruōr*, I delight myself with, I enjoy; *fungōr*, I busy myself with, I perform; *pōtiōr* (*pōtis*), I make myself powerful with, I take possession of; *vescōr*, I feed myself with, I eat.

NOTE.—*Pōtiōr* sometimes takes an objective genitive (*I make myself master of*).

Remark 7.—A causal ablative is used with expressions of trust, —*fido*, *confido*, *frētūs*, etc.: as, *frētūs virībūs*, trusting in his strength.

§ 160. RULE XXV.—The ablative expresses the material or supply: as, *Germāniā flūmīnībūs ābundāt*, Germany abounds in rivers.

This ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of plenty or want, filling or emptying, depriving, etc.; also with *ōpūs est*, there is need. This is a branch of the causal ablative, the supply being the necessary antecedent of the idea of filling;—there can be no filling without something to fill with. *Emptying and depriving* are the contraries of filling.

Remark 1.—With *ōpūs* and *ūsūs* the genitive is sometimes used, and rarely the accusative. *Opūs* is either subject of *est*, or an indeclinable adjective in the predicate. *Dūcē nōbīs ōpūs est*, we have need of a leader; or, *dux nōbīs ōpūs est*, a leader is necessary for us. The latter construction is used with neuter pronouns and adjectives: as, *quid nōbīs ōpūs est?*

Remark 2.—The genitive is also used with expressions of plenty or wants. See § 135, Rule IX., d.

§ 161. RULE XXVI.—*Ablative of Limitation*.—Nouns, adjectives, and verbs are limited by the ablative showing *in what respect* their meaning is taken: as, *oppidūm nōmīnē Bibrax*, a town, *Bibrax by name*; *cēgēr pēdībūs*, lame in his feet.

§ 162. RULE XXVII.—*Ablative of Price*.—The price or value of a thing, if stated definitely, is expressed by the ablative: as, *patriām aurō vendidit*, he sold his country *for gold*.

Remark 1.—The price or value, if indefinitely stated, is expressed by the genitive. See § 137.

Remark 2.—To this rule may be referred the ablative with *dignūs*, *indignūs*, etc.

Remark 3.—The ablative of price is akin to the *causal* ablative, as the price is the *necessary antecedent* of buying and selling;—there can be no buying and selling without a *price*.

§ 163. RULE XXVIII.—*Ablative of Separation*.—That from which any thing is *freed, removed, or separated*, is expressed by the ablative: as, *patriām hostībūs liberāvit*, he freed his country *from enemies*.

Remark 1.—A preposition (*āb*, *dē*, *ex*) is often used with this ablative.

Remark 2.—The preposition is rarely used with names of towns denoting the *place from which* motion proceeds, or with the ablatives *dōmō*, *hūmō*, *rūrē*, and *rūrī*. *Rōmā discessit*. *Dōmō exīrē*, to go out *from home*.

Remark 3.—Verbs of *taking away* have sometimes, instead of an ablative, a dative of advantage or disadvantage: as, *nēc mīhi tē ēripiēt*, nor shall they take you *from me*.

§ 164. RULE XXIX.—*Ablative of Quality*.—The ablative limited by an adjective is used to express the quality of a thing: as, *serpens ingentī magnitūdīnē*, a serpent *of huge size*.

Remark 1.—This ablative may form part of the predicate, like an adjective: as, *Agēsilaūs stātūrā fuīt hūmīlī*, Agesilaus was of low stature.

The same idea is sometimes expressed by an ablative of limitation, limiting the adjective: as, *Agēsilaūs stātūrā fuīt hūmīlis*, Agesilaus was low in stature.

Remark 2.—A genitive may supply the place of the adjective: as, *est bōs cervī fīgūrā*, there is an ox of the shape of a stag (a stag-shaped ox).

§ 165. RULE XXX.—*Ablative of Comparison.*—The ablative is used with the comparative degree when *quām* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared: as, *mons est arbōrē altiōr*, a mountain is higher than a tree.

NOTE.—This may be considered a branch of the causal ablative, that with which something is compared being a necessary antecedent of the idea of comparison. It is perhaps better to consider it an ablative of limitation:—"as far as a tree is concerned, a mountain is higher."

Remark 1.—The complement of a comparative may be connected by the conjunction *quām*, either in the same case or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuīt*, etc., understood: as, *fortiōrēm vīdī nēmīnēm quām Māriūm*, or *quām Māriūs (est)*.

Remark 2.—When the thing compared is the subject, the ablative is generally used: as, *saxūm aurō dūriūs est*; also, when the thing compared is the object, the ablative, especially of pronouns, is used: as, *hoc nīhīl grātiūs fācērē pōtēs*, you can do nothing more agreeable than this.

But with a comparative in any other case than the nominative or accusative the ablative is very rarely used. *Quām* is used with all cases.

Remark 3.—The complement of a comparative is often omitted altogether, and the comparative is translated by *too*, *rather*, or *quite*, with the positive: as, *ēquītēs paulō longiūs prōcessērānt*, the horsemen had advanced a little too far. *Sæpiūs*, quite frequently.

Remark 4.—*Plūs, mīnūs, and ampliūs* are often prefixed to expressions of number, magnitude, etc., without effect upon the construction: as, *nōn ampliūs hōrās sex mansīt*, he stayed not more than *six hours*. These words may be considered adverbs, or indeclinable nouns.

Longiūs and the adjectives *mājōr* and *mīnōr* are sometimes used in the same way: thus, *puēr annōrūm dēcēm*, a boy of ten years; *puēr mīnōr annōrūm dēcēm*, a boy of *less than* ten years.

§ 166. RULE XXXI.—*Ablative of Place where.*—The ablative, usually with the preposition *in*, expresses the *place where*: as, *castrīs or in castrīs mansīt*, he remained *in the camp*; *Alexandēr Bābŷlōnē mortuūs est*, Alexander died *at Babylon*.

NOTE.—The preposition is rarely used with names of towns.

Exc.—The name of a town denoting the place where, if of the first or second declension and in the singular number, is in the genitive: as, *hābitāt Rōmæ*, he lives *at Rome*; *Mīlētī mortuūs est*, he died *at Miletus*.

Remark 1.—The genitives *dōmī, hūmī, mīlitīæ, and bellī*, also express the place where: as, *dōmī mīlitīæquē*, at home and in service.

Remark 2.—The genitive of names of islands and countries is sometimes used in the same way: as, *Rōmæ Nūmīdiæquē*, at Rome *and in Numidia*.

§ 167. RULE XXXII.—*Ablative of Time when.*—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative: as, *tertiā hōrā*, at the third hour.

Remark 1.—The limit of time within which any thing is done is expressed by the ablative. See § 153, *note*.

Remark 2.—The time before or after an event is expressed—

(a.) By *antē* or *post* with a numeral.

(b.) By *antēquām* or *postquām*.

(c.) The time after an event, by the relative or *quūm*.

(a.) After ten years, or ten years after.

post dĕcĕm annōs.
dĕcĕm post annōs.
post dĕcĭmūm annūm.
dĕcĭmūm post annūm.
dĕcĕm annīs post.
dĕcĕm post annīs.
dĕcĭmō annō post.
dĕcĭmō post annō.

(b.) Ten years after he had came.

post dĕcĕm annōs
dĕcĕm post annōs
post dĕcĭmūm annūm
dĕcĭmūm post annūm
dĕcĕm annīs post
dĕcĕm post annīs
dĕcĭmō annō post
dĕcĭmō post annō

} *quān vĕnīt.*

When *antē* or *post* stands last, an accusative specifying the event is often added: as, *dĕcĭmō annō antē conjūrātiōnēm.*

(c.) *Octō diēbūs quībūs occīsūs est*, eight days after he was killed.

Quatrīduō quō occīsūs est, in four days after he was killed.

§ 168. RULE XXXIII.—*Ablative of Difference.*—

The ablative is used to show how much one thing exceeds or falls short of another: as, *multīs partībūs mājor*, many times larger; *dīmīdiō mīnor*, less by half.

§ 169. RULE XXXIV.—*Ablative with Prepositions.*—

Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative. See § 120.

For the ablative of duration of time and extent of space, see § 153.

For the ablative absolute, see § 186.

EXERCISE LVI.

§ 170. Vocabulary.

frētūs, -ā, -ūm, *trusting.*

concordiā, -æ, *agreement.*

discordiā, -æ, *disagreement.*

plērumquē (adv.), *for the most part.*

mōerōr, -ōr-īs, *grief.*

incrēdībilis, -ē, *incredible.*

sēcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *favorable.*

tūmultūs, -ūs, *tumult.*

cādāvēr, -ēr-īs (§ 38, Exc. 2), *corpse.*

sensūs, -ūs, *feeling, sense.*

tālentūm, -ī, *talent.*

ās, assīs (m.), *a farthing, a small coin.*

morsūs, -ūs, *biting.*

anxiūs, -ā, -ūm, *anxious.*

nātūs, -ūs, *birth.*

rēligiō, -ōn-īs, *religion.*

Neptūnūs, -ī, *Neptune* (god of the sea).

in-vād-ō, -ērē, invās-ī, invās-ūm, *to attack.*

con-fid-ō, -ērē, confīs-ūs, *to trust.* (§ 109, 3.)

crese-ō, -ērē, crēv-ī, crēt-ūm, *to grow.*

dī-lāb-ōr, -ī, dī-laps-ūs, *to fall to pieces.*

intēr-eō, -irē, intērī-ī, intērīt-ūm (§ 111, 9), *to perish.*

lōqu-ōr, lōquī, lōcūt-ūs, *to speak.*

ūt-ōr, -ī, ūsūs, *to use.*

fru-ōr, -ī, fruct-ūs, *to enjoy.*

vesc-ōr, vescī, —, *to eat, feed upon.*

con-fic-i-ō, -ērē, confēc-ī, confect-ūm, *to finish.*

tūt-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to protect.*

in-dūc-ō, -ērē, indux-ī, induct-ūm, *to lead on, induce.*

im-pl-eō, -ērē, implēv-ī, implēt-ūm, *to fill.*

spōli-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to strip, rob, deprive.*

nūd-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to make naked, strip.*

prō-hīb-eō, -ērē, prōhibu-ī, prōhibīt-ūm, *to keep off, prevent.*

ex-pell-ō, -ērē, expul-ī, expuls-ūm, *to drive out.*

inter-dic-ō, -ērē, inter-dix-ī, inter-dict-ūm, *to forbid.*

mūt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to exchange, to change.*

EXAMPLES.

Præ mœrōrē,

On account of grief. A preventing cause.

Mājōr nātū (§ 161),

Greater by birth, older, elder.

Rē (abl. of *res*),

In fact.

Dux nōbīs (§ 142) ōpūs est,

A leader is necessary for us.

Dūcē (§ 160) nōbīs (§ 143) ōpūs est,

We have need of a leader.

Mātūrātō (*part. perf. pass.*) ōpūs est,

There is need of haste.

Cīvēs āgrīs (§ 160) spōliārē,

To deprive the citizens of their land.

Equūs mihī (§ 142, *Rem. 3*) tālentō (§ 162) stētīt,

The horse cost me a talent (stood to me at a talent).

Dēnīs īn diēm assībūs (§ 162),

For or at ten farthings a day.

Assē (§ 162)*cārūm,

Dear at an as.

Aquā (§ 163) āliquēm interdīcērē,

To cut one off from water.

Alīcuī (§ 141 or 142) āquām interdīcērē,

To forbid water to one.

Alīcuī (§ 142) āquā ēt ignī (§ 163) interdīcērē,

To cut one off from fire and water, to banish.

Translate into English.

Hostēs nūmērō¹ frētī in nostrōs impētū fēcērē. Dux hostiū nātūrā¹ locī confidēbāt. Dēcimæ lēgiōnī² Cæsār maxīmē confidēbāt. Concordiā¹ rēs parvæ crescunt; discordiā¹ maximæ dilābuntūr. Multī oppidānōrū fāmē ēt sitī intēriērunt. Nūmidæ plērumquē lactē ēt carnē³ vescuntūr. Hannibāl victōriā³ fruī quām ūtī māluit. Cātilinā, cūpīditatē regnī inductūs, conjūratiōnē fēcīt. Sāpiētīs⁴ est æquō ānimō dōlōrē ferrē. Cornibūs taurī, aprī dentibūs, morsū leōnēs sē tūtantūr. Pātēr tuūs nōminē⁵ māgis quām impēriō⁵ rex fuīt. Fratrūm maxīmūs nātū⁵ fuīt Orgētōrix. Milītēs urbē tūmultū⁶ implēbunt. Neptūnūs ventīs⁶ sēcundīs vėlā implēvit. Auctōritātē tuā⁷ nōbīs⁸ ōpūs est. Quantū argentī tībī² ōpūs est? Quantī⁹ istē ēquūs tībī stētīt? Tālentō.¹⁰ Hæc victōriā nōbīs multō sanguinē¹⁰ stētīt. Dēnīs in diēm assibūs¹⁰ ānimā ēt corpūs milītīs æstimantūr. Quōd¹¹ nōn ōpūs est assē cārūm est. Dīvītēs cīvēs Rōmānī uxōrēs libērosquē milītūm āgrīs¹² expellēbant. Rēgūlūs Carthāginē¹² prōfectūs, Rōmām¹³ pervēnit. Sācerdōtēs Balbō āquā ēt ignī interdixērant. Consūl Rōmā¹² discessīt.

Translate into Latin.

The Britons live mostly on milk and flesh. The general, trusting in the nature of the place, kept his forces in camp. Very many poor (men) have died of hunger and thirst. I cannot speak for (on account of) grief. The townsmen besought Cæsar with many tears. Orgetorix,

¹ § 159, Rem. 7.² § 142.³ § 159, Rem. 6.⁴ § 133.⁵ § 161.⁶ § 160.⁷ § 160, Rem. 1.⁸ § 143.⁹ § 137.¹⁰ § 162.¹¹ § 129, Rem. 2.¹² § 163.¹³ § 154.

the richest and most noble of the Helvetians, led on by the desire of reigning (*regnī*), made a conspiracy of the nobility. ¶ The soldiers finished the journey with incredible swiftness. § Cicero wrote all his speeches with the greatest care and diligence. ° The Belgians attacked the camp with great shouting. ° It is the duty of a young man to respect his elders. ° Bocchus was king in name, but not in fact. ° The sailors had loaded the ships with gold. ° Thou hast deprived the citizens of (their) land; thou hast stripped the temples of (their) silver and gold; thou hast filled the city with blood and corpses; for these things (*ōb hās rēs*) I cut thee off from water and fire. ° We have need of haste. ° How much gold have we need of? This base fellow will exchange faith and religion for money. ° Lycurgus forbade the use of gold to his people. The Æduans were not able to keep off the Helvetians from their country.

EXERCISE LVII.

§ 171. Vocabulary.

stātūrā, -æ, <i>stature, height</i> (of a man).	Hiberniā, -æ, <i>Ireland.</i>
hūmilis, -ē (§ 72, 2), <i>low.</i>	antēquā (conj.), <i>before.</i>
exiguūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>small, short.</i>	postquā (conj.), <i>after.</i>
pōtestās, -tāt-is, <i>power.</i>	doctūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>learned.</i>
perpētūus, -ā, -ūm, <i>continual.</i>	amplūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>large, much.</i>
tȳrannūs, -ī, <i>king, despot.</i>	dīmīdiūm, -ī, <i>half.</i>
gēnūs, gēnēr-is, <i>race, family.</i>	infīnitūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>boundless.</i>
spēluncā, -æ, <i>cave.</i>	altitūdō, -in-is, <i>depth, height.</i>
prāvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>depraved.</i>	paulūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>little. (Usually in neuter.)</i>
fīgūrā, -æ, <i>shape, figure.</i>	Diānā, -æ, <i>Diana.</i>
infēriōr (§ 72, 4), <i>lower, of less value, inferior.</i>	Ephēsīūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>Ephesian.</i>
postēriōr (§ 72, 4), <i>later, of less account.</i>	Pūnicūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>Carthaginian.</i>
præcīpuūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>especial.</i>	Scīpiō, -ōn-is, <i>Scipio.</i>
Varrō, -ōn-is, <i>Varro.</i>	Africānūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>African. (A surname of Scipio.)</i>
	Britanniā, -æ, <i>Britain.</i>

dīc-ō, -ērē, dix-ī, dict-ūm, *to say, to call.*

dūc-ō, -ērē, dux-ī, duct-ūm, *to lead, to deem.*

cūp-i-ō, -ērē, cūpīv-ī, cūpīt-ūm, *to desire.*

de-flagr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn down, to be consumed.*

EXAMPLES.

Proeliūm atrōciūs quā́m prō nū- } *A battle more fierce than in pro-*
mērō pugnantiūm, } *portion to the numbers of comba-*
 } *tants; or than would have been ex-*
 } *pected from, etc.*

Quō (§ 168) longiōr diēs, eō (§ 168) } *The longer the day, the shorter the*
nox brēviōr, } *night. (Eō is antecedent of quō.)*

Translate into English.

Agēsīlaūs stātūrā¹ fuit hūmīlī, corpōrē exīguō. Quī² pōtestatē est perpētūā, tȳrannūs hābētūr ēt dīcītūr. Lūciūs Cātīlinā, nōbīlī gēnērē³ nātūs, fuit magnā vī¹ ēt⁴ ānīmī ēt corpōrīs, sēd ingēniō¹ mālō prāvōquē. Est bōs cervī⁵ figūrā, cūjūs ā mēdiā⁶ frontē ūnūm cornū exsistīt. Sāpi-entīs⁷ est hūmānā omniā virtutē⁸ infēriōrā dūcērē. Bellō Pūnicō⁹ quō⁸ nullūm mājūs Rōmānī gessērē, Scīpiō Afrīcānūs praeīpuām glōriām tūlīt. Hēc verbā sunt Var-ronīs, quām fuit Claudiūs doctiōrīs.¹⁰ Eō diē nōn ampliūs¹¹ triā milliā hōmīnūm occīsī sunt.¹² Gallōrūm cōpiāe nōn longiūs milliā¹³ passuūm octō āb castrīs ābērant.¹⁰ Trībūs annīs¹⁴ post bellūm cīvilē pōpūlūs Sȳphācēm rēgēm creāvīt. Hōmīnēs quō plūrā hābent, eō cūpiunt ampliōrā. Varrō Antiōchīae¹⁵ vixīt. Cīcērō stūdiōrūm causā multōs annōs Athēnīs hābitāvīt. Quā noctē nātūs est Alexandēr, eādēm templūm Diānæ Ephēsīae deflagrāvīt.

¹ § 164, Rem. 1.

² § 129, Rem. 2.

³ § 159, Rem. 3.

⁴ § 123, Rem. 31.

⁵ § 164, Rem. 2.

⁶ § 128, Rem. 8.

⁷ § 133.

⁸ § 165.

⁹ § 167.

¹⁰ § 127.

¹¹ § 165, Rem. 4.

¹² § 128, Rem. 3.

¹³ § 153.

¹⁴ § 167, Rem. 2.

¹⁵ § 166, Exc.

Translate into Latin.

It is the duty of a general to deem his own safety of less account than the common safety. ⁴ Near the city is a cave of boundless depth. ³ This soldier is of low stature and lame in his feet. ⁴ I have seen no more beautiful (woman) than Tullia. ⁴ On that day Cæsar advanced (*prōcēdĕrē*) not more than six miles. ⁶ More men were killed than *would have been expected* from the number of combatants. ⁷ Three days after Cæsar reached the camp, ambassadors were sent by the Germans. ⁸ The consul was blind for many years before (*antĕquā*) you were born. ⁹ The king of the Thracians dwelt many years at Rome. ¹⁰ Ireland is less by half than Britain. ¹¹ Cicero was much more eloquent than Crassus. The farther the enemy retreated, the more swiftly did our men pursue. Our horsemen pursued the enemy a little too far.

THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

For the change from active to passive construction, see § 108.

§ 172. RULE XXXV.—Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case: as, *libĕr puĕrō dātūr*, a book is given to the boy; *arbōrēs fōliīs nūdantūr*, the trees are stripped of leaves.

Remark 1.—A second accusative in the active (except with verbs of teaching and some verbs of asking) becomes a predicate nominative in the passive. *Urbēm vōcāvit Rōmām*; *Urbs Rōmā vōcātūr*.

Remark 2.—As intransitive verbs have no direct object in the active, they are not used *personally* in the passive, except with a

cognate or equivalent nominative: as, *cursūs currītūr*. When they are used impersonally, the remote object is of course retained: as, *mīhi ā tē persuādētūr*, I am persuaded by you.

Remark 3.—The infinitive passive of an intransitive verb is often used as a complement of an impersonal expression: as, *mīhi persuādērī nōn pōtest*, it cannot be persuaded to me;—*I cannot be persuaded*.

SYNTAX OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

The *finite* verb consists of the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative mood; the *indefinite* verb, of the infinitive, participles, gerund, and supine.

INFINITIVE.

§ 173. RULE XXXVI.—*Subject Infinitive.*—The infinitive is a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb: as, *grātūm est tēcūm ambūlārē*, it is pleasant to walk with you.

§ 174. RULE XXXVII.—*Complementary Infinitive.*—The infinitive is used as a complement (*filling up*) with certain verbs, nouns, and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea: as, *pārāt bellūm gērērē*, he is preparing to wage war.

NOTE.—The complementary infinitive is generally an accusative, either of direct object or limitation. *Transīrē cōnātur*, he attempts the crossing. *Transīrē pōtest*, he is able as to the crossing (his ability reaches that limit).

Remark 1.—The infinitive with nouns and adjectives is rare in prose, the gerund being generally used. *Cūpīdūs mōriendī*, rather than *cūpīdūs mōrīrī*.

Remark 2.—A purpose is not expressed in Latin prose by the infinitive. Thus, *I came to see*, must be translated *vēnī ūt vīdērēm*, not *vēnī vīdērē*, though this construction is sometimes used by the poets.

Remark 3.—An infinitive expressing an incomplete idea (§ 130, 3) has the same case after it as before it, if both nouns refer to the same thing: as, *volo essē rex*; *nēmīnī mēdio essē licēt*; *mīhi essē poētæ dii nōn concessērē*, the gods have not permitted me to be a poet; *pūdēt mē victūm discēdērē*, I am ashamed to come off conquered.

Remark 4.—An adjective limiting a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject: as, *Cæsār clēmēns existimārī vōluit*, Cæsar wished to be esteemed merciful.

Remark 5.—The accusative with the infinitive (§ 188) is sometimes used with *licēt*, and the predicate noun must then be in the accusative: as, *nēmīnī (sē) mēdiūm essē licēt*.

§ 175. RULE XXXVIII.—*Historical Infinitive.*—In animated narration the infinitive is often used like a past indicative: as, *consul in Africām festinārē*, the consul *hastened* to Africa.

For the predicate infinitive, see § 188.

For the construction of participles, see § 185.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

§ 176. RULE XXXIX.—The gerund is a verbal noun in the oblique cases (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive), and is construed with the same cases as the verb from which it is derived.

Stūdiūm patrē vīdendī, the desire of seeing *my father*.

Parcendō vietis, by sparing *the conquered*.

§ 177. RULE XL.—Instead of a transitive gerund the gerundive is frequently used; the object-noun being put into the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with it in gender, number, and case: as,

Consiliūm scrībendī epistolām, } *The design of writing a letter.*
Consiliūm epistolæ scrībendæ, }

Remark 1.—A transitive gerund with an object accusative is not generally used in the dative or accusative, but the gerundive

is used instead: as, *chartā ūtilis est scribendis epistolis*, or *ad scribendās epistolās* (not *scribendō epistolās*). So also when the gerund would be the object of a preposition the gerundive is preferred: as, *in victorē laudandō* (not *victorēm*), in praising the conqueror.

Remark 2.—The gerund is preferred when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun: as, *studiūm aliquīd faciendī*, the desire of doing something.

Remark 3.—The genitive singular of the gerund is sometimes used instead of the genitive plural of the gerundive, with a noun in the genitive plural: as, *fācultās agrorūm latronībūs suis condonandī*, the opportunity of presenting our fields to his ruffians. So also in the expression *sui purgandī causā*, for the purpose of excusing themselves; though *sui* may better be regarded as the genitive singular neuter of the possessive, like *nostrī* and *vestrī*, and *purgandī* as a gerundive agreeing with it.

Remark 4.—The verbs *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *pōtiōr*, and sometimes *medeōr*, use the gerundive like transitive verbs.

§ 178. RULE XLI.—The gerundive of intransitive verbs is used impersonally with the tenses of *essē*, to express the necessity or duty of doing an action: as,

Mihī eundū est,	<i>I must go.</i>
Tibī eundū est,	<i>Thou must go.</i>
Caiō eundū est,	<i>Caius must go.</i>
Nōbīs eundū est,	<i>We must go.</i>
Vōbīs eundū est,	<i>Ye must go.</i>
Puērīs eundū est,	<i>The boys must go.</i>
Mihī eundū ērāt,	<i>I had to go.</i>
Tibī eundū ērāt,	<i>Thou hadst to go.</i>
Caiō eundū ērāt,	<i>Caius had to go.</i>
Mihī eundū ērit,	<i>I shall have to go.</i>
Mihī eundū essēt,	<i>I should have to go.</i>
Mihī eundū fuissēt,	<i>I should have had to go.</i>

Remark 1.—The object of the action is sometimes expressed: as, *nōbīs ratiōnē utendū est*, we must use reason.

But with transitive verbs the personal construction is almost always used: as,

Ēpistolā mīhī est scribendā,

A letter must be written by me. I must write a letter.

Epistolā tībī est scribendā,

You must write a letter.

Epistolā nōbīs ērāt scribendā,

We had to write a letter.

Epistolā vōbīs ērīt scribendā,

Ye will have to write a letter.

Epistolā Caiō essēt scribendā,

Caius would have to write a letter.

(This use of the gerundive is sometimes called the second Periphrastic Conjugation.)

Remark 2.—The agent is expressed by the dative (§ 145), rarely by the ablative with *ā* or *āb*.

SUPINE.

§ 179. RULE XLII.—(a.) The supine in *ūm* (accusative) is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion, and is construed with the same cases as its verb: as, *vēnio tē rōgātūm, I come to ask you.*

(b.) The supine in *ū* is used with adjectives as an ablative of limitation (§ 161): as, *facīlē factū, easy to be done (with respect to the doing).*

EXERCISE LVIII.

§ 180. Vocabulary.

spātiūm, -ī, *opportunity, time.*

dēfessus, -ā, -ūm, *wearied.*

negligens, -ent-īs, *careless.*

cūr-ārē, *to attend to.*

Ārār, or Arārīs, -īs (§ 33, *Rem. 1*),
the Saone, a river of Gaul.

hōnestē (adv.), *honorably.*

Hermīniūs, -ī, *Herminius.*

vērūtūm, -ī, *javelin.*

ēlōquentiā, -ā, *eloquence.*

magnānīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *magnanimous.*

ætās, -tāt-īs, *age, life.*

sātīs (noun, adj., or adv.), *enough.*

sīmūl (adv.), *at the same time.*

cūpīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *desirous.*

vexillūm, -ī, *flag, standard.*

præd-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to plunder.*

frūment-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to forage.*

purg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to cleanse, excuse.*

con-serv-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to save, preserve.*

prō-pōn-ō, -ērē, prōpōsu-ī, prōpōsīt-ūm, *to set up.*

āg-ō, -ērē, ēg-ī, act-ūm, *to do.*

ex-cēd-ō, -ērē excess-ī, excess-ūm, *to go out, retire.*

dō-līg-ō, -ērē, dēlēg-i, dēlect-ūm, *to choose*.
 dī-rīp-i-ō, -ērē, dīrīpu-i, dirept-ūm, *to pillage*.
 ād-hīb-e-ō, -ērē, ādhību-i, ādhībīt-ūm, *to apply, use*.
 re-scind-ō, -ērē, rescid-i, re-sciss-ūm, *to cut down*.
 disc-ō, -ērē, didisc-i, *to learn*.
 quēr-ōr, quēr-i, quest-ūs, *to complain*.
 rē-pēt-ō, -ērē, rēpētiv-i, rēpētīt-ūm, *to ask back*.
 pēr-cūt-i-ō, -ērē, percuss-i, percuss-ūm, *to strike*.
 hort-ōr, hort-ārī, hort-ātūs, *to encourage, exhort*.
 prō-fūg-i-ō, -ērē, prōfūg-i, prōfūgīt-ūm, *to flee*.
 prō-puls-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to repel*.
 col-līg-ō, -ērē, collēg-i, collect-ūm, *to collect*.
 cōgīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to think*.
 dē-sil-i-ō, -irē, dēsīlu-i, dēsult-ūm, *to leap down*.
 arcess-ō, -ērē, arcess-ivī, arcess-ītūm, *to send for*.
 cūr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to care for, attend to*.
 pār-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to prepare, acquire, buy*.

EXAMPLES.

Nēquē — nēquē,	Neither — nor.
Spātiūm excēdendī,	Time for retiring.
Consiliūm capērē,	To form a design.
Pontē in flūminē faciendūm	To have a bridge built over a river
cūrārē,	(to attend to the building of a bridge, etc.).
Cæsārī (§ 145) omniā ērant āgendā,	Cæsar had to do all things. (Literally, all things were to be done by Cæsar.)
Suī (§ 177, Rem. 3) purgandī	For the purpose of excusing himself,
causā,	herself, themselves.

A purpose may be expressed—

(a.) After verbs of giving, etc., by a predicate gerundive: as, *urbs militibūs dirīpiendā datā est*, the city was given to the soldiers to be plundered.

(b.) By *ād* with the accusative of a gerund or gerundive: as, *ād eās rēs conficiendās*, for finishing, to finish, these things.

(c.) After a noun, by the dative of a gerundive: as, *mē rēgēm bellō gērendō creāvistī*, you have made me king for the purpose of carrying on war.

(d.) By *causā*, *grātiā*, with the genitive: as, *mē rēgēm bellī gērendī causā creāvistī*, you have made me king for the purpose of carrying on war.

(e.) By the supine after verbs of motion : as, *lēgātī rēs rēpētītūm vēniunt*, ambassadors come to seek redress.

(For other modes of expressing purpose, see § 193; § 210; § 185, 3 b.)

Translate into English.

Germānīs nēquē consīlii hābendī¹ nēquē armā cāpiendī² spātiūm dātūm est. Magnā pars ēquitātūs prædandī frumentandīquē² causā trans Rhēnūm missā ērāt. Ad eās rēs conficiendās¹ Orgētōrix dēligītūr. Omnēs hōmīnēs plūrā hābendī³ cūpīdī sunt. Multī in ēquīs pārandīs¹ ādhībent cūrām, sēd in āmicīs dēligendīs¹ neglīgētēs sunt. Cæsār in Arārī pontēm faciendūm¹ cūrāvīt. Cæsār pontēm quēm in Rhēnō faciendūm¹ cūrāvērāt, rescīdīt. Hōmīnīs mens discendō ālītūr ēt cōgītandō. Brēvē tempūs ætātīs sātīs longūm est ād bēnē hōnestēquē vīvendūm. Hermīniūs intēr spōliandūm¹ corpūs hostīs vērūtō percussūs est. Lōquendī ēlōquentiā augētūr lēgendīs¹ ōrātōrībūs ēt poētīs. Princīpēs cīvītātīs, suī conservandī⁴ causā, Rōmā⁵ prōfūgērunt. Fortēs ēt magnānīmī* sunt hābendī nōn quī⁶ faciunt, sēd quī prōpulsant injūriām. Illō ipsō diē mīhī⁷ prōfīciscendūm⁸ ērāt. Milītībūs dē nāvībūs ērāt dēsīliendūm.⁸ Mendācī⁹ ā nullō crēdītūr.¹⁰ Mīhī ā tē nōcērī¹¹ nōn pōtest.

Translate into Latin.

(The verb *esse* is often omitted with participles. See § 126, Rem. 4.)

¹ The Gauls had formed the design of *attacking the town*.
² Time for *retiring* from (out of) the fight was not given to

¹ § 177.

² § 176.

³ § 135 a.

⁴ § 177, Rem. 3.

⁵ § 163.

⁶ § 129, Rem. 2.

⁷ § 145.

⁸ § 178.

⁹ § 142, or § 141.

¹⁰ § 114, 5; § 172, Rem. 2.

¹¹ § 172, Rem. 3.

* Predicate nominative after *sunt hābendī*; the subject is the relative sentence following.

the wearied.¹ The hope of *plundering* had recalled the farmers from their fields.² The general gave the city to his soldiers *to be plundered*.³ The chiefs of the state came to Cæsar *for the purpose of excusing themselves*.⁴ The king's daughters had fled from home *for the purpose of saving themselves*.⁵ The Gauls send ambassadors to Rome *to complain-of (supine) injuries, and to seek redress*.⁶ A short life is long enough *to accomplish* all these things.⁷ Cæsar *had to do* all things at one time: the flag *had to be set up*, the soldiers *recalled* from the work; (those) who had advanced a little too far, *sent for*; the line *had to be drawn up*; the soldiers *exhorted*; the signal *given*.⁸ The soldiers *had at the same time both to leap-down* from the ships and *to fight* with the enemy. The Helvetians were desirous of *carrying on war*.

SYNTAX OF PROPOSITIONS.

§ 181. 1. Propositions are either principal or dependent. A principal proposition makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent one does not make complete sense when alone, but must be connected with another proposition.

2. Principal propositions are *declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory*; as,

<i>Puër currît</i> , the boy runs.	(Declarative.)
<i>Curritnê puër?</i> Does the boy run?	(Interrogative.)
<i>Currê puër!</i> Run, boy!	(Imperative.)
<i>Quâm cêlêrîtêr currît!</i> How fast he runs!	(Exclamatory.)

3. Dependent or subordinate propositions are of ten kinds, viz.:—

1. *Participial propositions*, i.e., those whose predicate is a *participle*.
2. *Infinitive propositions*, i.e., those whose predicate is an *infinitive*.
3. *Causal propositions*, introduced by the *causal conjunctions quôd, quîâ, etc.*

4. *Final propositions*, introduced by a *final* conjunction.
5. *Conditional propositions*, introduced by a *conditional* conjunction.
6. *Concessive propositions*, introduced by a *concessive* conjunction.
7. *Comparative propositions*, introduced by a *comparative* conjunction.
8. *Temporal propositions*, introduced by a *temporal* conjunction.
9. *Relative propositions*, introduced by a *relative* pronoun.
10. *Interrogative propositions*, introduced by an *interrogative* word.

4. Every dependent proposition is either a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, limiting either the subject, or predicate, or some other word of the *principal* proposition on which it depends.

5. Propositions of the same rank, whether principal or dependent, may be connected by conjunctions, and are then said to be *co-ordinate* with each other. Co-ordination is of five kinds, viz. :—

1. *Copulative* : e.g., he has lost his property, *and* forfeited his credit.
2. *Disjunctive* : e.g., either he has lost his property, *or* he has forfeited his credit.
3. *Adversative* : e.g., he has lost his property, *but* he has not forfeited his credit.
4. *Corroborative* : e.g., he will forfeit his credit, *for* he has lost his property.
5. *Conclusive* : e.g., he has lost his property, *therefore* he will forfeit his credit.

THE MOODS.

§ 182. RULE XLIII.—The indicative is used both in principal and dependent sentences when a fact is stated.

§ 183. RULE XLIV.—The subjunctive is used when a thing is stated, not as a *fact*, but simply as *conceived in the mind*. It is used in principal propositions,—

- (a.) In a softened assertion : as, *hoc confirmāverim*, I think I can assert this.

- (b.) In a question implying doubt or expecting a negative answer: as, *quid faciāmūs?* what shall we do?
- (c.) To express a supposed case: as, *forsitān aliquis dixerit*, perhaps some one will say.
- (d.) To express a command or prohibition: as, *nē hoc feceris*, do not do this.

Remark.—The subjunctive is always used to express a command or exhortation in the first person, the imperative having no first person: as, *eāmūs*, let us go.

TENSES.

§ 184. The tenses are either primary or historical.

	PRESENT.	FUTURES.	PRES. PERFECT.
Primary.	{ <i>āmāt,</i> <i>he loves.</i>	<i>āmābīt,</i> <i>he will love.</i> <i>āmāvērit,</i> <i>he will have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvīt,</i> <i>he has loved.</i>
	IMPERFECT.	PAST PERFECT.	AORIST PERFECT.
Historical.	{ <i>āmābāt,</i> <i>he was loving.</i>	<i>āmāvērāt,</i> <i>he had loved.</i>	<i>āmāvīt,</i> <i>he loved.</i>

RULE XLV.—*Succession of Tenses.*—If there be a primary tense in the principal proposition, there must be a primary tense in the dependent; if there be an historical tense in the principal, there must be an historical tense in the dependent.

PRINCIPAL.	DEPENDENT.	
Vēniō	ūt vīdeām,	<i>I come, that I may see.</i>
Vēniām	ūt vīdeām,	<i>I will come, that I may see.</i>
Vēnī	ūt vīdeām,	<i>I have come, that I may see.</i>
Vēniēbām	ūt vīdērēm,	<i>I was coming, that I might see.</i>
Vēnī	ūt vīdērēm,	<i>I came, that I might see.</i>

Remark 1.—An historical present is primary in form, but past in fact: it is, therefore, often followed by past tenses in the dependent propositions.

Remark 2.—The latter part of a long oblique discourse, when the leading verb is past, is almost always shifted to the present, for the sake of animation.

PARTICIPIAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 185. 1. The participle is used to abridge discourse, and may stand in the place of a *causal, final, conditional, concessive, relative, or temporal* proposition, or a principal proposition connected by *et* with what follows.

2. (a.) The participle may agree with the subject, object, or some other word of the principal proposition (*participial conjunctive construction*): as, *Aristidēs patriā pulsus Lacedæmonēm fūgīt*, Aristides *when driven* from his country fled to Sparta.

(b.) Or, it may stand with a noun or a pronoun in the ablative, without grammatical connection with any word in the principal proposition: as, *hīs rēbūs constitūtīs, consūl discessit*, *these things being determined upon*, the consul departed. (*Ablative Absolute*.)

3. Here may be noted some peculiarities in the use of the participles.

(a.) The participle in *rūs* is used with the verb *essē* to represent the agent as *about to perform, or intending to perform*, an action. *Lōcūtūrūs fuit*, he was on the point of speaking. (This is sometimes called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation*.)

(b.) The participle in *rūs*, especially with verbs of motion, is sometimes used to express a *purpose*. *Ad Jōvēm Ammōnēm pergīt consūltūrūs dē ōrīgīnē suā*, he goes to Jupiter Ammon *to consult* about his origin.

(c.) The perfect passive participle agreeing with a noun is often used like a verbal noun in *-io* or *-ūs* limited by a genitive: as, *āb urbē condītā*, from the *building* of the city; *post præliūm factūm*, after the *fighting* of the battle. An adjective limiting a noun may often be translated in the same way, *i.e.* like an abstract noun with a genitive: as, *imprōvisā rē commōtī*, alarmed by the suddenness of the thing.

(d.) Instead of the perfect tenses in the active, the perfect pas-

sive participle is sometimes used with *hābeo*; and the compound form thus obtained is generally stronger than the simple perfect: as, *Dumnōrix portōriā rēdemptā hābuīt* (for *rēdēmērāt*), *Dumnōrix* had farmed the revenues.

§ 186. RULE XLVI.—*Ablative Absolute*.—A noun and participle, whose case depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative called *absolute*, to express the time, cause, condition, or circumstances of an action: as, *Pythāgōrās, Tarquīniō regnantē, in Itāliā vēnīt*, *Pythagoras* came to Italy *in the reign of Tarquin* (*Tarquin reigning*).

Remark 1.—Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, are often used in the ablative absolute without a participle, the participle *ens* of *essē* having become obsolete: as, *nātūrā dūcē, under the guidance of nature* (*nature being guide*); *Manliō consulē, in the consulship of Manlius* (*Manlius being consul*).

Remark 2.—This omission of the participle *ens* is quite common in the participial conjunctive construction also: as, *C. Antōniūs, pēdibūs ægēr, praeliō adessē nēquibāt, Caius Antonius* could not be present at the battle, (*being*) *lame in his feet*, i.e. *because he was lame*; *Mētellūs, vīr egrēgiūs aliīs artibūs, Metellus* (though he was) *an illustrious man* in other respects, etc.

Remark 3.—The ablative absolute is very rarely used when the subject of the participial proposition is the same with that of the principal proposition; the conjunctive construction is then used.

EXERCISE LIX.

§ 187. Vocabulary.

rēpentinūs, -ā, -ūm, sudden.
tempestās, -tāt-īs, time.
ultēriōr (q̄ 74, 1), farther.
Dyōnyšiūs, -ī, Dyonysius.
Syrācūsæ, -ārūm, Syracuse, a city
of Sicily.
pollīcītātiō, -ōn-īs, promise.
err-ārē, to err, to wander.

dē-spēr-ārē, to despair.
Athēniensīs, -īs, an Athenian.
Messālā, -æ, Messala.
Pīso, -ōn-īs, Piso.
Persū, -æ, a Persian.
ex sententiā, according to one's notion,
satisfactorily.

arrĭp-i-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, arrĭpu-ĭ, arrept-ŭm, *to snatch up.*
 nancisc-ŏr, nancisc-ĭ, nactŭs and nanct-ŭs, *to obtain.*
 pro-grĕd-i-ŏr, progrĕd-ĭ, progress-ŭs, *to go forward.*
 cŏ-hort-ŏr, -ārĭ, -ātŭs, *to encourage, exhort.*
 cond-ŏ, cond-ĕrĕ, condĭd-ĭ, condĭt-ŭm, *to found, build.*
 com-mitt-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, com-mis-ĭ, commiss-ŭm, *to join.*
 dĕl-cŏ, -ĕrĕ, dĕlĕv-ĭ, dĕlĕt-ŭm, *to destroy.*
 aggrĕd-i-ŏr, aggrĕd-ĭ, aggress-ŭs, *to go to, attack.*
 vĕr-cŏr, vĕr-ĕrĭ, vĕrĭt-ŭs, *to fear.*
 ad-dŭc-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, addux-ĭ, adduct-ŭm, *to lead on.*

EXAMPLE.

Cæsar, *having called a council,* } Cæsār, concĭliŏ convŏcātŏ, centŭri-
 sharply censured the centurions. } ōnēs vĕhĕmentĕr incŭsŭrĭt.

(None but deponent verbs have a perfect participle with an active meaning; the perfect active participle in English must therefore be translated by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute, unless the verb is deponent.)

Translate into English.

Nostrĭ, rĕpentĭnā rĕ perturbātĭ, armă arrĭpiunt.¹ Barbārĭ, multĭtŭdĭnĕ nāvĭŭm perterrĭtĭ,¹ ā lĭtŏrĕ discessĕrant. Nactŭs ĭdŏneām ād nāvĭgandŭm² tempestātĕm, tertiā fĕrĕ vĭgĭliā³ ĕquĭtĕs ĭn ultĕriŏrĕm portŭm progrĕdĭ jussĭt.⁴ Hĭs rĕbŭs ex sententiā confectĭs,⁴ ĭmpĕrātŏr, milĭtĕs cŏhortātŭs, prĕliŭm commĭsĭt.⁴ Vĭgintĭ annĭs⁵ antĕ Cātŏnĕm nātŭm⁶ pătĕr meŭs vĭtā⁷ discessĭt. Annŏ quadrăgĕsĭmŏ prĭmŏ āb urbĕ condĭtā⁶ Nŭmă rex⁸ creātŭs est. Haud multĭs annĭs post Carthăgĭnĕm dĕlĕtām⁶ Jŭgurthă nātŭs est. Dŭyonŷsiŭs tŷrannŭs, Sŷrăcŭsĭs⁷ expulsŭs, Cŏrĭnthĭ⁹ puĕrŏs dŏcĕbăt. Lĕgātŭs signŭm milĭtĭbŭs nŏn dĕdĭt cŭpientĭbŭs.

¹ § 185, 2 a.² § 142, Rem. 2.³ § 167.⁴ § 186.⁵ § 167, Rem. 2.⁶ § 185, 3 c.⁷ § 163.⁸ § 130, 2.⁹ § 166, Exc.

¹ Nātūrā dūcē¹ nunquām errābīmus. (¹ His rēbūs constītūtīs² lēgātī rēgēm dē rēbūs suis despērantēm, multis pollicitātiōnībūs aggrēdiuntūr.³ ¹ Hāc rē stātīm pēr spēcūlātōrēs⁴ cognītā, Cæsār, insīdiās vērītūs, exercītūm castrīs⁵ continuīt. ¹ Alexandēr in Asiām contendīt regnūm Persārūm occūpātūrūs.⁶ ¹ Cæsār in Itāliām prōfectūrūs⁷ principēs cīvītātūm ād sē convōcāt. ¹ Consūl collēm occūpātūrūs est. ¹ Athēniensēs lēgātōs mīsērunt ōrācūlūm consūltūrōs.⁶ ⁷ Marcō Messālā ēt Marcō Pisōnē consūlībūs,¹ Orgētōrix, cūpīdinē regnī adductūs, conjūrātiōnēm nōbilitātis fēcīt.

17

Translate into Latin.

Who will err under the guidance of nature? Who, pray, will not err under your guidance? In the consulship of Manlius the Gauls sent ambassadors to Rome. These things having been determined upon, the line of battle having been drawn up, the signal having been given, our men commenced battle. Both parties fought (§ 114, 5) bravely. The consul, fearing the enemy's cavalry, kept his forces in camp (*for*) three days. Two years before the destruction of Carthage the Numidians sent ambassadors to Rome to the senate. The general is going-to-attack the enemy at sunset. In the reign of Tarquin the Proud, many noble citizens were murdered at Rome. The general, having called together his lieutenants, ordered them to commence the battle. The Athenians, having consulted the oracle, returned home. Adherbal, (*when*) expelled from Numidia, fled to Rome. These things having been satisfactorily arranged, Cæsar set out to (*in*) Britain.

¹ § 186, *Rem.* 1.

² § 186.

³ § 95, *Rem.* 2.

⁴ § 159, *Rem.* 5.

⁵ § 166.

⁶ § 185, 3 b.

⁷ § 185, 3 a.

INFINITIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 188. RULE XLVII.—After expressions of *saying, thinking, etc.* (*verbā sentiendī et dicendī*), and certain impersonal expressions, dependent propositions introduced in English by *that*, are expressed in Latin by infinitive propositions: as, *dicīt mē scribēre*, he says that I write.

The subject of an infinitive proposition is in the accusative.

NOTE.—The infinitive cannot with propriety be called a predicate, as it is a *noun*, and not a mode of the verb. Thus, in the above example, the object of *dicīt* is *scribēre*, and *mē* shows the limit to which the assertion extends (§ 155), *he asserts the writing with respect to me*. The thing asserted is the *writing*, and the person *as to whom* the assertion is made is *me*. But as the accusative with the infinitive corresponds to English noun-propositions introduced by *that*, it is more convenient to regard it as a dependent proposition, the accusative being the subject, and the infinitive being the predicate.

Remark 1.—The infinitive expresses an action as incomplete, completed, or future, with reference, not to the present time, but to the time of the leading verb.

(a.) Dicīt, he says	} mē scribēre, that I write, or am writing.	} mē scripsissē, that I have written.	} mē scriptūrū essē, that I will write.
Dicēt, he will say			
Dixīt, he has said			
(b.) Dicēbāt, he was saying	} mē scribēre, that I wrote, or was writing.	} mē scripsissē, that I had written.	} mē scriptūrū essē, that I would write.
Dixīt, he said			
Dixērāt, he had said			
(a.) Dicīt, etc.	} ēpistōlām scribī, that the letter is being written.*	} ep. scriptām essē, that the letter has been written.	} ep. scriptū irī, that the letter will be written.
(b.) Dixīt, he said, etc.			
	} ēpistōlām scribī, that the letter was being written.	} ep. scriptām essē, that the letter had been written.	} ep. scriptū irī, that the letter would be written.

* A doubtful expression, which, however, has been engrafted upon the language.

Hence, after a primary tense (*a*) the infinitive is translated like the indicative of the same tense, *i.e.* an infinitive present, like an indicative present, etc.; after an historical tense (*b*) the infinitive present is translated like the indicative imperfect; the infinitive perfect, like the indicative past-perfect; the infinitive future, like the subjunctive imperfect (*should* or *would*); and the infinitive future-perfect (*fuissē scriptūrū*), like the subjunctive past-perfect (*should have, would have*).

Remark 2.—The accusative with the infinitive future passive is properly the object of the supine, the infinitive present passive *iri* being used impersonally: as, *dicīt epistolām scriptūm iri*, he says *that it is gone* to write the letter; *i.e.* that some one *is going* to write it, and, hence, *that it will be written*.

Remark 3.—The passive construction is preferred with transitive verbs where ambiguity would arise from the use of the direct object. Thus, *nunciātū est Māriū Jūgurthām vicissē*, might mean either “that Marius has conquered Jugurtha,” or “that Jugurtha has conquered Marius.” Hence *Jūgurthām ā Māriō victū* is preferable.

Remark 4.—Verbs meaning to *wish* or *desire* are followed by a complementary infinitive, or an infinitive with a subject: as, *Cæsār clēmens existimārī vult*, or *Cæsār sē existimārī clēmentem vult*, Cæsar wishes to be esteemed merciful.

Remark 5.—An infinitive proposition is always a noun-proposition, the object of a verb of saying or thinking, the subject of an impersonal verb, or in apposition with another noun. With an impersonal verb an infinitive proposition is *logically* (*i.e.* according to the manner of speaking) dependent, but *grammatically* the subject.

EXERCISE LX.

§ 189. Vocabulary.

jūgūm, -ī, yoke.

bienniūm, -ī, two years.

victōr, -ōr-is, conqueror.

prōd-ītōr, -ōr-is, traitor.

fāmiliārīs, -ē, pertaining to the family.

rēs fāmiliārīs, property.

spēs, -eī, hope.

fācultās, -tāt-is, means, opportunity.

nēg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to say no, to deny.*
 com-pār-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to acquire.*
 larg-iōr, larg-irī, largīt-ūs, *to bribe.*
 neglig-ō, -ērē, neglex-ī, neglect-ūm, *to neglect.*
 con-sīd-ō, -ērē, consēd-ī, consess-ūm, *to encamp.*
 con-stāt, con-stābāt, con-stīt-īt (impers.), *it is evident.*
 nosc-ō, -ērē, nōv-ī, nōt-ūm, *to find out, to know.*
 conjic-i-ō, -ērē, conjēc-ī, conject-ūm, *to hurl.*
 pollic-eōr, pollic-erī, pollicēt-ūs, *to promise.*
 spēr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hope.*
 rē-nunti-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to bring back word.*
 pell-ō, -ērē, pēpūl-ī, puls-ūm, *to beat, drive.*
 mīn-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to threaten.*
 confirm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to declare, assert.*
 red-dō, redd-ērē, reddīd-ī, reddīt-ūm, *to give back, return.*
 ānīmadvert-ō, -ērē, ānīmadvert-ī, ānīmadvers-ūm, *to perceive.*
 opprīm-ō, -ērē, oppress-ī, oppress-ūm, *to oppress.*
 sūb montē, *at the foot of the mountain.*

EXAMPLES.

- (a.) Cæsārī nunciātūr, *Word is brought, it is announced, to Cæsar.*
 (b.) Rex sē nēgōtīūm confectūrūm pollicētūr, *The king promises to finish the business.*
 (c.) Latrōnēs sē rēgēm occīsūrōs esse mīnābantūr, *The robbers threatened to slay the king.*
 (d.) Impērātōr sē rēgēm fūtūrūm spērābāt, *The general hoped to be king.*

(Observe that after the verbs *hope, promise, and threaten*, the Latins use an infinitive proposition, while we use a complementary infinitive; but a complementary infinitive sometimes occurs with these verbs: as, *pollicentūr obsīdēs dārē.*)

- (e.) Mēmōriā (§ 166) tēnērē, *To remember.*
 (f.) Cæsār nēgāt sē possē, *Cæsar says that he cannot (denies that he can).*
 (g.) Turpē est rēgēm mentīrī, *It is base for a king to lie (that a king lie).*
 (h.) Constāt intēr omnēs, *All are aware (it is evident among all).*

- (i.) Dīcītūr Jūgurthām rēgēm essē, *It is said that Jugurtha is king.*
 (Impersonal construction.)
 Jūgurthā dīcītūr rex essē, *Jugurtha is said to be king.* (Personal construction.)

Translate into English.

Explōrātōrēs dicunt oppidūm āb hostībūs tēnērī. Caiūs fratrēm suūm magnō in pēriculō essē ānimadvertīt. Cēsārī¹ nōtūm est Dumnōrīgēm Helvētiīs² fāvērē. Rēgīnāe nunciābō tē vēnissē. Galbā āb explōrātōribūs certiōr³ factūs est Gallōs omnēs discessissē. Cēsārī nuntiātūm est Gallōs prōpiūs accēdērē āc lāpīdēs tēlāquē in nostrōs conjicērē. Nunciūs pollicētūr sē nēgōtiūm ex sententiā confectūrūm essē. Principēs spērābant sē tōtīūs Gallīae⁴ pōtīrī possē. Equītēs rēnūtiāvērunt oppidūm expugnātūm essē. Cēsār mēmōriā tēnēbāt Lūciūm Cassiūm consūlēm occīsūm, exercitūquē ejūs āb Helvētiīs pulsūm⁷ ēt sūb jūgūm missūm. Cēsār nēgāvīt sē Helvētiīs itēr pēr prōvinciām dārē possē. Ad eās rēs conficiendās⁵ Helvētiī bienniūm sibi² sātīs essē duxērunt. Æquūm est victōrēm parcērē victīs. Nōn sinē causā dictūm est divitiās ālās hābērē. Constāt intēr omnēs nēmīnēm sinē virtūtē possē beātūm⁶ essē.

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief threatened to slay (§ 189, Exc.) the women and children. Ariovistus declared that he would not return the hostages. Caesar said that he was not leading the army against his country. This base traitor will say that he has not announced our plans to the enemy. Who can assert that he has never violated the laws of

¹ § 141.

² § 142.

³ § 128 b.

⁴ § 159, note.

⁵ § 177.

⁶ § 174, Rem. 3.

⁷ § 126, Rem. 4.

6

God? Dumnorix asserted that he was about to seize the kingdom. *All were aware* that the robbers had slain the merchant. *It is not just for a rich man to oppress* the poor. *It is said* that in Africa men eat human flesh. The Belgians are said to be the bravest of all the Gauls. Word had been brought to Cæsar that the enemy had moved their camp, and had encamped at the foot of the mountain. Cæsar had said (*dīcĕrĕ*) that he would not neglect the injuries of the Æduans. The chief thought that he would compel the nobility by force. The consul hopes by these things to increase (§ 189, Exc. *d*) his property, and to acquire means for (*ad*) bribing.

CAUSAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 190. Dependent causal propositions are introduced by the causal conjunctions.

RULE XLVIII.—The subjunctive is used in causal propositions when a statement is made, not as a fact, but as the assertion or opinion of some one else: as, *Socrātēs accūsātūs est quōd corrupĕrĕt jūventūtēm*, Socrates was brought to trial *because (as men said) he corrupted* the youth.

Remark 1.—A verb of saying or thinking is sometimes expressed, and the subjunctive still retained by a species of attraction. What would have been the predicate of the causal sentence becomes the accusative with the infinitive. *Irātūs est Caiūs quōd dīcĕrĕt lĕgēs essĕ violātās*, instead of *irātūs est Caiūs quōd lĕgēs essent violātæ*, Caius was angry *because (as he alleged)* the laws had been violated.

Remark 2.—Dependent causal sentences are nouns, usually limiting the predicate like a causal ablative. The causal conjunctions *quōd*, *quīā*, etc. are relative words.

EXERCISE LXI.

§ 191. Vocabulary.

Liscūs, -ī, *Liscus*.grāvītēr, *severely*.quōd (conj.), *because*.tām (adv.), *so*.nēcessāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *necessary, critical*.prōpinquūs, -ā, -ūm, *near*.Hārūdēs, -ūm, *the Haradians*.quiā, *because (expressing a motive)*.quōniām (quum-jam), *since, because (as everybody knows)*.undē (rel. adv.), *whence, from which*.prēsens, -ent-īs, *present*.rēligiō, -ōn-īs, *religion, a row*.sūperstitiō, -ōn-īs, *superstition*.conciliūm, -ī, *council*.partīm (adv. § 31, Rem. 2), *partly*.prætēr mōdūm, *unduly, beyond measure*.rātiō, -ōn-īs, *plan, reason*.accūs-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to censure, accuse, bring to trial*.sub-lēv-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to relieve*.incūs-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to blame, censure*.intrō-dūc-ō, -ērē, -dux-ī, -duct-ūm, *to introduce*.corrump-ō, -ērē, corrup-ī, corrupt-ūm, *to corrupt*.re-prēhend-ō, -ērē, reprēhend-ī, reprēhens-ūm, *to rebuke*.vāc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to be unoccupied*.jact-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to toss about, to discuss*.

EXAMPLES.

Rēs itā sē hābēt,

This is the case (the thing thus has itself).

Multis prēsentiūbūs (§ 186),

In the presence of many.

Civitatī (§ 142) consūlērē,

*To consult for, look to, the state.**Translate into English.*

Cæsār, principibūs convocātis, Divitiacūm et Liscūm gravitēr accūsāt quōd tām nēcessariō tempōrē, tām propinquīs hostibūs¹ ab iis nōn sublēvētūr; multō² etiām graviūs, quōd ab iis sit destitūtus quērītūr. Æduī lēgātōs misērunt questūm³ quōd Hārūdēs āgrōs eōrūm pōpūlārentūr. Socrātēs necātus est, nōn quōd jūventutēm corrupērēt et nōvās

¹ § 186, Rem. 1.² § 168.³ § 179 a.

sūperstītiōnēs *intrōdūcērēt*, sēd *quīā* Athēniensēs dē scēlērībūs *reprēhendēbāt*. Id eā rātiōnē Cēsār fēcīt; quōd nōlēbāt eūm lōcūm undē¹ Helvētiī discessērant vācārē.² Dumnōrix sē īn Galliā rēlinquī² vōlēbāt, partīm *quōd* insuētūs nāvīgandī³ mārē *tīmērēt*, partīm *quōd* rēligiōnībūs *impēdīrētūr*. Cēsār, concīliō convōcātō, centūriōnēs omniūm ordīnūm⁴ vēhēmētēr incūsāvīt *quōd* dē rēbūs mīnīmē ād eōs pertinentībūs⁵ sententiām *dixissent*. Quōniām cīvītātī consūlērē nōn possūm, mīhī consūlām. Quōniām rēs itā sē hābēt, īn urbēm rēdeāmūs.⁶

Translate into Latin.

¹ Cæsar cut down the bridge which he had built (see § 180, examples) over the Rhine, because he was unwilling for the Germans to follow him into Gaul. Was not Aristides banished from his country because (*as men thought*) he was unduly just? ² The Æduans complained that (*because*) Ariovistus had (*as they alleged*) led a great army of Germans across the Rhine. Cæsar, because he was unwilling (*a fact*) for these things to be discussed in the presence of the ambassadors, quickly dismissed the council. ³ The consul said that, since he could not consult for the state, he would look to his own safety. — You desire to slay me, not because (*as you allege*) I have violated the laws of the commonwealth, but because I have rebuked you severely for your crimes. ⁴ The shepherd blamed his son strongly, because he had neglected to shear the sheep. ⁵ Since this is the case, let us set out. ⁶ Liscus said that, since such was the case, he would speak a few things.

¹ § 129, *Rem.* 10.

² § 188.

³ § 135 *a.*

⁴ § 132.

⁵ § 185, 2 *a.*

⁶ § 183, *Rem.*

FINAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 192. Final propositions express a *purpose* or *result* (the end to which an action tends), and are introduced by the final conjunctions *ut*, *nē*, *quō*, *quīn*, *quōmīnūs*.

§ 193. RULE XLIX.—The predicate of a final proposition is in the subjunctive: as, *vēnī ut vīdeām*, I have come *to see*.

NOTE.—As a purpose has reference to the future, and is not a *fact*, but something conceived in the mind, it is purely subjective, and should obviously be expressed by the subjunctive. A result is a *purpose accomplished*, and was regarded by the Latins not so much in the character of a fact, as of what was intended to follow, or would naturally be expected to follow, in the circumstances: they give it, therefore, the shape which it was supposed to have before it became a result; and hence the use of the subjunctive.

Remark 1.—*Ut* or *utī* expresses either a purpose or a result. *Vēnī ut vīdeām*, I have come *to see* (*that I may see*). *Eō impētū milītēs ierunt ut hostēs sē fūgæ mandārent*, the soldiers went with such violence *that the enemy took to flight*.

Remark 2.—(a.) *Nē* always expresses a purpose (*that — not, lest*). *Tē obsēcro nē hoc faciās*, I beseech you *not to do this*.

A negative result must be expressed by *ut — nōn*.

(b.) With verbs of fearing, *nē* is translated *that*, and *ut*, *that — not*, the final sentence being constructed with reference to the *contrary purpose* or *hope* implied in the verb of fearing. *Tīmeo nē mōriātūr*, I am afraid *that he will die*. (*It is my purpose that he shall not.*) *Tīmeo ut mōriātūr*, I am afraid *that he will not die*. (*It is my purpose that he shall.*)

Nē — nōn is sometimes used instead of *ut* for emphasis, especially after a negative: as, *nōn vēreōr nē tuā virtūs, opīniōnī hōmīnūm nōn respondeāt*, I am not afraid *that your valor will not answer the expectation of men*.

Remark 3.—*Quō*, *that*, is generally used in preference to *ut*, when a comparative enters the sentence. *Cæsār pontē fēcīt quō faciiliūs flūmēn transirēt*.

Remark 4.—*Quīn*, but *that*, but *that* — not (= *quī nōn* or *ūt — nōn*), is used with negative expressions, and expressions of doubt. *Nemo est quīn pūtēt*, there is no one *who does not think*. *Nemo tām impēritūs est quīn pūtēt*, no one is so foolish *as not to think*.

Remark 5.—*Quōmīnūs*, *that* — *not*, is often used with expressions of hindering, instead of *nē*. *Nihil Caiō obstat quōmīnūs scribāt*, nothing *hinders Caius from writing*.

Quīn is sometimes used if a negative precedes.

Remark 6.—*Ut* is often omitted after *volo* and verbs of *permitting, asking, advising, commanding, reminding*.

Nē is often omitted after *cavē*.

Remark 7.—A final proposition is usually a noun, though a result may be an adverb limiting *sic, itā, tām, tantūs*, etc. *Ut* in the sense of *as* is always a relative.

EXERCISE LXII. (*Ūt; Nē; Quō.*)

§ 194. Vocabulary.

commūtātiō, -ōn-īs, <i>change</i> .	mōtūs, -ūs, <i>movement, insurrection</i> .
ālācritās, -tāt-īs, <i>cheerfulness</i> .	collōquī, -lōcūtūs, <i>to confer, converse</i> .
mortī-fēr, -ā, -ūm, <i>mortal, deadly</i> .	ex ēquīs or ēquō, <i>on horseback</i> .
pristīnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>former</i> .	ītēm (conj.), <i>likewise</i> .
commūnicātiō, -ōn-īs, <i>communication</i> .	sūbitō (adv.), <i>suddenly</i> .
neu, or nēvē (cop. fin. conj.), and <i>that not, nor (after a final sentence)</i> .	ūnā (<i>partē</i> , § 166), (adv.), <i>together</i> .
	contīnens, -ent-īs, <i>continent</i> .

ad-dūc-ō, -ērē, addux-ī, adduct-ūm, *to lead against*.

præcip-i-ō, -ērē, præcep-ī, præcept-ūm, *to instruct, enjoin*.

ē-dīc-ō, -ērē, ēdix-ī, ēdict-ūm, *to issue an edict*.

in-stītu-ō, -ērē, instītu-ī, instītūt-ūm, *to instruct, teach*.

incend-ō, -ērē, incend-ī, incens-ūm, *to set on fire*.

ex-ūr-ō, -ērē, exuss-ī, exust-ūm, *to burn up*.

in-nasc-ōr, -ī, innāt-ūs, *to spring up*.

tīm-eō, -ērē, tīmu-ī, *to fear (as a coward)*.

mētū-ō, -ērē, mētū-ī, *to fear, to be apprehensive*.

vēr-eōr, -ērī, vērit-ūs, *to feel awe of, to fear*. (As *tīmeo* and *mētuo* have no supine stem, the parts formed from that stem are supplied by *vērēor* in either sense.)

cōquō, -ērē, cox-ī, coct-ūm, *to cook.*

pāc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to subdue.*

impēr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm (intr.), *to command, order.*

EXAMPLES.

	Negative Purpose.	Negative Result.
<i>That — no, that — not any,</i>	Nē quis (§ 89, Rem. 2),	Ut nullūs.
<i>That no one,</i>	Nē quis,	Ut nēmō.
<i>That no one at all,</i>	Nē quisquā,	Ut nēmō omnium.
<i>That — never,</i>	Nē unquā,	Ut nunquā.
<i>That nothing,</i>	Nē quid,	Ut nihil.

Tantā vīs prōbītātis est ut eām vėl in hostē dīlīgāmūs, *So great is the power of honesty, that we love it even in an enemy.*

N.B.—*In final propositions of result, the subjunctive is translated like the indicative of the same tense.*

Opērām dārē,	<i>To take care.</i>
Præceptūm est,	<i>Instructions were given (§ 114, 5).</i>
Edictūm est,	<i>An edict was issued (114, 5).</i>
Pātēr filiō præcepīt nē unquā mentīrētūr,	<i>The father instructed his son never to lie.</i>
Dōmīnūs servō impērāvīt ut ēquūm infrēnārēt,	<i>The master commanded the servant to bridle the horse.</i>
Dōmīnūs servō impērāvīt nē ēquūm infrēnārēt,	<i>The master ordered the servant not to bridle the horse.</i>

Translate into English.

Id mīhī sic ērīt grātūm ut grātiūs¹ essē nīhīl possīt. Eā nōn ut tē instituērēm scripsī. Cæsār castellā commūnīt, quō faciiliūs Helvētiōs prōhibērē possīt. Oppīdānī multīs cūm lacrymīs impērātōrēm obsecrābant nē oppīdūm incendērēt. Præceptūm ērāt Lābiēnō nē praeliūm committērēt. Essē² nōs oportēt ut vivāmūs, nōn vivērē ut ēdāmūs. In eō itīnērē Orgētōrix persuāsīt Castīcō³ ut regnūm in civitatē suā occupārēt; itēquē Dumnōrigī³ Æduō, fratrī⁴ Divītī-ācī, ut idēm cōnārētūr persuāsīt. Raūrācīs³ persuāsūm

¹ § 174, Rem. 4.

² § 111, 8.

³ § 141.

⁴ § 127.

erāt¹ ūtī, oppidīs suīs vicisque exustīs,² ūnā cūm Helvētiīs *proficiscerentūr*. Consūl ēdixīt *nē* quisquām in castrīs coctūm cibūm *venderēt*. Tantūs tīmōr omnēm exercitūm sūbitō occūpāvit *ūt* omniūm ānimōs *perturbārēt*. Hāc ōrātiōnē hābitā,² tantā commūtātiō factā est *ūt* summā ālācritās ēt cūpīditās bellī gērendī³ *innātā essēt*. Lēgēm brēvēm essē⁴ oportēt *quō* faciiliūs āb impērītis tēneātūr. Consūl milītībūs impērāvīt *nē* quēm cīvēm *interficerent*. Cēsār vēritūs *nē* quīs mōtūs in Galliā *fierēt*, Labiēnūm in continentē rēliquit. Milītēs mētūunt *nē* mortīfērūm⁵ *sīt* vulnūs Scīpiōnīs. Tīmeō *ūt* fratrēs mei ād urbēm *pervēniant*. Cēsār milītēs cōhortātūs est *ūt* sūæ pristīnæ virtūtīs mēmōriām *rētīnerent*, *nē* *perturbarentūr* ānimō.⁶ Opērā dābātūr *nē* quōd iīs⁷ collōquiūm intēr sē, *nē*vē commūnicātiō essēt.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy ran forward so swiftly *that time was not given* to our men for throwing their darts. So great a panic took possession of the citizens *that no man was able* to take up arms. An edict has been issued *that no one leave* the town. Instructions had been given to the horsemen *not to pursue* the enemy too far. Wise men *eat to live*, but fools and gluttons *live to eat*. I advise you, my son, *never to believe* a liar. Balbus is such a liar (*so lying*) *that he is never believed* (*it is never believed to him*). I fear *that some one* has announced our plans to the enemy. Ariovistus demanded *that they should confer* on horseback, *and not bring* more (*ampliūs*) than ten horsemen apiece to the conference. The Belgians, fearing (*having feared*) *that if all Gaul were subdued* (*abl. abs.*) the army of the Romans

¹ § 172, Rem. 2.

² § 186.

³ § 177.

⁴ § 188.

⁵ § 128 b.

⁶ § 161.

⁷ § 143.

would be led against (*ād*) them, collected great forces. The citizens feared that the auxiliaries would not reach the city. Cæsar commanded (*impērārē*) the soldiers to run forward swiftly, and not give the enemy time for collecting themselves. Ariovistus said that he feared that snares were prepared for him. It has been said that brave men do not fear death. The consul thought that Catiline had formed the design of setting the city on fire. An edict was issued that no bread (*nothing of bread*) should be introduced into the camp.

EXERCISE LXIII. (*Quīn; Quōmīnūs.*)

§ 195. Vocabulary.

dūbiūs, -ā, -ūm, *doubtful.*compell-ārē, *to call, address.*dūbit-ārē, *to doubt.*conjunctiō, -ōn-īs, *friendship, intimacy.*āvōc-ārē, *to call away, separate.*investīg-ārē, *to investigate.*Cīmōn, -ōn-īs, *Cimon.*fl-eō, flērē, flēv-ī, flēt-ūm, *to weep.*ob-st-ō, obst-ārē, obstīt-ī, obstīt-ūm (*intr.*), *to stand in front of, hinder, prevent.*im-pēd-iō, -īrē, -īvī, -ītūm (*tr.*), *to tangle the feet, hinder, prevent.*dē-terr-eō, -ērē, dēterru-ī, dēterrīt-ūm, *to frighten off, deter, prevent.*præter-mitt-ō, -ērē, -mīs-ī, -miss-ūm, *to pass by, leave undone.*circum-vēn-iō, -īrē, -vēn-ī, -vent-ūm, *to surround.*bib-ō, -ērē, bib-ī, bībīt-ūm, *to drink.*ad-spīc-i-ō, -ērē, adspex-ī, adspēct-ūm, *to look at.*im-pōn-ō, -ērē, impōsu-ī, impōsīt-ūm, *to post, place.*fru-ōr, fru-ī, fruct-ūs, *to enjoy.*custōs, custōd-īs, *guard.*ītāquē (*conj.*), and so, therefore.haud multūm (§ 153), *not much, not far.*Parmēniō, -ōn-īs, *Parmenio.*mēdicūs, -ī, *physician.*mēdicāmentūm, -ī, *dose of medicine.*

EXAMPLES.

Fiērī nōn pōtest quīn ventūrūs sīt,	{	<i>It cannot be that he is not going to come (but that he is going to come);</i>
		<i>he is certainly going to come.</i>
Nunquām Balbūm adspexit quīn frātrīcidām compellārēt,		<i>He never saw Balbus without calling him a fratricide.</i>

Militēs rētīnērē nōn possūm quīn cur- *I cannot restrain the soldiers*
rant, *from running.*

Fācērē or mīhī } nōn possūm quīn fleām, *I cannot help weeping.*
tempērārē, }

Nōn est dūbiūm } quīn Deūs mun- } *There is no doubt* } that God
Nēgārī nōn pōtest } dūm rēgāt, } *It cannot be denied* } rules the
Quīs dūbītāt } } *Who doubts* } world.

After the above expressions, *quīn* must be translated *that*.

Nihīl prātermīsī quīn ād tē vēniām, *I have left nothing undone to come to*
you.

Nihīl Cāiō obstāt quōmīnūs vēniāt, } *Nothing hinders Caius from coming.*
Nihīl obstāt quōmīnūs Cāiūs vēniāt, }

Pēr mē stāt quōmīnūs vēniās, *It is my fault that you do not come.*

Quid tē impēdīvīt quōmīnūs vēnīrēs, *What prevented you from coming?*

Mīmīmūm (§ 153) abfuit quīn cādērēt, *He was very near falling.*

Translate into English.

Nōn dūbiūm est quīn virtūs summūm sīt bōnūm.¹ Bal-
būm nunquām adspexit quīn prōdītōrēm² compellārēt.
Fiērī nōn pōtest quīn ālii ā nōbīs dissēntiant. Nōn dū-
bītāvīt Adherbāl quīn Jūgurthā eūm interficērē cōnārētūr.
Quīs dūbītārē pōtest quīn multō³ turpiūs sīt fallērē⁴ quām
fallī? Germānī rētīnērī nōn pōtuērunt quīn īn nostrōs
tēlā conjicērent. Pēr Consīdiūm stētīt quōmīnūs Cēsār
Helvētiōs circumvēnīrēt. Orgētōrix nōn dūbītāt quīn brēvī
tempōrē⁵ tōtiūs Galliæ regnūm occūpātūrūs sīt. Altītūdō
flūmīnīs hostēs dēterrēbāt quōmīnūs transīrē cōnārentūr.
Nihīl prātermīsīt Cīcērō quīn Pompēiūm ā Cēsārīs con-
junctiōnē āvocārēt. Nihīl tā m diffīcīlē est quīn quārendō
īnvestigārī possīt. Cīmōn nunquām īn hortīs custōdēm
impōsuit, nē quīs impēdirētūr quōmīnūs fructībūs⁶ fruērē-
tūr. Parmēniō audīvērāt vēnēnūm ā Phīlippi mēdicō
rēgī⁷ pārārī;⁸ itāquē ēpistōlā scriptā⁹ eūm dēterrērē

¹ § 128, Rem. 5.

² § 151 b.

³ § 168.

⁴ § 173.

⁵ § 167, Rem. 1.

⁶ § 159, Rem. 6.

⁷ § 141.

⁸ § 188.

⁹ § 186.

vōluīt quōmīnūs mēdicāmentūm bibērēt quōd mēdicūs dārē constituērāt.

Translate into Latin.

It cannot be denied that Cæsar was (a man) of the greatest courage. Who can doubt that our men are able to sustain the attack of the enemy (for) many months? The general *will certainly* relieve us in a few days. It cannot be denied that your son was born many years (§ 167, *Rem.* 2) after the building (§ 185, 3 *c*) of the city. I never converse with you *without becoming* wiser. What hinders us *from persuading* Marius *not to storm* the town? It was not Cicero's fault that Pompey was not separated from intimacy with (of) Cæsar. The army was not far *from being beaten* and *sent* under the yoke. The soldiers could not be restrained *from running forward* with a great shout. Orgetorix was not far *from getting possession* of the government of all Gaul. There is no man *but knows* that all things are ruled by God. The queen could not help *weeping*.

CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 196. Conditional propositions express a condition, and are introduced by the conditional conjunctions *sī*, if; *nīsī* or *nī*, unless, if — not; *sīn*, but if; *dūm*, *mōdō*, *dummōdō*, provided.

The complement of the condition is called the *conclusion*.

§ 197. RULE L.—(a.) If the condition is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used both in the condition and conclusion.

Sī vērā dīcīs, lēgēs viōlāvī, { If you speak the truth (of which I have no doubt), I have broken the laws.

(b.) If the condition is represented as *possible* or

likely to be realized, the subjunctive present or perfect is used in the condition, and the indicative (generally future) in the conclusion. (*Indeterminate Condition.*)

Sī pecūniām habēāt, dābit, If he has the money, he will give it.
Sī mihī pecūniām dēdērūt, ibō, { If he will give (shall have given) me the money, I will go. (The money must be given before I go.)

(c.) If the *non-existence* of the condition is implied, the subjunctive is used both in the condition and conclusion, the imperfect for present or future time, the past-perfect for past time.

Sī pecūniām habērēt, dārēt, { If he had money (now), he would give it.
 If he should have money (at any future time), he would give it.
Sī pecūniām habuissēt, dēdiissēt, { If he had had money, he would have given it. (Past time.)

Remark 1.—On the same principle, the subjunctive present or present-perfect is used to express a possible wish, the imperfect or past-perfect to express a vain wish.

Ūtinām filiūs { *vivāt!*
vivērēt!
vixissēt! *Oh that my son* { *may live!*
were living!
had lived!

Remark 2.—The condition is sometimes—

(a.) Implied in some other expression: as, *sīnē cibō nēmo vivērē possēt*, no one would be able to live *without food*; or,

(b.) Altogether suppressed, in which case the indicative imperfect is frequently used: as, *sātius ērāt mōrī quān mentīrī*, it would be better (if necessary) to die than to lie.

Remark 3.—When the non-existence of the condition is implied, the indicative (especially the imperfects *dēcēbāt*, *oportēbāt*, *dēbēbām*, *pōtērām*, and *ērām* with a gerundive or adjective) is sometimes used in the conclusion: as, *sī victōriā dūbiā essēt tāmēn omnēs bonōs reipublice subvenīrē dēcēbāt*, if the victory were doubtful, yet all good men *ought* to come to the assistance of the state.

Remark 4.—The use of the imperfect or past-perfect in a conditional sentence does not necessarily imply the non-existence of

the condition, as they are often used simply because the leading verb is past, and not because the character of the condition requires their use. (See § 184.)

Remark 5.—In a mere supposition the present subjunctive is often used, both in condition and conclusion. *Nec sī sciām dicērē ausim*, and if I knew I would not dare to say.

Remark 6.—The conclusion is a principal or a dependent proposition, according to the construction of the sentence in which it stands.

Sī vērā dicīs, lēgēs violāvī.

Caiūs confessūs est eē, sī frātēr vērā dicērēt, lēgēs violāvissē.

Remark 7.—If the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can follow, the Latins use a perfect tense where in English we use a present. as, *sī hoc fēcēris, tē āmābo*, if you do (shall have done) *this*, I will love you. (The *doing* must be accomplished before the *loving*.)

Remark 8.—A conditional proposition is an adverb, limiting the predicate of the conclusion.

EXERCISE LXIV.

§ 198. Vocabulary.

præceptūm, -ī, precept.

inimicitia, -æ, enmity.

adhuc (adv.), still, yet.

mātūrē (adv.), soon.

ūtīnām (interj.), Oh that! I wish that.

stipendiūm, -ī, tribute, tax.

quōtannīs (adv.), yearly.

in-cīt-ārē, to arouse.

perpētūus, -ā, -ūm, unending.

invīt-ārē, to invite.

vērā dicērē, to speak truth (true things).

subvēnīrē ālicuī, to come to one's assistance.

mīnu-ō, -ērē, mīnu-ī, mīnūt-ūm, to make less, weaken.

exerc-eō, -ērē, exercu-ī, exercīt-ūm, to exercise.

sūbīg-ō, -ērē, sūbēg-ī, sūbact-ūm, to subjugate.

lācess-ō, -ērē, lācessīv-ī, lācessīt-ūm, to provoke.

injūriā lācessērē, to provoke by injury, to injure.

dōl-eō, dōl-ērē, dōlu-ī, dōlīt-ūm, to grieve.

con-vēn-iō, -īrē, convēn-ī, convent-ūm, to agree.

pend-ō, pendērē, pēpend-ī, pens-ūm, to weigh, to pay.

respond-eō, -ērē, respond-ī, respons-ūm, to answer.

cāv-eō, -ērē, cāv-ī, caut-ūm, to avoid.

Translate into English.

Mēmōriā mīnuītūr nīsī eām *exerceās*. Sī Helvētīi flū-
mēn transīrē cōnentūr, Cēsār eōs prōhībēbīt. Cēsār
Æduīs bellūm intūlissēt nīsī obsīdēs mīsissent. Alexandēr,
sī diūtīus *vixissēt*, tōtūm orbēm terrārūm sūbēgissēt. Utī-
nām pātēr meūs *vīvāt*! Utīnām rex *vivērēt*! Cēsār āl-
Ariōvistō postulāvīt nē quām¹ multītūdīnēm hōmīnūm īn
Galliām *transdūcērēt*,² nēvē Æduōs injūriā³ lācessērēt² nēvē
hīs sōciisquē eōrūm bellūm *inferrēt*,² “Sī id itā fēcērīs,”
īnquīt, “mīhī⁴ pōpūlōquē Rōmānō perpētūā āmicītiā tēcūm
ērīt.” Ad hēc Ariōvistūs respondīt: “Æduīs⁵ injūriā³
bellūm nōn infērām, sī īn eō quōd convēnērunt māneant,
stīpendiumquē quōtannīs *pendant*.” Nīsī tē sātīs incītā-
tūm essē⁶ *confīdērēm*, plūrā *scribērēm*. Sīnē ferrō⁷ fiērī
nōn possēt (*it would be impossible*) ūt āgrī colērentūr.
Impērātōrē interfectō⁷ fiērī nōn pōtest quīn exercītūs
pellātūr. Sī vīs mē flērē, prīmūm dōlendūm est⁸ ipsī
tībī.⁹

Translate into Latin.

If you speak the truth, Cato has done (to) you a great injury. If this is the case (§ 191, Ex.). I will set out immediately to Rome. No man can be happy, *unless* his life is ruled by the precepts of virtue. If Cæsar had been able to avoid these enmities, he *would be* still living. If I knew, I *would say*. If you live well, you will die happily. I wish you had come a little (§ 168) sooner. Ariovistus *would not have led* his army across the Rhine unless he had been invited by the Sequanians. It would be impossible to believe this report *if we did not know* that the

¹ § 89.⁴ § 143.⁷ § 197, Rem. 2, a.² § 193.⁵ § 141.⁸ § 178.³ § 159.⁶ § 188.⁹ § 145.

messenger always speaks the truth. If I *had known* your danger, I *would have come* to your assistance. If I go to Rome, I will send you the money which you demand. If the Helvetians *had endeavored* to cross the river, Cæsar *would have prevented* them. Ariovistus *would not be waging* war on the Æduans if they *had paid* the tribute. Without an army it is *impossible* to wage war (*it cannot happen that war be waged*).

CONCESSIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 199. Concessive propositions express something *granted* or *yielded*, and are introduced by the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quanquā*m, *tāmet*sī, *tāmē*netsī, *ēt*iamsī, *licet*, *quamvīs*, *quantumvīs*, *quamlibet*, *ut* and *quum* in the sense of *although*, etc., with the general meaning *although*.

§ 200. RULE LI.—(a.) If the thing granted is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used, generally with *quanquā*m, *etsi*, or *tāmet*sī: as, *Rōmānī, quanquā*m *fessī erant, tāmē*n *instructī prōcēdunt*, the Romans, though they were weary, yet march in order of battle.

(b.) A concession merely for argument's sake, or where the non-existence of the thing granted is implied (a mere conception), is expressed by the subjunctive, usually with *quamvīs* or *licet*, sometimes with *ēt*iamsī or *etsi*: as, *mendāciū*m, *quamvīs* *occultētūr, tāmē*n *turpē est*, a falsehood, *though it be concealed*, is nevertheless base.

Remark 1.—The complement of a concessive sentence is an adversative proposition introduced by *tāmē*n.

Remark 2.—*Quanquā*m is properly the accusative singular feminine of *quisquīs* (*rēm* being understood): thus, (a.) *In respect to whatever thing the Romans were weary*, etc.

Remark 3.—*Etsi, tāmetsi, etiamsi* (*even if*), and *ūt* in the sense of *even if, although*, are properly conditional conjunctions, the mood to be used depending upon the character of the condition. (See § 197.)

Remark 4.—*Quamvis, quantumlibet, quamlibet*, are properly relative pronouns (*as much as you please, however much*). Thus, in example (b), a falsehood, *however much it may be concealed, let it be concealed as much as you please*, etc. (See § 210, *Rem. 3.*)

Remark 5.—*Licet* is an impersonal verb, *ūt* being omitted: as, *frēmant omnēs licet, dicām quōd sentio*, though all cry out (*it is allowed that all cry out*), I will say what I think.

Remark 6.—The subjunctive is always used with *ūt* or *quūm* concessive.

Remark 7.—Concessive propositions are adverbs.

EXERCISE LXV.

§ 201. Vocabulary.

- | | |
|--|--|
| occult-ārē, to conceal. | —strēnuūs, -ā, -ūm, brisk, active. |
| fessūs, -ā, -ūm, weary. | Itālīcūs, -ī, Italian. |
| nondūm (adv.), not yet. | —pēnēs (prep.), with, in the power of. |
| tāmōn (conj.), nevertheless, yet. | dēditīō, -ōn-īs, surrender. |
| ēmōlūmentūm, -ī, advantage. | advers-ārī, to resist, object. |
| crebrō (adv.), frequently. | sīc (adv.), thus. |
| pūt-ārē, to think. | |
| —cognosc-ō, -ērē, cognōv-ī, cognīt-ūm, to find out. | |
| accīd-ō, -ērē, accīd-ī, —, to happen. | |
| con-sēquōr, -ī, consēcūtūs, to follow, pursue and overtake, attain. | |
| ne-sc-īō, nesc-īrē, nescīv-ī, nescīt-ūm, not to know. | |
| —suād-eō, -ērē, suās-ī, suās-ūm, to advise. | |
| reōr, rērī, rātūs, to think, deem. | |
| trans-eō (§ 111, 9), -īrē, transi-ī, transīt-ūm, to pass away. | |
| —vīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to shun, to escape. | |
| pōtiōr, pōtiūs (superl. pōtissimūs, from pōtis), better, preferable. | |

Translate into English.

Quōd turpē est, id,¹ *quamvis occultētūr*, hōnestūm² fiērī

¹ § 87, 6

² § 174, *Rem. 4.*

nullō mōdō pōtest. Nostri milites *quanquām* itinēre et proelio fessi *erant*, tamen, consule imperante,¹ ad summum² collē celerritē prōcurrerunt. Cēsār, *etsi* nondū eōrū consilia *cognōverāt*, tamen fere id quod accidit suspicabātūr. Viri boni multā³ ob eam causam faciunt, quod decet, *etsi* nullū consēcūtūrū emolumentū *vident*. Quod⁴ crebrō aliquis videt, nō mirātūr, *etiamsi* causam *nescit*. Licet strenuū mētū putes esse, velocior tamen spēs est. Italicī Adherbalī⁵ suadent uti sē et oppidū Jūgurthae tradāt; at illē, *tametsi* omniā potiōrā⁶ fidē⁷ Jūgurthae rēbātūr, tamen, quia pēs Italicōs, sī adversarētūr,⁸ cōgendi pōtestas erat, deditiōnem facit.⁸ Divitiæ, *quamvis* magnæ sint, tamen alās habent. *Quamvis* prudens atque sapiens sis, mortē vitare nullō mōdō potēs: sic transit glōriā mundi.

COMPARATIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 202. Comparative propositions express comparison, and are introduced by comparative conjunctions (*than*, *as*), *quām*, *ut* (*as*), *sicut*, *velut*, *prout*, *tanquām*, *quāsi*, *ut*, *acsi*, *ceu*; with *ac* and *atque* (*as* or *than*).

§ 203. RULE LII.—In comparative sentences,—

(a.) A *fact* is expressed by the indicative: *as*, *quām maximās* pōtest cōpiās cōgit, he collects as great forces as he can.

(b.) A *mere conception*, and not a fact, is expressed by the subjunctive: *as*, *mē adspicītis* quāsi monstrū sim, you gaze at me as if I were a monster.

Remark 1.—The comparative conjunctions are for the most

¹ § 186.

² § 128, *Rem. 8.*

³ § 128, *Rem. 5.*

⁴ § 129, *Rem. 2.*

⁵ § 141.

⁶ § 151 *b.*

⁷ § 165.

⁸ § 197, *Rem. 4.*

part either relative or conditional words. Thus, *quām*, *than*, is a relative, *rēm* being understood. *Cicēro ēlōquentiōr fuit quām (rēm) Cæsār (ēlōquens fuit)*. *In respect-to-what Cæsar was eloquent*, Cicero was more eloquent; *i.e. Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar*. So, in example (a), (*cōpiās cōgīt (tām) maxīmās quām pōtest*, he collects forces very great *in that degree in which degree he can*), *quām* is an adverbial relative, *tām* understood being its antecedent; or it may be considered an accusative singular feminine of *quī*, *rēm* being understood: *cōpiās quām (rēm) pōtest maxīmās*, forces very great in what respect he can, *i.e. as great as possible*. The position of the superlative is the regular one. (See § 129, *Rem. 6.*) In the example, *īn hortō ambulābām sicut meīs est mōs* (— as my custom is), *sic* is an adverbial demonstrative limiting *ambulābām*, and *ut* an adverbial relative having *sic* as its antecedent; (*īn hortō eō mōdō ambulābām quō mōdō meīs est mōs ambulārē*). In example (b), *quām* (*quāsi* = *quām sī*) is a relative, and *sī* a conditional conjunction. *Mē adspicītis quām (adspicērētis) sī monstrūm essēm*, you gaze at me as (*you would gaze*) if I were a monster. It will be observed, however, that, as the leading verb is present, the present is used in the comparative proposition (*sīm*, not *essēm*), though the non-existence of the condition is implied.

Remark 2.—In comparative propositions, the subjunctive is mostly translated by the indicative.

Remark 3.—Comparative propositions are adverbs.

EXERCISE LXVI.

Vocabulary.

quāsi (*quām-sī*), as if.

pērindē (adv.), in the same manner,
precisely, just, exactly.

ālītēr (adv.), otherwise.

āc or *atquē* (after *ālītēr*), than;
(after *pērindē*), as.

hōnōr, -ōr-is, office, honor.

hōnōrēs pōpūlī, offices given by the
people.

vēlūtī (*vēl-ūtī*), even so, just as.

Græcūs, -ā, -ūm, Greek.

lītērā, -æ, a letter of the alphabet;
pl. literature.

āvidē (adv.), eagerly.

diūturnūs, -ā, -ūm, long, lasting.

impērātūm, -ī, order, command.

ītā (adv.), so.

ops (nom. obs. § 51), ōp-is, help, might.

sicūtī or sicūt (sic-ūtī), *so as, rātiō, -ōn-īs, plan.*

just as.

summā ōpē, *with all one's might.*

tanquām or tamquām (tām, *so, silentiūm, -ī, silence.*

quām, *as), so as, just as.*

vītām transirē, *to pass one's life.*

pecūs, -ōris, *flock, herd; pl. cattle. agmēn, -īn-īs, an army on the march.*

ex-pl-eō, ērē, explēv-ī, explēt-ūm, *to fill, satisfy.*

con-temn-ō, ērē, contemps-ī, contempt-ūm, *to despise.*

nīt-ōr, nīt-ī, nix-ūs and nīs-ūs, *to strive.*

dē-fēr-ō, dē-ferrē, dē-tul-ī, dē-lāt-ūm, *to carry (from one to another), to report.*

ē-vēn-iō, -īrē, ēvēn-ī, ēvent-ūm, *to turn out, result.*

sub-sēquor, subsēquī, subsēcūt-ūs, *to follow closely.*

Translate into English.

Græcās lītērās sic āvidē arrīpuī, *quāsī* diūturnām sītīm explērē cūpērēm. Meā īn dōmō impērātā tuā dicīs, pērindē *quāsī* dōmīnūs sīs. Hōmīnēs corruptī¹ sūperbiā² itā ætātēm āgunt, *quāsī* pōpūlī hōnōrēs contemnant; itā hōs (hōnōrēs) pētunt *quāsī* hōnestē vixērīnt. Sicūtī dixī faciām. Pātēr meūs septīmā hōrā³ rēdībīt, *sicūt pollicītūs est.* Mālā fortūnā tībī accidīt, *tanquām* mīhī (accidīt). Hōmīnēs summā ōpē⁴ nītī⁵ dēcēt, nē vītām silentiō⁴ transeant⁶ *vēlūtī* pēcōrā (vītām transeunt). Rēs ēvēnīt nōn pērindē *atquē* pūtāvērām. Cæsār, ēquītātū præmissō,⁷ subsēquēbātūr omnībūs cōpiīs; sēd rātiō ordōquē agmīnīs ālītēr sē hābēbāt *ac* Belgæ ād Nerviōs dētūlērānt.

TEMPORAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 204. Temporal propositions point out the time of an action, and are introduced by the temporal conjunctions *ūt, ubi, quūm, when; postquām, posteaquām, after;*

¹ § 185, 2 a.

² § 159.

³ § 167.

⁴ § 159.

⁵ § 173.

⁶ § 193.

⁷ § 186

antēquām, *priusquām*, before ; *quandō*, when, whenever ; *quōtiēs*, as often as ; *quamdiū*, as long as ; *sīmūlac*, *sīmūl*, as soon as ; *dūm*, *dōnēc*, *quoad*, while, as long as, until.

NOTE 1.—In the narration of facts, the indicative will of course be used in temporal propositions : as, *postquām in urbem vēnīt*, after he came into the city.

NOTE 2.—The adverbial relative *quūm* or *cūm* (at what time, when, while) frequently has also a *causal* or *concessive* force, *since*, *although*. As a pure particle of time, it takes the indicative, but is also followed by the subjunctive imperfect or past-perfect in the narration of past facts, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence. When the subjunctive is used, however, the idea of cause is usually combined with that of time. *Quūm*, *causal* or *concessive*, always takes the subjunctive. Hence,—

§ 205. RULE LIII.—The subjunctive is always used—
(a) with *QUŪM causal* or *concessive* ; (b) frequently also with *QUŪM temporal*, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence.

(a.) *Quæ quūm itā sint*, since these things are so.

(a.) *Cērēs frūmentā invēnīt*, *quūm antea hōmīnēs glandībūs vescērentūr*, Ceres invented grains, *whereas* men before lived on acorns.

(b.) *Quūm nostrī armā cēpissent*, *hostēs sē rēcēpērunt*, when our men had taken up arms, the enemy retreated. (Here *quūm cēpissent* points out both the time and the cause of the enemy's retreat.)

§ 206. RULE LIV.—With *antēquām* and *priusquām*—
(a) the indicative is used to express the simple priority of one action to another (both having actually been performed).

Filiōs convōcāvīt antēquām mortuū est, he called together his sons before he died.

(b.) The subjunctive is used—(1.) when the action is future and doubtful ; (2.) when the non-existence of the action is implied ; (3.) in indefinite general expressions.

(1.) *Cæsār, priusquā quidquā cōnārētūr, Divitiācū vocāvīt,* *Cæsar, before he attempted any thing, called Divitiacus.*

(The *attempting* was future to the *calling*, and dependent upon the result of Cæsar's interview with Divitiacus.)

(2.) *Priūs ād hostiū castrā per- He reached the enemy's camp before*
vēnīt, quā Germānī quid āgērētūr the Germans could find out what was
sentīrē possent, *going on.*

(It is here implied that the Germans *never could* find out.)

(3.) *Tempestās minātūr antequā The tempest threatens before it rises.*
surgāt, (A general truth.)

Remark 1.—After a future in the principal proposition, the indicative present or future-perfect is used with *antequā* and *priusquā*: as, *antequā prō Mūrēnā dicēre instituo paucā prō mē dicā,* *before I begin to speak for Murena, I will say a little for myself.*

Remark 2.—In historical narrative, the subjunctive imperfect and past-perfect are sometimes used with these conjunctions, very much in the same way as with *quā* temporal. *Paucīs antē diēbūs quā Sŷrācūsæ cāpērentūr,* *a few days before Syracuse was taken.*

§ 207. RULE LV.—*Dūm, dōnēc, and quoad,* in the sense of *until*, are followed by the indicative when a fact is stated; by the subjunctive when the action is doubtful or future (not a *fact*, but a *conception*).

Lōcūm rēlinquēre nōlūt dūm Mīlo He would not leave his post till
vēnīrēt, *Milo should come.*

(These conjunctions in the sense of *while, as long as*, take the indicative.)

Remark.—All temporal propositions are adverbs, and in such propositions the subjunctive is, for the most part, translated like the indicative.

EXERCISE LXVII.

§ 208. Vocabulary.

āriēs, -ētīs, *ram*.

infirmūs, -ā, -ūm, *weak*.

scāphā, -ae, *boat*.

Commiūs, -ī, *Commius*.

Atrēbās, -āt-īs, *Atrebatian*.

mandātūm, -ī, *order*.

vēr, vēr-īs, *spring*.

ācerbūs, -ā, -ūm, *bitter*.

Phōciōn, -ōn-īs, *Phocion*.

perpētūō, *continually*.

Epāminōndās, -ae, *Epaminondas*

(App. I.).

obsidiō, -ōn-īs, *siege*.

sūm-ō, -ērē, sumps-ī, sumpt-ūm, *to take*.

dif-fēr-ō, -ferrē, dis-tul-ī, dī-lāt-ūm, *to put off, defer*.

in-cip-ī-ō, -ērē, incēp-ī, incept-ūm, *to begin*.

in-cid-ō, -ērē, incid-ī, incās-ūm, *to fall upon*.

con-sperg-ō, -ērē, -spers-ī, -spers-ūm, *to sprinkle*.

prae-stō, -ārē, praestit-ī, praestit-ūm and praestāt-ūm, *to stand before, be superior*.

at-ting-ō, -ērē, attig-ī, attact-ūm, *to touch, reach*.

dē-sist-ō, -ērē, destit-ī, destit-ūm, *to leave off, cease*.

bell-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to make war*.

claud-ō, -ērē, claus-ī, claus-ūm, *to shut up*.

ex-pōn-ō, -ērē, expōsu-ī, expōsit-ūm, *to set forth, explain*.

dē-fervesc-ō, -ērē, dēferv-ī, *to subside*.

inter-cēd-ō, -ērē, -cess-ī, -cess-ūm, *to come between, intervene*.

dē-libēr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to deliberate*.

de-flu-ō, -ērē, de-flux-ī, deflux-ūm, *to flow away*.

com-pl-eō, -ērē, complēv-ī, complēt-ūm, *to fill*.

pāvōr, -ōr-īs, *fright*.

sē rēcīpērē, *to recover one's self*.

expect-ārē dūm, *to wait for any thing to happen*.

pēricūlūm faciērē, *to make a trial*.

fulgūrātiō, -ōn-īs, *lightning*.

sōnūs, -ī, *sound*.

rusticūs, -ā, -ūm, *rustic*.

Suessiōnēs, -ūm, *Suessians*.

Baeōtīi, -ōrūm, *Baeotians*.

dēmentiā, -ae, *madness*.

Verrēs, -īs, *Verres*.

rōsā, -ae, *rose*.

Translate into English.

1. QUUM, *when, since, although, whereas*.

Cæsār quūm id nunciātūm essēt, mātūrāvīt āb urbē prōfīcisci.¹ Quōd² cūm ānimadvertissēt Cæsār, scāphās longārūm nāviūm milītībūs³ complērī⁴ jussīt. Britānnī Com-

¹ § 174

² § 129, *Rem. 9*.

³ § 160.

⁴ § 188.

miūm Atrēbātēm, *quūm* ād eōs Cēsārīs mandātā *dēferrēt*, comprēhendērant, et īn vīnculā conjēcērant. *Quūm* rōsam vīdērāt, tūm incīpērē¹ vēr arbitrābātūr. O ācerbām mīhī² mēmōriām³ tempōrīs illīūs et lōcī, *quūm* hīc īn mē *incīdīt*, *quūm complexūs est, conspersitquē* lacrymīs, nēc lōquī prae mœrōrē pōtuīt! Phōciōn fūīt perpētūō paupēr, *quūm* dītīssīmūs essē *possēt*. Hōmīnēs, *quūm* multīs rēbūs infirmīōrēs *sint*, hāc rē⁴ maxīmē bestiīs⁵ præstant, quōd lōquī possunt. *Æduī, quūm* sē suāquē āb Helvētiīs dēfendērē nōn *possint*, lēgātōs ād Cēsārēm mittunt rōgātūm⁶ auxīliūm. *Quūm* vītā sīnē āmicīs mētūs⁷ plēnā *sit*, rātiō ipsā mōnēt āmicītiās compārārē. Quæ cūm itā *sint*, ād urbēm prōfīciscāmūr.⁸

2. *Postquā;* *Antequā;* *Priusquā.*

Eā *postquā* Rōmæ⁹ *audītā sunt*, tīmōr omnēs invāsīt. Dēcēm *post* diēbūs¹⁰ *quā* Cēsār īn Itāliām *pervēnīt*, lēgiōnēs duæ ērant conscriptæ.

(RULE LV., a.) *Antē* dēcīmūm diēm¹⁰ *quā* vītā¹¹ *discessīt*, libērōs omnēs convōcāvīt. Hæc omniā *antē* factā sunt *quā* Verrēs Itāliām attīgīt. Epāmīnondās nōn *priūs* bellārē destītīt *quā* Lācēdæmōnēm obsīdiōnē¹² clausīt.

(b.) Cīvēs *priūs* sē dēdīdērunt *quā* āriēs mūrūm *attīgissēt*. *Antequā* dē rēpublicā *dīcām*, expōnām brēvītēr consīliūm meūm. Cēsār *priusquā* hostēs sē ex pāvōrē et fūgā *recīpērent*, īn fīnēs Suessiōnūm exercītūm duxīt. Ad hæc cognoscendā¹³ *priusquā* pēriculūm *fācērēt*, Caiūm præmittīt. *Antē* vīdēmūs fulgūrātiōnēm *quā* sōnūm *audīāmūs*.

3. *Dū;* *Dōnēc;* *Quoad.*

Dū hæc gēruntūr, Cēsārī nunciātūm est hostēs prōpiūs

¹ § 188.

⁴ § 161.

⁷ § 135 a.

¹⁰ § 167, *Rem.* 2.

² § 142.

⁵ § 141.

⁸ § 183, *Rem.*

¹¹ § 163.

³ § 156.

⁶ § 179 a.

⁹ § 166, *Exc.*

¹² § 159.

¹³ § 177.

accēdērē.¹ Lūciūs, quoād pōtuīt, pontēm dēfendīt. Epāmīnondās, quūm ānimadvertērēt² mortīfērūm sē vulnūs acēpissē,¹ ferrūm īn corpōrē continuīt quoād rēnuntiātūm est vīcissē¹ Boeōtiōs. Irātī rōgandī sunt* ūt vīm diffērant, dūm dēfervescāt īrā. Cēsār, ūt spātiūm intercēdērē possēt³ dūm milītēs convēnīrent, lēgātīs respondīt diēm sē ād dēlībērandūm sumptūrūm. Dūm vīvīmūs vīvāmūs.⁴ Cēsār summā dēmentīā⁵ essē jūdīcābāt, exspectārē dūm hostiūm cōpiā augērentūr. Rustīcūs exspectāt dūm defluāt amnīs.

RELATIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 209. Relative propositions are introduced by a relative word. (For construction of relatives, see § 129.)

The predicate of a relative proposition is of course in the indicative when a *fact* is stated. The subjunctive is used in three cases.

§ 210. RULE LVI.—The subjunctive is used in relative propositions — (a) expressing *purpose, result, or cause* (*quī* = *ūt* or *quōd* with a personal pronoun): as,

Lēgātōs mīsērunt quī (= *ūt* ii) *They sent ambassadors that they might*
pācēm pētērent, *sue (to sue) for peace. (Purpose.)*

Nōn īs sūm quī (= *ūt* ēgō) *hoc I am not such a one as to do this.*
fāciām, *(Result.)*

Mālē fēcīt Hannībāl quī (= *quōd* { *Hannibal did wrong in wintering*
īs) Cāpuē hiēmārīt, *(because he wintered) at Capua.*
(Cause.)

(b.) In indefinite general expressions, both affirmative and negative: as,

Sunt quī dicant, *There are some who say.*
Nēmo est orātōr quī sē Dēmōsthēnīs *No one is an orator who is unwilling*
simīlēm essē nōlīt, *to be like Demosthenes.*

¹ § 188.² § 205 b.³ § 193.⁴ § 183, *Rem.*⁵ § 133.

* Ought to be asked.

(c.) To express the words or opinions of some one else, and not of the author: as, *nunciātum est equitēs qui præmissi essent revertissē*, word was brought that the horsemen *who had been sent forward* had returned.

Remark 1.—The subjunctive with *quī* expresses a purpose with reference to the *object* of the sentence, a purpose with reference to the subject being expressed by *ut*. (See § 193, § 180, Example.) Thus, *quī pācē pētērent* means, *that they (the ambassadors) might seek peace*. *Quī* may be used with the passive construction, *lēgātī missi sunt quī pācē pētērent*, where the object in the active becomes subject in the passive.

Remark 2.—*Quippē*, *utpōtē*, and *ut* are frequently joined with *quī* expressing a cause. The indicative is frequently used with *quippē quī*.

Remark 3.—The subjunctive is used in indefinite general expressions introduced by any relative word, whether adjectival or adverbial. *Ubi rēs poscērēt castellū commūnīvīt*, *wherever circumstances required*, he built a fort. Such relative sentences express a *condition*:—thus, *if circumstances anywhere required*, etc. But the indicative is frequently used: as, *quamcunquē in partē nostrī impētū fēcērant*, *hostēs locō cēdērē cōgēbantūr*.

Remark 4.—The poets and some prose writers use the indicative with *sunt quī*, *erant quī*, etc. The indicative will of course be used when a definite subject is introduced. *Sunt fēræ quæ dōmārī nōn possunt*, *there are wild beasts which cannot be tamed*. (A fact.) But the subjunctive is used even then, if a *particular fact* is not stated: as, *sunt fēræ quæ dōmārī nōn possint*, ——— *such that they cannot be tamed* (if one should make the attempt).

Remark 5.—The subjunctive is used in a relative proposition included in another dependent proposition expressing a conception rather than a fact. In such cases the relative proposition takes the *subjective* complexion of the sentence: as, *mīlītēs cōhortātūs est ut omnēs quī essent vulnerātī, prœliūm rēintegrārent*, *he exhorted the soldiers, in order that all who had been wounded might renew the fight*. *Tantā rērū commūtatio factā est, ut nostrī, etiā quī vulneribūs confectī prœcūbuissent, prœliūm rēintegrārent*, *so great a change of things was produced, that our*

men, even those who had fallen worn out with wounds, renewed the fight.

Remark 6.—A relative proposition is an adjective, limiting the antecedent. *Puēr quī lēgīt*, the *reading* boy. But as an adjective often agrees with a noun while limiting a verb, so an adjective proposition frequently limits the predicate, expressing the *purpose* (like a dative of purpose, § 144) or the *cause* (like an ablative of cause (§ 159)). See examples, § 210 a.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

§ 211. *Vocabulary.*

divīnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>pertaining to the gods.</i>	ādūlātiō, -ōn-īs, <i>flattery.</i>
quō (adv. for old acc. <i>quōn</i>), <i>whither.</i>	fortūnā, -æ, <i>fortune.</i>
rūdīs, -ē, <i>uncivilized.</i>	nātūs (part. of <i>nascōr</i>), <i>a son.</i>
argūtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>sagacious.</i>	aut — aut, <i>either — or.</i>
fortūnātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fortunate.</i>	Druīdēs, -ūm, <i>Druids.</i>
præcō, -ōn-īs, <i>herald, crier.</i>	fāmā, -æ, <i>fame, report.</i>
pecc-ārē, <i>to do wrong, to sin.</i>	prædītūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>endowed.</i>
complūrēs, -ā and -iā, <i>very many, quite a number.</i>	ēsūriens, -ent-īs (part. of <i>ēsūrīrē</i>), <i>hungry.</i>
phālanx, phālang-īs (<i>Gr. acc. phālangā</i> , <i>pl. phālangās</i>), <i>phalanx.</i>	quām (relative adv.), <i>as.</i>
Hōmērūs, -ī, <i>Homer.</i>	unā (partē understood, § 166), <i>together.</i>

com-mitt-ō, -ērē, commīs-ī, commiss-ūm, *to commit.*

ad-vēn-iō, -irē, advēn-ī, advent-ūm, *to arrive.*

præ-sūm, præ-essē, præ-fuī, præ-fūtūrūs, *to preside over.*

dī-līg-ō, -ērē, dīlex-ī, dilect-ūm, *to choose, to love.*

vid-eō, -ērē, vid-ī, vis-ūm, *to see.*

vid-eōr, -ērī, vis-ūs, *to be seen (hence, to seem, appear).*

cens-eō, -ērē, censu-ī, cens-ūm, *to be of opinion.*

rē-pēr-iō, -irē, rēpēr-ī, rēpert-ūm, *to find.*

insil-iō, -irē, insilu-ī, ———, *to leap upon.*

rē-vell-ō, -ērē, rēvell-ī, rēvuls-ūm, *to tear off.*

præ-pōn-ō, -ērē, præpōsu-ī, præpōsitūm, *to prefer.*

fall-ō, -ērē, fēfell-ī, fals-ūm, *to deceive.*

occid-ō, -ērē, occid-ī, occūs-ūm, *to fall, die.*

EXAMPLES.

(a.) *Dignūs est quī āmētūr* (§ 210 a), *He is worthy of being loved (that he be loved).*

- (b.) *Idōneūs est cui rēs mandētūr* He is fit to have the business intrusted to him (*that the business be intrusted*).
(§ 210 a),
- (c.) *Doctiōr sūm quān quī ā tē* I am too learned to be taught by you
dōceār (§ 210 a), (*than that I be taught*).
- (d.) *Quōd sciām* (§ 210 b), *As far as I know.*
Quōd mēmīnērīm, *As far as I remember.*
- (e.) *Lēgātūs, ūt impērātūm ērāt,* *The lieutenant crossed the river, as*
flūmēn transiīt, *had been ordered.*
- (f.) *Altērī, ūt cōpērānt, sē rēcēpē-* *The other party retreated as (in the*
runt, *manner in which) they had begun.*

(*Ut* in the sense of *as* is a relative, in example (e) equivalent to *quōd*, and subject of *impērātūm ērāt*; in example (f) equivalent to *quō mōdō*, and limiting *cōpērānt*.)

- (g.) *Nēmo est quī pūtēt* (§ 210 b), *There is no one who thinks.*
Nēmo est quīn pūtēt (§ 193), *There is no one who does not think.*
- (h.) *An quisquān est?* *Is there any one? (stronger than numquīs).*

Translate into English.

1. PURPOSE, LVI., a.—*Britannī Druīdēs hābent, quī rēbūs¹ dīvīnīs præsint. Æduī lēgātōs Rōmā² mīsērunt quī auxiliūm ā sēnātū³ pētērent. Lēgātī missī ērant quī nunciārent oppidūm expugnātum essē.⁴ Galli lōcūm nōn hābēbant quō sē rēcīpērent. Cēsār ēquitātūm prēmīsīt quī⁵ hostiūm itinērā explōrārent.*

2. RESULT, LVI., a.—*Nēmō tān rūdīs est ād quēm fāmā sāpientiāe tuāe nōn pervēnērīt. Socrātēs dignūs ērāt quī āb omnībūs dilīgērētūr. Caiūs nōn sātīs idōneūs vīsūs est cui tantūm nēgōtiūm mandārētūr. Nōn sūmūs īi quībūs nīhīl vērūm essē⁶ vīdeātūr. Nōn īs sūm quī tantūm scēlūs committām. Majōr sūm quān cui⁷ possīt fortunā nōcērē. Argūtīōr fuit Jūgurthā quān quī Mīcipsāe verbīs fallērētūr.*

¹ § 141, note.

² § 154.

³ § 151, Rem. 1.

⁴ § 188.

⁵ § 129, Rem. 7.

⁶ § 174.

⁷ § 142.

3. CAUSE, LVI., *a*.—O fortunātē ādōlescens, quī tuā virtūtis Hōmērūm prēcōnēm¹ invēnērīs! Peccāvissē² mīhī videōr quī ā tē discessērīm. Omnēs laudābant fortunās meās, quī³ nātūm tālī ingēniō prædītūm hābērēm.

4. LVI., *b*.—Sunt quī censeant unā ānīmūm ēt corpūs occidērē.⁴ Rēpertī sunt complūrēs quī in phalangās insilirent, ēt scūtā mānībūs revellērent. Nihil est quōd hōmīnēs tā mīsērōs¹ faciāt quām impiētās ēt scēlūs. An quisquām est quī libertātī servitūtēm prapōnāt? Nēmō est quīn Balbūm stultūm¹ existimēt.

5. LVI., *c*.—Ariōvistūs dixit sē obsidēs quōs āb Æduīs hābērēt nōn reddītūrūm.⁴ Cæsār nēgāvīt⁵ sē Helvētiīs quōd postulārent dārē² possē.⁴

Translate into Latin.

The Britons sent ambassadors to say (§ 210 *a*) that they would return the prisoners whom they had taken (§ 210 *c*). No one of the soldiers, as far as I know, has left his post. This boy has never, as far as I recollect, deceived me.³ Is Caius (*a*) suitable (person) to commit your daughter to? Kings are not too wise to be conquered by flattery, nor too sagacious to be deceived.⁴ Some say (there are who say) that the consul is both (ēt) a liar and a thief. Some thought that the enemy would not besiege the city. Is there any one who doubts that (§ 193, *Rem. 4*) God rules the world? Is there any one who thinks that a robber will return the booty which he has taken? The townsmen will send the noblest of the state to sue for (ask) peace. The general is worthy of being loved by all the soldiers. The lieutenant, as was ordered, sent forward the cavalry to sustain the attack of the enemy till the footmen should arrive (§ 207).

¹ § 151 *b*. ² § 174. ³ § 129, *Rem. 7*. ⁴ § 188. ⁵ § 189, *Exc. f*.

INTERROGATIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 212. Interrogative propositions are introduced by an interrogative word, and contain a question.

1. A *direct* question is asked by means of a principal proposition: as, *quīs vēnīt?* who comes?

2. An *indirect* question contains the *substance* of a direct question, without giving the exact words, and the proposition by which it is asked is always dependent: as, *jānītōr interrōgāvit quīs vēnirēt*, the porter asked *who came*.

3. Questions, both direct and indirect, are asked by means of interrogative pronouns (§ 88), and the particles *nē*, *nonnē*, *nūm* (§ 81); and double questions, by *utrūm* — *ān*, *whether* — *or*. In an indirect question, *nē* means *whether, if*; *nonnē*, *if not*; *nūm*, *whether, if*.

§ 213. RULE LVII.—The subjunctive is used in a direct question implying doubt: as, *quō fūgiām?* whither shall I fly?

§ 214. RULE LVIII.—The subjunctive is used in indirect questions: as, *nescio quīs vēniāt*, I do not know who is coming.

Remark 1.—The older writers sometimes use the indicative in indirect questions.

Remark 2.—The first part of a double question is often omitted. *Cūjūm pēcūs est hōc? ān Mēlibœi?*—*Is it another person's, or is it Melibœus's?*

Remark 3.—Dependent interrogative propositions are nouns.

EXERCISE LXIX.

§ 215. *Vocabulary.*

quō? *whither?*

permultūm (adv.), *very much*.

consultūm, -ī, *a thing determined*;

abl. *on purpose*.

incertūs, -ā, -ūm, *uncertain*.

Delphī, -ōrūm, *Delphi* (a city of Greece).

pātīnā, -æ, *dish*.

Mōrīnī, -ōrūm, *the Morini*.

sīt-irē, *to be thirsty*.

vitreūs, -ă, -ŭm, *of glass.*

concăvūs, -ă, -ŭm, *hollow.*

mănūs concăvă, *the hollow of the hand.*

undē? *whence?*

cūr? *why?*

deorsŭm (adv.), *down-hill.*

interrŏg-ărē, *to ask.*

Apollŏ, -in-īs, *Apollo.*

ăb Ap. pětērē, *to inquire of Apollo.*

infans, -ant-īs, *infant.*

prŏvidentiă, -æ, *providence.*

præstantiă, -æ, *excellence.*

cătinŭs or -ŭm, -ī, *bowl.*

fictīlīs, -ē, *earthen.*

căsŭs, -ŭs, *chance.*

ab-dŏ, -ērē, abdīd-ī, abdīt-ŭm, *to run for concealment.*

af-fēr-ŏ, afferrē, attŭl-ī, allăt-ŭm, *to bring forward.*

causăm afferrē, *to bring forward a reason, to explain.*

īrasc-ŏr, -ī, īrăt-ŭs, *to be angry.*

īrătŭs, -ă, -ŭm (as an adjective), *angry.*

EXAMPLES.

Quīd (§ 155) intērest?

What difference does it make?

Nīhīl (§ 155) rēfert or intērest,

It makes no difference.

Ubi gentiŭm (§ 134)?

Where in the world? (In what place of the nations?)

Nesciŏ quīs clāmāvīt,

Somebody or other (I don't know who) shouted. (A fact. Nescio quīs = ūlīquīs, but stronger.)

Translate into English.

Quisnăm în hortŏ ambŭlăt? Nesciŏ quīs în hortŏ ambŭlēt. Puēr dīcērē nŏn pŏtuīt quŏ latrŏnēs sēsē abdīdissent. Săpē nŏn ūtlē¹ est scīrē² quīd fŭtŭrŭm sīt. Quālīs¹ sīt ănimŭs, ipsē ănimŭs nescīt. Permŭltŭm intērest utrŭm cāsŭ ăn consultŏ fīăt injŭriă. Caiī nēpos-nē ēs, ăn fīliŭs? Incertŭm est Caiī nēpos-nē sīm, ăn fīliŭs. Sī sītīs³ nīhīl intērest utrŭm ăquăm bībās ăn vīnŭm, nec rēfert utrŭm sīt aureŭm¹ pŏcŭlŭm,⁴ ăn vitreŭm, ăn mănŭs concăvă. Nonnē cănīs lŭpŏ⁵ sīmīlīs est? Puēr pătrēm interrŏgāvīt nonnē cănēs lŭpīs sīmīlēs essent. Puēr interrŏgătŭs est utrŭm plŭrīs⁶ pătrēm ăn matrēm făcērēt. Numquīs⁷ infantībŭs⁵

¹ § 128 b.

² § 173.

³ § 197 a.

⁴ § 130, 1.

⁵ § 142, Rem. 3.

⁶ § 137.

⁷ § 89.

irascitŭr? Interrŭgāt Caiŭs *nŭm* quīs infantībŭs *irascātŭr*. Quō itīs, puērī? In hortŭm? Ariŭvistŭ mīrŭm vīsŭm est *quīd* in ējŭs Galliā Cēsārī¹ nēgŭtīi² *essēt*. Mentīrī³ hŭnestum-nē *sīt* factŭ⁴ *ān* turpē, nēmŭ dŭbītāt. *Undē* lēgātī *vēnissent* rex nunquām rēpērīrē pŭtuit. An quisquām dŭbītāt cāsŭ-nē ān Deī prŭvidentiā mundŭs *rēgātŭr*? Dŭm in hīs lŭcīs Cēsār nāviŭm pārandārŭm⁵ causā mŭrābātŭr, ex magnā partē Mŭrīnŭrŭm ād eŭm lēgātī vērērunt, quī causās afferrent⁶ *cŭr* cīvītās pŭpŭlŭ Rŭmānŭ bellŭm *intŭlissēt*. Nesciŭ quīs in hortŭ *ambŭlābāt*.

Translate into Latin.

¹ Does any man doubt concerning the excellence of virtue? ² The poet asks *whether any one* doubts concerning the excellence of virtue. ³ Can you explain, my son, *why* water always *flows* down hill? ⁴ The king sent messengers to Delphi (§ 154) to inquire (§ 210 *a*) of Apollo *whether* he should give his daughter in marriage to Clodius *or* Glaucus. ⁵ What difference does it make to a hungry man *whether* he *eats* his food out of a golden dish *or* an earthen bowl? ⁶ It makes no difference to the dead *whether* the king is a wise man or a fool. ⁷ It is uncertain *whether* the girl *thinks more of* (§ 137) her father or mother. ⁸ It is uncertain *whether* Balbus values life or honor *more* (*plŭris*). It seems wonderful to me what business either you or your father *has* (§ 143) in my garden. Did Caius kill his brother by chance, *or* on purpose? I have not been able to find out *whether* the injury *was done* by chance *or* on purpose. No one knows *where* in the world Glaucus *is wandering*.

¹ § 143.

⁴ § 179 *b*.

² § 134.

⁵ § 177.

³ § 173.

⁶ § 210 *a*.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

§ 216. In narrating the words or opinions of another, the writer may give, either—

(a.) The exact words of the speaker: as, *Cæsar dixit*, “*Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*,” Cæsar said, “*I came, I saw, I conquered*” (*Oratio recta*, or *Direct discourse*); or,

(b.) The *substance* of what the speaker said, but not the exact words: as, *Cæsar dixit sē vēnissē, vīdissē, vīcissē*, Cæsar said that he had come, seen, conquered. (*Oratio obliqua*, or *Indirect discourse*.)

§ 217. RULE LIX.—Principal propositions in the *oratio recta* become infinitive propositions in the *oratio obliqua*; and dependent propositions in the *oratio recta* take the subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio recta.

Ariōvistūs dixit, “Obsidēs quōs
āb Æduīs hābeō nōn reddām.”

Oratio obliqua.

Ariōvistūs dixit sē obsidēs quōs āb
Æduīs hāberēt nōn reddītūrū
essē.

Remark 1.—An imperative in the *oratio recta* becomes a subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*, a verb of commanding or exhorting being understood.

Remark 2.—The reason for the use of the subjunctive referred to above (Rule LIX.) is obvious, as the writer is making the statement not as a fact upon his own authority, but as the opinion or assertion of some one else.

Remark 3.—The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used in relative propositions in the *oratio obliqua*, the relative being equivalent to *et* with a demonstrative, and the sentence being therefore dependent only in form. The same construction occurs occasionally in other dependent propositions, especially in comparative propositions.

Remark 4.—The indicative is occasionally used in dependent sentences in the *oratio obliqua*.

Remark 5.—Questions in which the indicative is used in direct discourse are generally expressed in oblique discourse by the accusative with the infinitive, if the subject is of the *first* or the *third* person; by the subjunctive, if the subject is of the *second* person.

Sī vētēris contūmēliæ obliviscī vellēt, nūm etiā rēcentiūm injuriarū mēmōriā dēpōnērē possē? (Sī — vellēm, nūm — possūm?)

An quicquā sūperbiūs essē? (An quicquā sūperbiūs est?)

Quid tandēm vērērentūr, aut cūr dē suā virtūtē despērārent? (Quid vērēmīnī, aut cūr despērātis?)

But we also find the contrary construction: as, *cūr quisquā jūdicārēt*, which in the direct discourse would be *cūr quisquā jūdicāt*.

Remark 6.—If the subjunctive is used in direct discourse (§ 183), it is of course retained in oblique.

EXERCISE LXX.

§ 218. Vocabulary.

sūpēr-ārē, to overcome.

invictūs, -ā, -ūm, invincible.

suspīc-ārī, to suspect.

ōpulentūs, -ā, -ūm, powerful.

plūs (adv.) possē, to be more powerful. (See § 150, Remark 3.)

stīpēdiārīūs, -ā, -ūm, tributary.

proptēreā quōd, for the reason that, because.

sūb-eō, -īrē, sūbī-ī, sūbīt-ūm (§ 111, 9), to go under.

intellig-ō, -ērē, intellex-ī, intellect-ūm, to find out, to know.

Translate into English.

Ariōvistūs respondīt, 'Æduōs, quōniā¹ bellī fortūnām tentassent,* ēt armīs sūpērātī essent, stīpēdiārīōs¹ essē factōs: nēmīnēm sēcūm sinē suā pernīciē contendissē: cūm Cæsār vellēt,² congrēdērētūr:³ intellectūrū⁴ quīd invictī Germānī, quī intēr annōs quātuordēcīm tectūm nōn sūbīssent, virtūtē (fācērē) possent.'⁵ Dīvītiācūs dixīt

¹ § 128 b.

² § 205.

³ § 217, Rem. 1.

⁴ § 188.

⁵ § 214.

* For tentavissent.

‘pējūs¹ victōribūs Sēquānīs² quām Aeduīs victīs accīdissē,³ *proptēreā quōd* Ariōvistūs in eōrū finībūs *consēdissēt*, tertiamquē partē āgrī Sēquānī, *quī essēt* optimūs tōtiūs Gallīae,⁴ *occūpāvissēt.*’ Consūl pollicītūs est ‘sē, *postquām* rex finēm lōquendī *fēcissēt*, lēgātōs audītūrūm essē.’ Impērātōr rēspondīt ‘sē, *etsī* nondūm principū consiliā *cognōvissēt*,⁵ tāmēn conjūrātiōnēm fiērī * suspicārī.’ Philōsōphūs rēspondīt ‘nēgārī⁶ nōn possē quīn hōmīnēs mortālēs essent.’⁷ Rex dixīt, ‘*quī*⁸ ōpūlentiōr *essēt*, *ētiamsī* injūriām accipērēt,⁵ tāmēn, *quīā* plūs possēt, *fācērē*⁶ vīdērī.’

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar said (*nēgāvit*) that he could not give the Helvetii a way through the province, because he feared that (§ 193, 2 b) they would do injury to his allies. The scouts announced to Cæsar that the cavalry which he had sent forward had been routed by the enemy; that the skirmishers had not been able to cross the river; that the forces which the Germans had collected would arrive in three days. Word was brought that the footmen, the flight of the horsemen having been seen, had retreated to the mountain.

(Change the examples in the Latin exercise from *oratio obliqua* to *oratio recta*.)

¹ § 123, Rem. 5.

² § 141.

³ § 168.

⁴ § 134.

⁵ § 200.

⁶ § 174.

⁷ § 193.

⁸ § 129, Rem. 2.

* Depends on *sē suspicārī*.

APPENDIX I.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 219. 1. Nouns of this declension transferred from the Greek end in *ē* (fem.); *ās* and *ēs* (masc.).

PARADIGM.

<i>Nom.</i>	Pē-něll'-ō-pē,	Æ-nē'-ās,	An-chī'-sēs,
<i>Gen.</i>	Pē-něll'-ō-pēs,	Æ-nē'-æ,	An-chī'-sæ,
<i>Dat.</i>	Pē-něll'-ō-pæ,	Æ-nē'-æ,	An-chī'-sæ,
<i>Acc.</i>	Pē-něll'-ō-pēn,	Æ-nē'-ām or -ān,	An-chī'-sēn,
<i>Voc.</i>	Pē-něll'-ō-pē,	Æ-nē'-ā,	An-chī'-sē or -ā,
<i>Abl.</i>	Pē-něll'-ō-pē.	Æ-nē'-ā.	An-chī'-sē or -ā.

2. Nouns in *a* transferred from the Greek sometimes have *an* in the accusative.

3. Those Greek nouns which have a plural are declined in that number like *mensā*.

4. The genitive plural of patronymics in *ēs*, and of some compounds in *gēnā*, and *cōlā*, has *ūm* instead of *ārūm*.

APPENDIX II.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 220. 1. Greek nouns of the second declension end in *ōs* (masc. and fem.), and *ōn* (neut.), commonly changed in Latin into *ūs* and *ūm*.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Barbitōn, a lyre.</i>	
			<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Dē'-lōs,	An-drō'-gē-ōs,	bar'-bī-tōn,	bar'-bī-tā,
<i>Gen.</i>	Dē'-lī,	An-drō'-gē-ō or -ī,	bar'-bī-tī,	bar'-bī-tōn,
<i>Dat.</i>	Dē'-lō,	An-drō'-gē-ō,	bar'-bī-tō,	bar'-bī-tīs,
<i>Acc.</i>	Dē'-lōn,	An-drō'-gē-ō or -ōn,	bar'-bī-tōn,	bar'-bī-tā,
<i>Voc.</i>	Dē'-lē,	An-drō'-gē-ōs,	bar'-bī-tōn,	bar'-bī-tā,
<i>Abl.</i>	Dē'-lō.	An-drō'-gē-ō.	bar'-bī-tō;	bar'-bī-tīs.

2. The plural of Greek nouns in *ōs* is declined like the plural of *dōmīnūs*, except that they sometimes have *-ōn* instead of *-ōrūm* in the genitive.

3. Greek proper names in *eus* are declined like *dōmīnūs*, except that they have the vocative in *eu*. They sometimes retain the Greek forms in the other cases, viz.: genitive *eōs*, dative *eī* (contracted *ēī*), accusative *eā*, and are of the third declension.

4. *Pēlāgē* is found as the accusative plural of *pēlāgūs*.

APPENDIX III.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 221. The following paradigms show the most usual forms of Greek nouns of the third declension:—

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
<i>S.</i>	Lampās,	{ -ādīs, -ādōs, }	-ādī,	{ -ādēm, -ādā, -ādēs, -ādūs,	-ās,	-ādē.
<i>P.</i>	-ādēs,	-ādūm,	-ādībūs,	{ -ādēm, -ādā, -ādēs, -ādūs,	-ādēs,	-ādībūs.
<i>S.</i>	Hērōs,	-ōīs,	-ōī,	{ -ōēm, -ōā, -ōēs, -ōūs,	-ōs,	-ōē.
<i>P.</i>	-ōēs,	-ōūm,	-ōībūs,	{ -ōēm, -ōā, -ōēs, -ōūs,	-ōēs,	-ōībūs.
	Chēlŷs,	{ -ŷīs, -ŷōs, }	-ŷī,	{ -ŷm, -ŷn, -īm, -īn,	-ŷ,	-ŷē or ŷ.
	Poēsīs,	{ -īs, -iōs, -eōs, }	-ī,	{ -īm, -īn, -ēm, -eā, -ēn, }	-ī,	-ī.
	Achillēs,	{ -īs, -eī, -ī, -eōs, }	-ī,	{ -ēm, -eā, -ēn, }	-ēs, -ē,	-ē or -ī.
	Orpheus,	-eōs,	-eī,	-eā,	-eu,	See § 220, 3.
	Aēr,	-ēris,	-ērī,	-ērā,	-ēr,	-ērē.
	Didō,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō-	-ō,	-ō.

APPENDIX IV.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 222. 1. Nouns are derived from—other nouns (*Denominatives*); from adjectives (*Adjectival Abstracts*); from verbs (*Verbals*).

DENOMINATIVE NOUNS.

2. The ending *iŭm* added to the stem of a noun denotes condition, and sometimes a collection or assemblage: as, *collĕg-iŭm* (*collĕg-a*), being a colleague, the office of colleague, an assemblage of colleagues, a *college*.

3. The ending *īmōniŭm* added to a noun-stem denotes condition, and, derivatively, several other relations: as, *matr-īmōniŭm*, motherhood, the married state; *patr-īmōniŭm*, fatherhood, then, derivatively, *that which results from being a father, what a father gives a son, what a son inherits*, a patrimony.

4. The ending *ētŭm* added to the stem of names of plants denotes a place where they grow in abundance: as, *laur-ētŭm*, a laurel grove; *querc-ētŭm*, an oak grove.

5. The *diminutive* endings *lŭs*, *lă*, *lŭm*, *ŭlŭs* (*ă*, *ŭm*), *ölŭs* (*ă*, *ŭm*), sometimes *cŭlŭs*, *uncŭlŭs*, *ŭleŭs*, denote a small specimen of the primitive: as, *libellŭs* (*libĕr*), a little book; *filiölŭs* (*filiŭs*), a little son.

6. *Patronymics* are personal names derived from the name of one's father or other ancestor. They end in *idēs* (penult short, feminine *is*); *idēs* (penult long, feminine *ēs*); *iās*, *iādēs* (feminine *ās*); and some feminines in *inē* or *iōnē*; as, *Tyndār-idēs*, a son of Tyndarus; *Tyndār-is*, a daughter of Tyndarus. *Nēr-idēs*, a son of Nereus; *Nēr-ēs*, a daughter of Nereus.

7. *Amplificatives* are personal names given on account of the great size of some part of the body. They are formed by adding *o* to noun-stems: as, *cāpit-o*, big head; *nās-o*, big nose.

ABSTRACT NOUNS.

8. Adjectival abstracts are formed by adding to adjective-stems the endings *tās*, *itās*, *ētās*; *tūs*, *itūs*, *itūdo*; *iă*, *itiă*, *itiēs*; *edo*, and *īmōniă*.

VERBAL NOUNS.

9. The name of an action or condition is expressed—

(a.) By adding *ör* to the *present-stem* (generally of intransitive verbs); as, *mær-ör*, grief; *splend-ör*, brightness.

(b.) By adding *iŭm* to the *present* or *supine stem*: as, *gaud-iŭm*, joy; *exit-iŭm*, destruction.

(c.) By adding *io* or *ŭs* to the *supine-stem*: as, *lect-io*, a reading; *cant-ŭs*, a singing.

(d.) Sometimes by adding *ĕlă*, *ĭmōniă*, *ĭmōniŭm*, to the *present-stem*, or *ŭră* to the *supine-stem*: as, *quĕr-ĕlă*, complaining, a complaint.

10. *Ură* added to the *supine-stem* usually denotes the result of an action: as, *pict-ŭră*, the result of painting, a picture.

11. The doer of an action is expressed by *ŏr* (feminine *rix*) added to the *supine-stem*: as, *vict-ŏr*, *vict-rix*, a conqueror. Some nouns in *tŏr* are formed from other nouns, though an intermediate verb is always supposed to exist: as, *vi-ă*, *vi-ărĕ*, *vi-ăt-ŏr*; *glădi-ŭs*, *glădi-ărĕ*, *glădi-ăt-ŏr*.

The doer is expressed by adding *ă* or *o* to the *present-stem* of a few verbs: as, *scrib-ă*, *cŏmĕd-o*.

12. The endings *ŭlŭm*, *bŭlŭm* (*brŭm*), *cŭlŭm* (*clŭm* or *crŭm*), *trŭm*, added to the *present-stem*, express the instrument, sometimes the place, for performing the action: as, *vĕn-ă-bŭlŭm*, a hunting-spear; *vĕh-ĭ-cŭlŭm*, a vehicle. These endings are sometimes added to *noun-stems*: as, *ăcĕt-ăbŭlŭm*, a vinegar-cruet.

13. The ending *mĕn* added to the *present-stem* expresses the thing in which the action of the verb is exhibited: as, *flă-mĕn*, that which exhibits *flowing*, a river; *ag-mĕn*, something which exhibits *motion*, an army on the march.

14. The ending *mentŭm* added to the *present-stem* usually with a connecting vowel, expresses the means of performing the action: as, *dŏc-ŭ-mentŭm*, a means of showing, a proof.

15. The ending *ŏriŭm* added to the *supine-stem* expresses the place where an action is performed: as, *audĭt-ŏriŭm*, a lecture-room. These nouns are neuter adjectives, formed by adding *iŭm* to the verbal in *ŏr* denoting the doer.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

16. Adjectives are mostly derived from verbs (*Verbals*), or from nouns and adjectives (*Denominatives*).

DENOMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

17. The ending *eūs* (sometimes *nūs*, *neūs*) means *made of*: as, *aur-eūs*, made of gold; *ēbur-nūs*, made of ivory. Sometimes it expresses resemblance in character: as, *virgīn-eūs*, maidenly. The endings *inūs* (penult short) and *-ēnūs* have the same meaning.

18. The endings *ālīs*, *ānūs*, *ārīs*, *āriūs*, *īlīs* (penult long), *ātīlīs*, *īcūs*, *īciūs*, *iūs*, *inūs* (penult long), and *ivūs*, mean *pertaining to*, *belonging to*, and form *possessive* adjectives. The ending *īlīs* often denotes character: as, *puēr-īlīs*, boyish. These adjectives are often used as nouns, the limited noun being omitted: as, *ferr-āriūs* (*fābēr*), a smith; *mēdic-inā* (*ars*), the physician's art, medicine; *āvī-āriūm*, a place pertaining to birds, an aviary; *ōv-īlīz*, something pertaining to sheep, a fold.

19. The endings *ōsūs* and *lentūs* mean *full of*: as, *vin-ōsūs*, full of wine; *fraud-ū-lentūs*, full of fraud.

20. From names of places are formed possessives in *ānūs*, *ās*, *ensīs*, *iūs*, *inūs*: as, *Athēn-ī-ensīs*, of Athens, an Athenian.

21. The ending *ātūs* means *furnished with*, *wearing*: as, *āl-ātūs*, winged; *barb-ātūs*, bearded.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES.

22. The ending *bundūs* added to the present-stem, with a connecting vowel, has the meaning of the participle present, but usually with an intensive force: as, *err-ā-bundūs*, wandering to and fro. *Cundūs* has sometimes the same meaning.

23. The ending *idūs* added to the present-stem expresses state or condition: as, *cāl-īdūs*, warm; *rāp-idūs*, rapid.

24. The ending *uūs* added to the stem of an intransitive verb expresses condition or tendency; added to the stem of a transitive verb, it has a passive meaning: as, *congru-ūs*, agreeing; *nōc-uūs*, hurtful; *conspīc-uūs*, visible.

25. The endings *bilīs* (with a connecting vowel) and *īlīs* added to verbal stems express, passively, capability or desert: as, *fāc-īlīs*, capable of being done; *ām-ā-bilīs*, deserving to be loved. Sometimes they are active in meaning: as, *horr-ī-bilīs*, producing horror.

26. The ending *īciūs* or *ītiūs* added to the supine-stem has a passive sense: as, *fict-īciūs*, feigned.

27. The ending *ax* expresses an inclination,—generally an evil one: as, *răp-ax*, rapacious.

28. The ending *īvūs* added to the supine-stem expresses, actively, capacity or tendency: as, *conjunct-īvūs*, having a tendency to unite, conjunctive.

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

29. From noun and adjective stems are formed—

(a.) Intransitives (in *o*, *eo*, *ōr*), denoting *to be* that denoted by the primitive: as, *cōmit-ōr*, I accompany.

(b.) Transitives (*ō*, *ōr*), denoting *to do* or *make*, *to exercise*, *employ*, or *use* upon something, that which is denoted by the primitive: as, *fraud-o*, I use fraud, I defraud; *libēr-o*, I make free.

30. From verbs are derived the following:—

(a.) *Frequentatives*, expressing frequency or increase of the action expressed by the primitive. They are formed by adding the endings of the first conjugation to the supine-stem, *āt* passing into *īt*: as, *clām-ārē* (*clām-āt-*), to cry—*clām-īt-ārē*, to cry aloud or frequently. A few add *īto* to the present-stem: as, *āg-īto*. Frequentatives are sometimes formed from frequentatives: as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursīto*; *vēnio*, *vento*, *ventīto*.

(b.) *Inceptives*, expressing the beginning of an action or condition. They are of the third conjugation, and are formed by adding *sco*, *scōr*, to the present-stem with a connecting vowel: as, *lāb-ā-sco*, I begin to totter; *ard-e-sco*, I begin to be warm; *prāfici-scōr*, I begin to make myself forward, I set out.

(c.) *Desideratives*, expressing strong desire. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed by adding *ūrīo* to the supine-stem of the primitive: as, *ēs-ūrīo* (*ēdo*), I desire to eat, I am hungry. They are few in number.

(d.) *Diminutives*, which express trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the present or supine-stem: as, *conscrib-illo*, I scribble.

(e.) *Intensives*, which express earnest action. They are of the

third conjugation, and are formed by adding *esso* or *isso* to the stem of the primitive: as, *făc-esso*, I do with all my might.

NOTE.—Many verbs of the above classes have only the meaning of the primitive.

APPENDIX V.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATION.

§ 223. 1. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the stem and the ending. The ending consists of the *personal signs* (for the most part pronominal roots of the different persons); the *connecting vowel*, or *mood-sign*; and, in some tenses, the *tense-sign*. Though for the sake of convenience we call the radicals *ăm-*, *môn-*, and *aud-* the present-stems of the verbs *ămăre*, *mônăre*, and *audăre*, the stems are in fact *ămă-*, *mônă-*, and *audă-*; verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations may, therefore, be termed *pure* or *vowel* verbs, while only those of the third conjugation have consonant stems. Thus, in the form *ămă-bă-tis* (*ămă-ĉbă-ŷ-tis*), *ămă-* means *love*; *ĉbă-*, the tense-sign, marks incomplete action in past time (the *e* being absorbed by *a* of the stem), and means *did*; *ŷ*, the connecting vowel, or *mood-sign*, is absorbed by the *ă* preceding; while *tis*, the personal sign, means *ye* or *you*. The whole, if literally rendered, means *love-did-ye*, or, according to the English idiom, *ye love-did*, *ye love-d*.

2. The following tables show the personal, mood, and tense signs, which, uniting with the verb-stem, produce the various verb-forms.

(a.) PERSONAL ENDINGS.

Singular.				Plural.		
Person,	1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
Active,	m,	s, Ind. Perf. stī.	t.	mūs,	tīs, Ind. Perf. stīs.	nt.
Passive,	r,	rīs, rē,	tūr.	mūr,	mīnī,	ntur.

NOTE.—The personal sign *m* is the radical of the Greek, Latin, and English *me*; *mūs* is the pluralized form; *s*, frequently interchanged with *t*, is the radical of *tu* (Greek *σύ*, English *th-ou*), and *tīs* is the same form pluralized, the *t* being resumed: *t*, of the third person (plural *nt*), has a demonstrative force, and is found as a prefix in *tantūs*, *talīs*, etc.; and as a suffix in *īd* (English *i-t*), *is-te*, etc.

The sign of the passive is *r*, and enters into all the passive endings except *mīnī*, which is wholly unlike the rest, and is generally considered a participial ending (Greek *μένοι*), *estīs* being understood: —*āmā-mīnī estīs*. The personal signs for the imperative are *tō* (pl. *tōtē*), *tō* (pl. *ntō*). Passive, *rē* or *tōr* (pl. *mīnī*), *tōr* (pl. *ntōr*).

(b.) MOOD-SIGNS.

Persons.		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Indicative.	{ All but Pres.-Perfect and Fut., 3d and 4th Conj. } Pres.-Perf. Fut., 3d and 4th Conj.	ō,	{ ī, pass. ē	ī.	ī,	ī,	ū.	
		ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī,	ērū.	
		ā,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī,	ū.	
Subjunctive.	{ Pres., 2d, 3d, and 4th Conj. Pres., 1st Conj. Pres.-Perf. Imperf. and Past-Perf.	ā,	ā,	ā.	ā,	ā,	ā.	
		ē,	ē,	ē.	ē,	ē,	ē.	
		ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī,	ī.	
		ē,	ē,	ē.	ē,	ē,	ē.	
Imperative.		—	ē,	ī.	—	ī,	ū.	
Inf. Active, ē; Passive, ī.								

NOTE.—The mood-signs of the indicative are short (except *ī* and *ērū* of the present-perfect); those of the imperative are short; those of the subjunctive are long (except *ī* of the present-perfect, which is long or short).

(c.) TENSE-SIGNS.

	Pres.	Imperf.	Future.	Pres.-Perf.	Past-Perf.	Fut.Perf.
Indicative.	none.	ēbā.	ēb, 1st and 2d conj. ē, 3d and 4th conj.	none.	ērā.	ēr.
Subjunctive.	none.	ēr.		ēr.	iss.	
Infinitive.	ēr.			iss.		

NOTE.—The sign of completed action must not be confounded with the tense-sign. It is—

In the 1st conj., *v*, sometimes passing into *u*,—*sēc-u-ī*;

“ “ 2d “ *v*, generally passing into *u*,—*mōn-u-ī*;

“ “ 3d “ generally *s*, sometimes *u*.

“ “ 4th “ *v*.

Before it the final letter of the stem is lengthened: as, *āmā-vī*, *flē-vī*, and *audī-vī*. The reduplication is sometimes used, as in Greek, to indicate completed action: as, *mō-mord-ī*, *pō-posc-ī*, *vē-vēn-ī* (contr. *vēn-ī*), *mō-mōv-ī* (contr. *mōv-ī*). Such perfects as *pāv-ī* (*pā-sc-o*), *quiēv-ī* (*quiē-sc-o*), *sprē-vī* (*sper-n-o* for *sprē-n-o*), are regularly formed on vowel-stems, strengthened by the addition of *sc* (App. IV., 30 *b*) and *n*.

3. Where two vowels come together, the former usually absorbs the latter, the two short syllables making one long one. It must be borne in mind, however, that no vowel in Latin can be long before *m*, *t*, or *r* (final), except in certain monosyllables, and a long vowel before one of these final letters is shortened. The mood-sign *o* and the personal sign *m* never stand together, but one or the other is dropped: as, *āmāō(m)*, *āmābā(ō)m*, — *āmo*, *āmābām*.

4. In the following table the stem, tense-sign, mood-sign, and personal sign are exhibited.

PARTS ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Full Form.	Contracted Form.	Full Form.	Contracted Form.
rĕg-ō-(m),	rĕg-ō,	āmā-ō-(m),	ām-ō,
rĕg-ī-s, etc.,	rĕg-īs, etc.,	āmā-ī-s, etc.,	ām-ās,
rĕg-ū-nt.	rĕg-unt.	āmā-ū-nt.	ām-ant.

<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>	<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>
rĕg-ĕbǎ-(ǝ)-m,	rĕg-ĕbǎm,	ǎmǎ-ĕbǎ-(ǝ)-m,	ǎm-ǎbǎm,
rĕg-ĕbǎ-ĭ-s, etc.,	rĕg-ĕbǎs,	ǎmǎ-ĕbǎ-ĭ-s, etc.,	ǎm-ǎbǎs,
rĕg-ĕbǎ-ũ-nt.	rĕg-ĕbant.	ǎmǎ-ĕbǎ-ĭ-t.	ǎm-ǎbǎt.
rĕg-ĕ-ǎ-m,	rĕg-ǎm,	ǎmǎ-ĕb-ǝ-(m),	ǎm-ǎbǝ,
rĕg-ĕ-ĭ-s, etc.,	rĕg-ĕs,	ǎmǎ-ĕb-ĭ-s, etc.,	ǎm-ǎbĭs,
rĕg-ĕ-ũ-nt.	rĕg-ent.	ǎmǎ-ĕb-ũ-nt.	ǎm-ǎbunt.
rĕg-ǎ-m,	rĕg-ǎm,	ǎmǎ-ĕ-m,	ǎm-ĕm,
rĕg-ǎ-s, etc.,	rĕg-ǎs,	ǎmǎ-ĕ-s, etc.,	ǎm-ĕs,
rĕg-ǎ-mŭs, etc.	rĕg-ǎmŭs.	ǎmǎ-ĕ-mŭs.	ǎm-ĕmŭs.
rĕg-ĕr-ĕ-m,	rĕg-ĕrĕm,	ǎmǎ-ĕr-ĕ-m,	ǎm-ǎrĕm,
rĕg-ĕr-ĕ-s.	rĕg-ĕrĕs, etc.	ǎmǎ-ĕr-ĕ-s.	ǎm-ǎrĕs, etc.
rĕg-ĕ-,	rĕg-ĕ,	ǎmǎ-ĕ-,	ǎm-ǎ,
rĕg-ĭ-tǝ,	rĕg-ĭtǝ,	ǎmǎ-ĭ-tǝ,	ǎm-ǎtǝ,
rĕg-ĭ-tĕ,	rĕg-ĭtĕ,	ǎmǎ-ĭ-tĕ,	ǎm-ǎtĕ,
rĕg-ĭ-tǝtĕ, etc.	rĕg-ĭtǝtĕ, etc.	ǎmǎ-ĭ-tǝtĕ, etc.	ǎm-ǎtǝtĕ.
rĕg-ĕr-ĕ.	rĕg-ĕrĕ.	ǎmǎ-ĕr-ĕ.	ǎm-ǎrĕ.

PARTS ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

regs-ĭ,	rex-ĭ,	ǎmǎv-ĭ,	ǎmǎv-ĭ,
regs-ĭ-stĭ,	rex-istĭ,	ǎmǎv-ĭ-stĭ,	ǎmǎv-istĭ,
regs-ĭ-mŭs, etc.	rex-ĭmŭs, etc.	ǎmǎv-ĭ-mŭs.	ǎmǎv-ĭmŭs, etc.
regs-ĕrǎ-(ǝ)-m,	rex-ĕrǎm,	ǎmǎv-ĕrǎ-(ǝ)-m,	ǎmǎv-ĕrǎm,
regs-ĕrǎ-ĭ-s, etc.	rex-ĕrǎs, etc.	ǎmǎv-ĕrǎ-ĭ-s, etc.	ǎmǎv-ĕrǎs, etc.
regs-ĕr-ǝ-(m),	rex-ĕrǝ,	ǎmǎv-ĕr-ǝ-(m),	ǎmǎv-ĕrǝ,
regs-ĕr-ĭ-s, etc.	rex-ĕrĭs, etc.	ǎmǎv-ĕr-ĭs, etc.	ǎmǎv-ĕrĭs, etc.
regs-ĕr-ĭ-m,	rex-ĕrĭm,	ǎmǎv-ĕr-ĭ-m,	ǎmǎv-ĕrĭm,
regs-ĕr-ĭ-s, etc.	rex-ĕrĭs, etc.	ǎmǎv-ĕr-ĭ-s, etc.	ǎmǎv-ĕrĭs, etc.
regs-iss-ĕ-m,	rex-issĕm,	ǎmǎv-iss-ĕ-m,	ǎmǎv-issĕm,
regs-iss-ĕ-s, etc.	rex-issĕs, etc.	ǎmǎv-iss-ĕ-s, etc.	ǎmǎv-issĕs, etc.
regs-iss-ĕ.	rex-issĕ.	ǎmǎv-iss-ĕ.	ǎmǎv-issĕ.

PARTS ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>	<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>
flĕ-ō-(m),	flĕ-ō,	audī-ō-(m),	aud-iō,
flĕ-ī-s,	fl-ēs,	audī-ī-s,	aud-iīs,
flĕ-ī-t, etc.,	fl-ēt, etc.,	audī-ī-t, etc.,	aud-īt, etc.,
flĕ-ū-nt.	fl-ēnt.	audī-ū-nt.	aud-iunt.
flĕ-ēbā-(ō)-m,	fl-ēbām,	audī-ēbā-(ō)-m,	aud-iēbām,
flĕ-ēbā-ī-s,	fl-ēbās,	audī-ēbā-ī-s,	aud-iēbās,
flĕ-ēbā-ī-t, etc.	fl-ēbāt, etc.	audī-ēbā-ī-t, etc.	aud-iēbāt, etc.
flĕ-ēb-ō-(m),	fl-ēbō,	audī-ā-(ō)-m,	audī-ām,
flĕ-ēb-ī-s,	fl-ēbīs,	audī-ē-ī-s,	audi-ēs,
flĕ-ēb-ī-t, etc.	fl-ēbīt, etc.	audī-ē-ī-t, etc.	audi-ēt, etc.
flĕ-ā-m,	fl-eām,	audī-ā-m,	aud-iām,
flĕ-ā-s,	fl-eās,	audī-ā-s,	aud-iās,
flĕ-ā-t.	fl-eāt, etc.	audī-ā-t.	aud-iāt, etc.
flĕ-ēr-ē-m,	fl-ērēm,	audī-ēr-ēm,	aud-irēm,
flĕ-ēr-ē-s, etc.	fl-ērēs.	audī-ēr-ē-s.	aud-irēs, etc.
flĕ-ē—,	fl-ē,	audī-ē —,	aud-ī,
flĕ-ē-tē, etc.	fl-ētē, etc.	audī-ē-tē, etc.	aud-ītē, etc.

PARTS ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

flē-v-ī-(m),	flēv-ī,	audī-v-ī-(m),	audīv-ī,
flēv-ērā-(ō)-m,	flēv-ērām,	audīv-ērā-(ō)-m,	audīv-ērām,
flēv-ēr-ō-(m).	flēv-ērō.	audīv-ēr-ō-(m).	audīv-ērō.
flēv-ēr-ī-m,	flēv-ērīm,	audīv-ēr-ī-m,	audīv-ērīm,
flēv-iss-ē-m,	flēv-issēm,	audīv-iss-ē-m,	audīv-issēm,
flēv-iss-ē.	flēv-issē.	audīv-iss-ē.	audīv-issē.

NOTE.—The pupil can readily complete the tables for himself.

5. The participles are formed by adding adjectival endings to the verb-stem (sometimes with a connecting vowel in consonant verbs), *ns* expressing continuance (actively); *tūrūs*, futurity; *tūs*, completion (passively); and *-ndūs*, fitness, capacity.

6. The gerund is a verbal noun formed by adding *-ndī*, etc., to the verb-stem, a connecting vowel being necessary in consonant verbs: as, *rĕg-e-ndī*.

7. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth conjugation, sometimes complete (as, *cursūs*), but usually found only in the accusative and ablative. It is formed by adding *tūs* (sometimes *sūs*) to the verb-stem.

APPENDIX VI.

PECULIARITIES OF TENSE-FORMATION.

Tenses formed on the Present-stem.

§ 224. 1. The tense-sign of the indicative future in verbs of the fourth conjugation (*ī* stems) seems anciently to have been *ēb*, as in *ā* and *ē* stems, the *ī* of the stem absorbing the *ē* of the tense-sign: as, *vestī-b-o*, *scī-b-o*, instead of *vestiām*, *sciām*. The same contraction also occurs in the imperfect: as, *ves-tibām*. The forms *ībām* and *ībo* of *eo* are still retained.

2. The endings *īm*, *īs*, etc., in the subjunctive present (mood-sign *i*) are sometimes found in the earlier writers and in the poets: as, *ēdīm*, *ēdis*, *ēdīt*, *ēdimūs*, etc., for *ēdām*, etc. The same mood-sign is always found in the forms *sīm*, *sīs*, etc., *vēlīm*, *vēlīs*, etc., and their compounds.

3. The ending *ē* is dropped in the imperatives *dīc*, *dūc*, *fāc*, and *fēr*. The short forms are also used in their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change *ā* into *ī*: as, *effīcē*.

4. The personal sign of the imperative future passive second person singular was anciently *mīno*: as, *hortā-mīno*, *progrēdī-mīno*. The older writers sometimes use the active ending of the imperative in deponent verbs: as, *arbitrāto*, instead of *arbitrātōr*.

Tenses formed on the Perfect-stem.

5. The letter *v* of the perfect-stem is frequently elided and the first vowel of the ending is absorbed: as, *āmā-(v)-istī*, *āmastī*: *flē-(v)-ērām*, *flērām*. When *ī* precedes *v*, there is usually no con-

traction. This is especially the case in compounds of *eo*: as, *radū*, *pārū*, *sūbū*, etc.

6. When the perfect-stem ends in *s*, the syllables *is*, *iss*, immediately following it, are sometimes omitted: as, *ēcasti*, *ēvassem*, *ēcastis*, for *ēcās-isti*, *ēvas-issēm*, *ēcās-istis*.

7. An ancient future-perfect in *so* sometimes occurs, from which subjunctive forms in *sēm* and *sīm* are formed: as, *rēcēpso*, *rēcēp-sīm*. Sometimes this future is formed on the present-stem: as, *hābesso*.

The forms *ausīm*, *faxīm*, and *faxo* are retained by the classic writers.

COMPOUND VERBS.

8. Compound verbs generally form their perfect and supine stem like the simple verbs from which they are derived. Sometimes, however, there is a change of the stem-vowel: as, *hāb-eo*, *prō-hib-eo*; *fāc-io*, *con-fīc-io*; *scand-o*, *de-scend-o*. A reduplication in the perfect is omitted in compound verbs: as, *cād-o*, *cē-cīd-ī*; *oc-cīd-o*, *oc-cīd-ī*; but the compounds of *dō*, *stō*, *disco*, and *posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

APPENDIX VII.

THE VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

§ 225. *First Conjugation.*

1. The perfect and supine stems are formed, in the first conjugation, by adding respectively *āv* and *āt* to the present-stem; or, to speak more correctly, by adding *v* and *t* to the crude form of the verb: as, *āmā-*, *āmāv-*, *āmāt-*.

2. But—

(a.) The characteristic vowel *ā* is elided in the perfect tenses of a few verbs (*v* passing into *u* after a consonant), and in such cases is usually changed into *ī* in the supine: as, *crēpo*, *crēp-u-ī*, *crēp-ī-tūm*.

(b.) The perfect-stem is formed by reduplicating the initial consonant with *ē*: as, *d-ārē*, *dēd-ī*.

(c.) Some verbs seem originally to have reduplicated, but the reduplication has been dropped, the first two syllables blending into one, and the short stem-vowel becoming long: as, *lāv-o*, *lāv-ī* for *lā-lā-vī*.

3. The following list contains the verbs which vary from the usual mode of formation:—

Crēpō, *crēpārē*, *crēpuī*, *crēpītūm*, to creak; *incrēpō*, *-āvī* or *-uī*, *-ātūm* or *-ītūm*; *diserēpō*, *-uī*, —; *rēc-rēpō*, *-ārē*, —, —.

Cūbō, *cūbuī*, *cūbītūm*, to lie down. *Incūbō* has rarely *-āvī*. Some of the compounds insert *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dō, *dārē*, *dēdī*, *dātūm*, to give. Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions are of the third conjugation.

Dōmō, *dōmuī*, *dōmītūm*, to tame.

Fricō, *fricuī*, *fricātūm* or *frietūm*, to rub; *confricō*, *confricāvī*, *confricātūm*.

Jūvō, *jūvī*, *jūtūm*, *jūvātūrūs*, to help.

Lāvō (*-ārē* and *-ērē*), *lāvī* and *lāvāvī*, *lōtūm*, *lautūm*, and *lāvātūm*, *lāvātūrūs*, to wash.

Micō, *mīcuī*, —, to quiver; *dīmicō*, *-āvī*, rarely *-uī*, *-ātūm*; *ēmīcō*, *-uī*, *-ātūm*.

Nicō, *nēcāvī*, rarely *nēcui*, *nēcātūm*, rarely *nectūm*, to kill.

Plīcō, *plīcāvī* and *plīcuī*, *plīcātūm* and *plīcītūm*, to fold. *Applicō*, *complicō*, *explicō*, *implīcō*, in the same way. The other compounds have *-āvī*, *-ātūm*.

Pōtō, *pōtāvī*, *pōtūm* and *pōtātūm*, to drink.

Sēcō, *sēcui*, *sectūm* and *sēcātūm*, to cut. So also *præsēcō*, *rēsēcō*. The other compounds have only *sectūm*.

Sōnō, *sōnuī*, *sōnītūm*, *sōnītūrūs*, to sound; *consōnō*, *exsōnō*, *insōnō*, *præsōnō*, *-uī*, —; *rēsōnō*, *-āvī*.

Stō, *stētī* (for *sestī*), *stātūm*, to stand.

Tōnō, *tōnuī*, —, to thunder; *at-tōnō*, *-uī*, *-ītūm*.

Vētō, *vētuī*, *vētītūm*, to forbid.

§ 226. Second Conjugation.

1. The perfect-stem is formed, in the second conjugation,—

(a.) By adding *v* to the crude form of the verb, as in the first conjugation: as, *flē-o*, *flēv-ī*.

(b.) But in most verbs the characteristic *ē* is elided, *v* passing into *u*, and, as in the first conjugation, the characteristic passing into *ī* in the supine: as, *mōne-o*, *mōnu-ī*, *mōnīt-ūm*.

(c.) In many verbs *ē* is elided, and *s*, instead of *v*, added, with such consonant changes as euphony may require: as, *arde-o*, *ar-s-ī* for *ard-sī*; *auge-o*, *aux-ī*, for *aug-sī*.

(d.) A few verbs reduplicate the initial consonant, and drop the characteristic *e*: as, *morde-o*, *mō-mord-ī*.

(e.) Some verbs preserve a trace of the reduplication in the lengthening of the stem-vowel in the perfect, the characteristic, as in the last class, being elided: as, *mōve-o*, *mōv-ī*,—perhaps for *mō-mōv-ī*; or perhaps the original form was *mōvē-v-ī*, syncopated into *mōvī* to avoid having two successive syllables begin with *v*. All verbs of the first and second conjugations which lengthen the stem-vowel in the perfect have stems ending in *v*, except *video* and *sēdeo*.

2. The following list contains the verbs of the second conjugation which form the perfect and supine stems otherwise than according to § 226, 1 (b), that being considered the regular formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

Abŭleō, ābŭlivī, ābŭlītŭm, *to destroy*.

The other compounds of the obsolete ōleō are ādŏleō, ādŏlŭī (rarely ādŏlēvī), ādultŭm; exŏlescō (inceptive from exŏleō), exŏlēvī, exŏlētŭm; dēleō, dēlēvī, dēlētŭm.

Algeō, alsī, —, *to be cold*.

Arceō, arcuī, arcŭm, *to keep off*.

Ardeō, arsī, arsŭm, *to burn*.

Audeō, ausŭs sum (*rarely ausī, from which ausīm*), *to dare*.

Augeō, auxī, auctŭm, *to increase*.

Cāveō, cāvī, cautŭm, *to beware*.

Censeō, censuī, censŭm, *to be of opinion*. Percenseō, percensuī; rēcenseō, rēcensuī, rēcensŭm and rēcensitŭm.

Cīeō, cīvī, cītŭm, *to arouse*. *The compounds with ex and ād are of the fourth conjugation. The penult of excitŭs is common, and that of concītŭs is rarely long.*

Connīveō, connīvī or connixī, —, *to shut the eyes*.

Denseō, densētŭm, *to be dense*.

Dŏceō, dŏcuī, doctŭm, *to teach*.

Fāveō, fāvī, fautŭm, *to favor*.

Ferveō, ferbŭī, or fervō, fervī, *to boil*.

Fleō, flēvī, flētŭm, *to weep*.

Fŏveō, fŏvī, fŏtŭm, *to warm*.

Fulgeō, fulsī (*anteclassical and poetic*, fulgō, fulsī), *to flash*.

Gaudeō, gāvīsŭs, *to rejoice*.

Hæreō, hæsi, hæsum, *to stick*; obhæreō, -ērē, —, —; *so, also, subhæreō*.

Indulgeō, indulsī, indultŭm, *to indulge*.

Jŭbeō, jussī, jussŭm, *to order*.

Lŭceō, luxī, —, *to shine*; pollŭceō, polluxī, polluctŭm.

Lŭgeō, luxī, luctŭm, *to mourn*.

Māneō, mansī, mansŭm, *to stay*.

Misceō, miscuī, mistŭm or mixtŭm, mistŭrŭs, *to mix*.

Mordeō, mōmordi, morsŭm, *to bite*.

Mōveō, mōvī, mōtŭm, *to move*.

Mulceō, mulsī, mulsŭm, *rarely mulētŭm, to stroke*.

Mulgeō, mulsī, *rarely mulxī, mul-*

sūm or mulctūm, *to milk*; ēmul-
geō, -ērē, —, *ēmulsum*.
Neō, nēvī, nētūm, *to spin*.
Pāveō, pāvī, —, *to fear*.
Pendeō, pēpendī, —, *to hang*; im-
pendeō, -ērē.
Pleō (*obsolete*), plēvī, plētūm, *to fill*.
Prandeō, prandī, pransūm, *to break-*
fast.
Rīdeō, rīsī, rīsūm, *to laugh*.
Sēdeō, sēdī, sessūm, *to sit*; præsī-
deō, præsēdī, —.
Sōleō, sōlitūs, *rarely* sōluī, *to be*
accustomed.
Sorbeō, sorbuī, —, *to suck up*;
rēsorbeō, -ērē, —; absorbeō,
absorbuī, *rarely* absorpsī, absorp-
tūm.

Spondeō, spōpondī, sponsūm, *to*
pledge.
Strīdeō, strīdī, *to creak*.
Suādeō, suāsī, suāsūm, *to advise*.
Tēneō, tenuī, tentūm, *to hold*; per-
tīneō, pertīnuī, —.
Tergeō or tergō, tersī, tersūm, *to*
wipe.
Tondeō, tōtondī, tonsūm, *to shear*.
Torqueō, torsī, tortūm, *to twist*.
Torreō, torruī, tostūm, *to roast*.
Turgeō, tursī, —, *to swell*.
Urgeō or urgueō, ursī, —, *to*
press.
Vīdeō, vīdī, vīsūm, *to see*.
Vieō, —, viētūm, *to plait*.
Vōveō, vōvī, vōtūm, *to vow*.

§ 227. To these may be added the following impersonal and deponent verbs of the second conjugation:—

Dēcēt, dēcūit, *it becomes*.
Lībēt, lībuit or lībītūm est, *it*
pleases.
Licēt, licuit or licītūm est, *it is*
allowed.
Liquēt, liquit or licuit, *it is clear*.
Mīsērēt, mīsēruīt, *sometimes* mīsērō-
tūr, mīsērītūm or mīsertūm est, *it*
pities.
Oportēt, oportuit, *it behooves*.
Pīgēt, pīguīt or pīgītūm est, *it*
grieves.
Poenītēt, poenītuīt, *it repents*.

Pūdēt, pūduīt or pūdītūm est, *it*
shames.
Tædēt, tæduīt or tæsūm est, *it dis-*
gusts.
Fāteōr, fassūs, *to confess*; diffīteōr,
diffītērī, —.
Mēdeōr, —, *to cure*.
Mīsēreōr, mīsērītūs or mīsertūs, *to*
pity.
Reōr, rātūs, *to think*.
Tueōr, tuītūs or tūtūs (*the latter*
passive), *to behold, to gaze at*.

§ 228. The following have the perfect in *uī*, but want the supine:—

Aceō, *to be sour*; candeō, *to be white*; cāneō, *to be hoary*; ēgeō, *to*
want; ēmīneō, *to rise up*; flōreō, *to flower*; horreō, *to bristle*; lāteō, *to*
lie hid; mūceō, *to be mouldy*; nigreō, *to be black*; ōleō, *to smell*; palleō,
to be pale; pāteō, *to be open*; sīleō, *to be silent*; strīdeō, *to creak*; stūdeō
(stūdīvī *once*), *to be eager*; stūpeō, *to be stunned*; tīmeō, *to fear*.

§ 229. The following have neither perfect nor supine stems, though from some of them perfect tenses are formed with an inceptive force:—

Ægreō, to be sick; albeō, to be white; āreō, to be dry; āveō, to covet; calleō, to be hard; calveō, to be bald; cēveō, to fawn; clāreō, to be bright; clucō, to be famous; flaccō, to droop; flāveō, to be yellow; foeteō, to stink; frigeō, to be cold; frondeō, to bear leaves; hēbeō, to be dull; hūmeō, to be moist; lacteō, to suck; langueō, to be faint; lenteō, to be slow; liveō, to be livid; maceō, to be lean; mareō, to grieve; niteō, to shine; ōleō, to smell; polleō, to be powerful; pūteō, to stink; rēnideō, to glitter; rigeō, to be stiff; rūbeō, to be red; scūteō, to gush out; sēneō, to be old; sordēō, to be filthy; splendeō, to shine; squāleō, to be foul; sueō, to be wont; tēpeō, to be warm; torpeō, to be stiff; tūmeō, to swell; ūveō, to be moist; vĕgeō, to arouse; vĭgeō, to flourish; vĭreō, to be green.

VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

Third Conjugation.

§ 230. 1. The perfect-stem is formed, in the third conjugation,—

(a.) By adding *s* to the present-stem, which in this conjugation is the crude form of the verb: as, *carp-o*, *carps-ī*.

(b.) By adding *v* to the crude form of the verb, which has been strengthened by adding *n* or *sc*, as in Greek.

These are all originally vowel verbs: as, *cre-sc-o*, *crĕv-ī*; *pa-sc-o*, *pāv-ī*; *no-sc-o*, *nōv-ī*; *sī-n-o*, *sīv-ī*; *sper-n-o* (*spĕr-o* by metathesis for *spre-o*), *sprĕv-ī*.

(c.) By adding *u* (the form which the perfect-sign *v* assumes after a consonant): as, *āl-o*, *ālu-ī*.

(d.) By adding *iv* to the present-stem: as, *arcess-o*, *arcess-ivī*.

(e.) By reduplicating the initial consonant: as, *curr-o*, *cūcurr-o*.

(f.) By lengthening the present-stem, with or without vowel change: as, *ēm-o*, *ēm-ī*; *āg-o*, *ēg-ī*.

(g.) In a number of verbs (especially vowel verbs in *u*) the perfect-stem is like the present-stem: as, *ācū-o*, *ācū-ī*.

2. The supine-stem is usually formed in the third conjugation by adding *t*, frequently by adding *s*, to the present-stem.

3. The following list contains most of the verbs of this conjugation:—

Acuō, acuī, acūtū, *to sharpen.*
 Agō, egī, actū, *to set in motion*;
 ambīgō, -ērē, —, —; dēgō,
 dēgī; sātāgō, sātāgērē, —, —.
 Alō, āluī, altū *and* ālītū, *to*
nourish.
 Angō, anxī, anctū *and* anxū, *to*
choke.
 Arcessō (*pass.* -īrī *or* -ī), arcessivī,
 arcessītū, *to send for.*
 Arguō, arguī, argūtū, *to convict.*
 Bātuō, būtuī, *to beat.*
 Bibō, bibī, bibītū, *to drink.*
 Cādō, cēcīdī, cāsū, *to fall*; accidō,
 dēcīdō, excīdō, succīdō, *have no*
supine-stem. (See App. VI., 8.)
 Cādō, cēcīdī, cāsū, *to cut.* *The*
compounds change æ into i: as,
 occīdō, occīdī, occīsū. (See
 App. VI., 8.)
 Candō, *to cause to shine*; whence
 accendō, incendō, succendō
 (-cendī, -censū).
 Cānō, cēcīnī, cantū, *to sing*;
 præcīnō, -cīnuī, -centū; concīnō,
 -cīnuī, —; so occīnō, accīnō,
 -ērē, —, —; so, also, incīnō,
 intercīnō, rēcīnō, succīnō.
 Cāpessō, -īvī *or* -īī, -ītū, *to seize.*
 Cāpiō, cēpī, captū, *to take*; so
 antēcāpiō. *The other compounds*
change ā of the present-stem into ī,
and of the supine-stem into ē: as,
 accēpiō, accēpī, acceptū.
 Carpō, carpsī, carptū, *to pluck.*
 Cēdō, cessī, cessū, *to yield.*
 Ceilō, antē-, præ-, -ērē, —, —;
 excellō, excelluī, excelsū; per-
 cellō, percūī, percūsū.
 Cernō, crēvī, crētū, *to decide.*

Cingō, ciuxī, cinctū, *to gird.*
 Clangō, -ērē, —, —, *to clang.*
 Claudō, clausī, clausū, *to shut.*
 Claudō *or* -eō, —, clausū, *to*
limp.
 Clēpō, clepsī, rarely clēpī, cleptū,
to steal.
 Cōlō, cōluī, cultū, *to cultivate*;
 occūlō, occūluī, occultū.
 Cōmō, compsi, comptū, *to adorn.*
 Compescō, compescuī, *to check.*
 Condō, condidī, condītū, *to build*;
 abscondō, -condidī *or* -condī,
 -condītū *or* -consū. *For other*
compounds of dō, see § 225, 3.
 Consūlō, -sūluī, -sultū, *to consult.*
 Cōquō, coxi, coctū, *to cook.*
 Crescō, crēvī, crētū, *to grow.*
 Cūdō, -ērē, —, —, *to forge*; ex-
 cūdō, excūdī, excūsū.
 Cūpiō, -īvī *or* -īī, -ītū, *to desire.*
 Currō, eūcurrī, cursū, *to run*; con-
 currō, succurrō, transeurrō, *drop*
the reduplication. *The other com-*
pounds have both forms: as, ac-
 currō, accurrī, accēcurrī, accur-
 sū; antēcurrō, -ērē, —, —;
 so, also, circumcurrō. (See App.
 VI., 8.)
 Depsō, depsuī, depstū, *to knead.*
 Dicō, dixī, dictū, *to say.*
 Discō, didīcī, discītūrū, *to learn.*
 Dispescō, —, dispistū, *to sepa-*
rate.
 Divīdō, divīsī, divīsū, *to divide.*
 Dūcō, duxī, ductū, *to lead.*
 Edō, ēdī, ēsū, *to eat.* (See § 111.)
 Emō, ēmī, emptū, *to buy*; dēmō,
 dempsi, demptū.
 Exuō, exuī, exūtū, *to put off.*

- Făcessŏ, -īvi, -ītŭm, *to do eagerly.*
 Făciŏ, fēcī, factŭm, *to do; pass.*
 fiŏ, fiērī, factŭs (§ 111). *Imper. pres. făc.* *Compounds with verb-stems follow the simple; pătē-făciŏ, -fēcī, -factŭm, pătēfăc, pătēfiŏ; those with prepositions change ă of the present-stem into ĭ, and of the supine-stem into ě, and have a regular passive: as, interfăciŏ, interfăcī, interfectŭm; interfăciŏr, interfăci, interfectŭs.*
 Fallŏ, fĕfelli, falsŭm, *to deceive; rĕ-fellŏ, rĕfelli, —.*
 Fendŏ (obs.), dĕfendŏ, dĕfendi, dĕ-fensŭm, *to defend; offendŏ, of-fendi, -fensŭm, to offend.*
 Fĕrŏ, ferrĕ (*syncopated from fĕr-ĕrĕ*), tŭlī, lătŭm, *to carry. A perf. tĕ-tŭlī occurs; affĕrŏ, attŭlī, allătŭm; aufĕrŏ, abstŭlī, ablătŭm; confĕrŏ, contŭlī, collătŭm; diffĕrŏ, distŭlī, dilătŭm; effĕrŏ, extŭlī, ělătŭm; infĕrŏ, intŭlī, illătŭm; offĕrŏ, obtŭlī, oblătŭm; suffĕrŏ, sustŭlī, sublătŭm.*
 Fervŏ, fervī, *to boil. See Ferveŏ, second conjugation.*
 Fidŏ, fīsŭs, *to trust; confidŏ, confidi or confisŭs sŭm.*
 Figŏ, fixī, fixŭm, *rarely fictŭm, to fix.*
 Findŏ, fidī, fissŭm, *to split.*
 Fingŏ, finxī, fictŭm, *to feign.*
 Flectŏ, flexī, flexŭm, *to bend.*
 Fligŏ, flixī, —, *to dash; affligŏ, afflixī, afflictŭm; so infligŏ, pro-fligŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ătŭm.*
 Fluŏ, fluxī, fluxŭm, *to flow.*
 Fŏdiŏ, fŏdī, fossŭm, *to dig. Old inf. pass. fŏdirī; so, also, cffŏdirī.*
 Frangŏ, frĕgī, fractŭm, *to break.*
 Frēmŏ, frĕmuī, frĕmītŭm, *to roar.*
 Frendŏ, —, frĕsŭm and fressŭm, *to gnash.*
 Frigŏ, frixī, frictŭm, *rarely frixŭm, to fry.*
 Fŭgiŏ, fŭgī, fŭgītŭm, *to fly.*
 Fulgŏ, —, —, *to flash.*
 Fundŏ, fŭsī, fŭsŭm, *to pour.*
 Fŭrŏ, —, —, *to rage.*
 Gĕmŏ, gĕmuī, gĕmītŭm, *to groan.*
 Gĕrŏ, gessī, gestŭm, *to bear.*
 Gignŏ (*for gī-gĕnŏ*), gĕnuī, gĕnītŭm, *to beget.*
 Gliscŏ, —, —, *to grow.*
 Glŭbŏ, —, —, *to peel; deglŭbŏ, degluptŭm.*
 Gruŏ (obs.), congruŏ, ingruŏ, -gruī.
 Iĕŏ, iĕī, iĕtŭm, *to strike.*
 Imbuŏ, imbuī, imbŭtŭm, *to imbue.*
 Incessŏ, incessīvi or incessī, —, *to attack.*
 Induŏ, induī, indŭtŭm, *to put on.*
 Jăciŏ, jĕcī, jactŭm, *to throw; con-jĕciŏ, -jĕcī, -jectŭm; so the other compounds.*
 Jungŏ, junxī, junctŭm, *to join.*
 Lăcessŏ, -īvi, -ītŭm, *to provoke.*
 Lăciŏ (obs.), allĕciŏ, allexī, allectŭm, *to allure. So illĕciŏ, pellĕciŏ; but ělĕciŏ, ělicuī and ělexī, ělicītŭm.*
 Lădŏ, lăsī, lăsŭm, *to hurt.*
 Lambŏ, lambī, lambītŭm, *to lick.*
 Lĕgŏ, lĕgī, lectŭm, *to read. So the compounds with ăd, pĕr, pră, rĕ, sŭb, and trans; the other compounds change ĕ into ĭ. Dilĕgŏ, intelligŏ, and negligŏ, have -lexī, -lectŭm.*
 Lingŏ, linxī, linctŭm, *to lick; dĕ-lingŏ, -ĕrĕ, to lick up.*
 Lĭnŏ, livī or lĕvī, lītŭm, *to daub.*
 Linquŏ, liquī, —, *to leave; rĕ-liquŏ and dĕlinquŏ, -liquī, -lic-tŭm.*

Lūdō, lūsī, lūsūm, *to play*.
 Luō, luī, lūitūrūs, *to atone*; abluō,
 -luī, -lūtūm. *So diluō and ēluō*.
 Mandō, mandī, mansūm, *to chew*.
 Mergō, mersī, mersūm, *to dip*.
 Mētuō, mētuī (mētūtūm, *rare*), *to*
fear.
 Mingō, minxī, minctūm and mic-
 tūm, *to make water*.
 Mīnuō, mīnuī, mīnūtūm, *to lessen*.
 Mittō, mīsī, missūm, *to send*.
 Mōlō, mōluī, mōlītūm, *to grind*.
 Mungō (obs.), ēmungō, ēmunxī,
 ēmunctūm, *to wipe the nose*.
 Nectō, nexuī and nexī, nexūm, *to*
knit; annectō, annexuī, annec-
 tūm. *So innectō and connectō*.
 Ningō or ninguō, ninxī, —, *to snow*.
 Noscō, nōvī, nōtūm, *to know*. Ag-
 noscō and cognoscō have -nītūm;
 dignoscō and prænoscō have only
 the present-stem.
 Nūbō, nupsī, nuptūm, *to veil*.
 Nuō, *to nod*; abnuō, -nuī, -nūītūm
 or -nūtūm; annuō, -nuī, -nūtūm;
 innuō, -nuī, -nūtūm; rēnuō, -nuī,
 —.
 Olō (ōlērē), —, —, *to smell*.
 Pandō, pandī, passūm or pansūm,
to spread; dispandō, —, dispan-
 sūm.
 Pangō, panxī, pēgī and pēpīgī,
 panctūm and pactūm, panctūrūs,
to fix. *The compounds have -pīgī,*
-pactūm, except dēpangō and sup-
pingō, which want the perfect-stem;
and rēpangō, which wants both
perfect and supine stems.
 Parcō, pēpereī, rarely parsī, parci-
 tūm and parsūm, *to spare*.
 Pāriō, pēpērī, partūm and pārītūm,
to bring forth. *The compounds are*
of the fourth conjugation.

Pascō, pāvī, pastūm, *to feed*.
 Peetō, pexī, pexūm and pectītūm,
to comb.
 Pēdō, pīpēdī, —, *to break wind*;
 oppēdō, —, —.
 Pellō, pēpūlī, pulsūm, *to drive*.
 Pendō, pēpendī, pensūm, *to weigh*.
 Pētō, pētīvī and -iī, pētītūm, *to beg*.
 Pingō, pinxī, pictūm, *to paint*.
 Pinsō or pisō, pinsī and pinsuī, pin-
 sītūm, pinsūm and pistūm, *to*
pound.
 Plangō, planxī, planetūm, *to beat*.
 Plaudō, plausī, plausūm, *to clap*;
 circumplaudō, —, —. *The*
other compounds, except applaudō,
change au into ō.
 Plectō, plexī and plexuī, plexūm, *to*
twine.
 Pluō, pluī or plūvī, —, *to rain*.
 Pōnō, pōsuī, pōsītūm, *to place*.
 Porriciō, porrēcī, porrectūm, *to sac-*
rifice.
 Poscō, pōposeī, —, *to demand*.
 Prēhendō, }
 Prendō, } -dī, -sūm, *to seize*.
 Prēmō, pressī, pressūm, *to press*.
 Prōmō, prompsī, promptūm, *to bring*
out.
 Psallō, psallī, —, *to play on a*
stringed instrument.
 Pungō, pūpūgī, punctūm, *to prick*.
The compounds with con-, dis-, ex-,
and inter-, have punxī, punctūm;
rēpungō has no perfect or supine.
 Quærō, quæsivī and quæsīī, quæsī-
 tūm, *to seek*.
 Quātiō, —, quassūm, *to shake*.
The compounds change quā into cū:
as, concūtiō, concussī, concussūm.
 Quiescō, quicvī, quiētūm, *to rest*.
 Rādō, rāsī, rāsūm, *to shave*.
 Rāpiō, rāpuī, raptūm, *to snatch*.

Rēgð, rexī, rectūm, *to rule.*
 Rēpð, repsi, reptūm, *to creep.*
 Rōdð, rōsī, rōsūm, *to gnaw.* E- and
 præ-rōdð *want the perfect-stem ;*
and obrōdð, both perfect and su-
pine stems.
 Rūdð, rūdivī, rūdītūm, *to bray.*
 Rumpð, rūpī, ruptūm, *to break.*
 Ruð, ruī, rūtūm, ruītūrūs, *to fall ;*
 corruð, corruī, — ; *so irruð.*
 Sālð or sallð, —, salsūm, *to salt.*
 Sāpið, sāpīvi and sāpiī, —, *to be*
wise ; rēsīpið, —, — ; *so dē-*
sīpið.
 Scābð, scābī, —, *to scratch.*
 Scalpð, scalpsi, scalptūm, *to engrave.*
 Scandð, scandī, scansūm, *to climb.*
 Seindð, seīdī (anciently seiscēdī),
 scissūm, *to cut.*
 Seiscð, seīvī, seītūm, *to order.*
 Scribð, scripsi, scriptūm, *to write.*
 Sculpð, sculpsi, sculptūm, *to carve.*
 Sērð, sēvī, sātūm, *to sow.*
 Sērð, —, sertūm, *to entwine.* Com-
 pounds have sēruī.
 Serpð, serpsi, serptūm, *to creep.*
 Sīdð, sīdī (collateral form of sēdeð),
to settle.
 Sīnð, sīvī, sītūm, *to place.*
 Sistð, stītī, stātūm, *to stop.* The
 compounds with con, de, ex, and ob,
 have stītī, stītūm ; the rest want
 the supine-stem.
 Solvð, solvī, sōlūtūm, *to loose.*
 Spargð, sparsi, sparsūm, *to scatter.*
 Spēcīð, spexī, spectūm, *to look ;*
used only in the compounds.
 Spērnð, sprēvī, sprētūm, *to despise.*
 Spuð, spui, spūtūm, *to spit ;* respuð,
 respuī, —.
 Stātuð, stātuī, stātūtūm, *to place.*
 Sternð, strāvī, strātūm, *to strew.*
 Sternuð, sternui, —, *to sneeze.*

Sterð, stertui, —, *to snore.*
 Stinguð, —, —, *to put out.* The
 compounds have stinxī, stinetūm.
 Strēpð, strēpuī, —, *to make a*
noise.
 Strīðð, strīdī, *to creak.*
 Stringð, strinxī, strictūm, *to bind.*
 Struð, struxī, structūm, *to build.*
 Sūgð, suxī, suctūm, *to suck.*
 Sūmð, sumpsī, sumptūm, *to take.*
 Suð, sui, sūtūm, *to sew ;* consuð,
 —, consūtūm ; *so dissuð, assuð,*
 —, —.
 Tangð (strengthened from tāgð), tē-
 tigī, tactūm, *to touch.*
 Tēgð, texī, tectūm, *to cover.*
 Temnð, —, — ; contemnð, -tem-
 psi. -temptūm, *to despise.*
 Tendð, tētendī, tensūm and tentūm,
to stretch. So in-, os-, and rētēn-
 do ; —dētendð, —, -tensūm. The
 other compounds have tentūm.
 Tergð (tergeð, second conjugation),
 tersī, tersūm, *to wipe.*
 Tērð, trivī, trītūm (syncopated for
 tērīvī, tērītūm), *to rub.*
 Texð, texuī, textūm, *to weave.*
 Tingð (or tinguð), tinxī, tinctūm, *to*
moisten.
 Tollð, tētūli (anciently), rarely tollī,
 —, *to raise.* Sustūli and sub-
 lātūm, from suffērð, supply the
 perfect and supine stems of tollð
 and sustollð. The compounds want
 perfect-stem.
 Trāhð, traxī, tractūm, *to draw.*
 Trēmð, trēmuī, —, *to tremble.*
 Tribuð, tribuī, tribūtūm, *to attribute.*
 Trūdð, trūsī, trūsūm, *to thrust.*
 Tundð, tūtūdī, tunsūm and tūsūm,
to beat. The compounds have -tū-
 sūm ; but dētunsūm and obtun-
 sūm also occur.

Ungð (or -guð), unxī, unctūm, to anoint.

Urð, ussī, ustūm, to burn.

Vādð, vāsī (once), —, to go. Sūpervādð, —, —. The compounds have vāsī, vāsūm.

Vēhð, vexī, vectūm, to carry.

Vellð, velli and vulsī, vulsūm, to pluck out. So āvellð, divellð, ēvellð, intervellð, -vulsī, -vulsūm.

The other compounds have velli only.

Vergð, versī, —, to incline.

Verrð, verri, versūm, to sweep.

Vertð, vertī, versūm, to turn.

Vincð, vicī, victūm, to conquer.

Viðð, vīsī, vīsūm, to visit.

Vivð, vixī, victūm, to live.

Volvð, volvi, vōlūtūm, to roll.

Vömð, vömuī, vömītūm, to vomit.

INCEPTIVE VERBS.

§ 231. Very few inceptive verbs have a supine-stem, and these take it from the simple verb; the perfect-stem, when used, is also adopted from the simple verb. In many inceptives, especially those derived from nouns and adjectives, the intermediate verb in -eo is not used: as, *grāvesco*, from *grāvīs*.

Acescð, ācuī, to grow sour.

Ægrescð, —, to grow sick.

Albescð, —, to grow white.

Alescð, —, to grow; coālescð, -āluī, -ālītūm.

Ardescð, arsi, to take fire.

Arescð, —, to grow dry; exārescð, -āruī; so inārescð, pērārescð.

Augescð, —, to begin to grow.

Cālescð, —, to grow warm.

Calvescð, —, to grow bald.

Candescð, canduī, to grow white.

Cānescð, —, to grow gray.

Clārescð, clāruī, to become bright.

Condormiscð, -dormivī, to grow sleepy.

Contīcescð, -tīcuī, to become silent.

Crebrescð, crēbuī and crebruī, to increase.

Crūdescð, crūduī, to become cruel.

Dītescð, —, to grow rich.

Dulcescð, dulcuī, to grow sweet.

Dūrescð, dūruī, to grow hard.

Evīlescð, ēviluī, to grow vile.

Extīnescð, extīmuī, to fear greatly.

Fātiscð, —, to gape.

Fervescð, —, to boil.

Flaccescð, flaccuī, to wilt.

Flōrescð, flōruī, to begin to flourish.

Frācescð, frācuī, to grow rancid.

Frīgescð, frixi, to grow cold.

Frondescð, fronduī, to grow leafy.

Frūtīcescð, —, to begin to shoot.

Gēlascð, —, to freeze.

Gēmīscð, —, to begin to sigh.

Gemmascð, —, to begin to bud.

Gemmescð, —, to become a gem.

Gēnērasecð, —, to be produced.

Grandescð, —, to grow large.

Grāvescð, —, to grow heavy.

Hærescð, —, to adhere.

Hēbescð, —, to grow dull.

Horrescð, horruī, to grow rough.

Hūmescð, —, to grow moist.

Ignescð, —, to become inflamed.

Indōlescð, -dōluī, to be grieved.

Insölescö, —, *to be haughty.*
 Integrascö, —, *to grow fresh.*
 Jüvënescö, —, *to grow young.*
 Languescö, languî, *to grow languid.*
 Lăpidescö, —, *to become stone.*
 Lătescö, —, *to grow broad.*
 Lătescö, —, *to lie hid; dëlîtescö*
and oblîtescö have -lîtuî.
 Lontescö, *to become soft.*
 Lîquesccö, lîcuî, *to become liquid.*
 Lûcescö, —, *to grow light.*
 Lûtescö, —, *to grow muddy.*
 Măcescö, —, } *to grow lean.*
 Macrescö, macruî, }
 Mădescö, măduî, *to grow wet.*
 Marcescö, —, *to pine away.*
 Mătûrescö, mătûruî, *to ripen.*
 Misërescö, —, *to pity.*
 Mîtescö, —, *to grow mild.*
 Mollescö, —, *to grow soft.*
 Mûtescö, —, *to grow dumb; ob-*
mûtescö, obmûtuî.
 Nigrescö, nigrui, *to grow black.*
 Nîtescö, nîtuî, *to grow bright.*
 Nôtescö, nôtui, *to become known.*
 Obbrûtescö, —, *to become brutish.*
 Obdormiscö, —, *to fall asleep.*
 Obsurdescö, obsurduî, *to grow deaf.*
 Occallescö, —, -callui, *to grow*
hard.
 Olescö (*rarely used*), ädölescö, äd-
 ölevî, ädultûm, *to grow up; ex-*
 ölescö, -ölevî, -öletûm, *to grow*
obsolete; so, obsölescö; inölescö,
—, -ölevî, ölitûm.
 Palleescö, pallui, *to grow pale.*
 Pătescö, pătuî, *to be opened.*
 Păvescö, —, *to grow fearful.*
 Pertîmescö, -tîmuî, *to fear greatly.*

Pinguescö, —, *to grow fat.*
 Pûbescö, pûbuî, *to grow to maturity.*
 Puërescö, —, *to become a boy.*
 Pûtescö, pûtuî, } *to become rotten.*
 Putrescö, —, }
 Rărescö, —, *to become thin.*
 Rësîpiscö, -sîpivî, -sîpiî and -sîpuî,
to come to oneself.
 Rîgescö, rîguî, *to grow cold.*
 Rûbescö, rûbuî, *to grow red.*
 Sănescö, —, *to become sound; con-*
sănescö, -sănuî.
 Sënescö, sënuî, *to grow old.*
 Sentescö, —, *to perceive.*
 Siccescö, —, *to become dry.*
 Sîlescö, —, *to grow silent.*
 Sölıdescö, —, *to grow solid.*
 Sordescö, sorduî, *to grow filthy.*
 Splendescö, splenduî, *to grow bright.*
 Spûmescö, —, *to begin to foam.*
 Stërîlescö, —, *to become barren.*
 Stûpescö, —, *to be astonished.*
 Suescö, suëvî, suëtûm, *to become ac-*
customed.
 Tăbescö, tăbuî, *to waste away.*
 Tënërescö and -ascö, —, *to grow*
tender.
 Tëpescö, tēpuî, *to grow warm.*
 Torpiscö, torpuî, *to grow torpid.*
 Trëmiscö, —, *to grow tremulous.*
 Tûmescö, tûmuî, } *to begin to swell.*
 Turgescö, }
 Uvescö, —, *to grow moist.*
 Vălescö, *to grow strong.*
 Vănescö, —, *to vanish; ëvănescö,*
ëvănî.
 Vëtërescö, -ăvî, *to grow old.*
 Vîrescö, —, *to grow green.*
 Vîvescö, vixî, *to come to life.*

§ 232. *Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

Apscōr, aptūs, <i>to get.</i>	Nanciscōr, nactūs or nanctūs, <i>to obtain.</i>
Expergiscōr, -perrectūs, <i>to wake up.</i>	Nascōr, nātūs, nascitūrūs, <i>to be born.</i>
Fātiscōr, <i>to gape</i> ; dēfētiscōr, dēfessūs. <i>So the other compounds.</i>	Nītōr, nīsūs or nixūs, nīsūrūs, <i>to strive.</i>
Fruōr, fructūs, fruitūs, fruitūrūs, <i>to enjoy.</i>	Oblīviscōr, oblītūs, <i>to forget.</i>
Fungōr, functūs, <i>to perform.</i>	Pāciscōr, pactūs, <i>to bargain.</i>
Grādīōr, gressūs, <i>to walk</i> ; aggrēdiōr, aggrēdī and aggrēdīrī, aggressūs; <i>so progrēdiōr.</i>	Pātiōr, passūs, <i>to suffer.</i>
Irascōr, irātūs, <i>to be angry.</i>	Prōfīciscōr, prōfectūs, <i>to set out.</i>
Lābōr, lapsūs, <i>to fall.</i>	Quērōr, questūs, <i>to complain.</i>
Līquōr, liquī, <i>to flow.</i>	Ringōr, rinetūs, <i>to snarl.</i>
Lōquōr, lōcūtūs, <i>to speak.</i>	Sēquōr, sēcūtūs, <i>to follow.</i>
Mīniscōr (obs.), commīniscōr, commentūs, <i>to invent</i> ; rēmīniscōr, <i>to remember.</i>	Tuōr, tūtūs, <i>to protect.</i>
Mōriōr, mōrī, <i>rarely mōrīrī</i> , mortuūs, mōritūrūs, <i>to die.</i>	Ulciscōr, ultūs, <i>to avenge.</i>
	Utōr, ūsūs, <i>to use.</i>
	Vescōr, <i>to eat.</i>

Fourth Conjugation.

§ 233. 1. Verbs of the fourth conjugation are vowel-verbs, the characteristic vowel being *i*. The perfect-stem is formed—

(a.) By adding *v*: as, *audio*, *audīvī*.

(b.) The characteristic vowel is dropped in some verbs, and then *v* passes into *u*: as, *sālī-o*, *sāl-u-ī*.

(c.) By dropping the characteristic and lengthening the stem-vowel: as, *vēnī-o*, *vēn-ī*.

2. The supine-stem is formed by adding *t*. In many verbs *v* of the perfect-stem is elided.

3. The following list contains those verbs which form the perfect-stem according to the last three methods mentioned above:

Amīciō, -uī or -xī, āmictūm, <i>to clothe.</i>	Cambiō, campsi, <i>to exchange.</i>
Balbūtiō, —, —, <i>to stammer.</i>	Dēmentiō, —, —, <i>to be mad.</i>
Cæcūtiō, —, —, <i>to be blind.</i>	Effūtiō, —, effūtītūm, <i>to prate.</i>

Eð, ivi, itum, *to go*. The compounds almost always elide *v* of the perfect-stem, ředii, etc.; anteeð, -ivi or -ii, —. Contraeð and posteð have no perfect or supine.

Farcið, farsī, fartum and faretum, *to pack*. The compounds change a into e; řefereið, -fersī, -fertum; confereið, —, confertum; effarcið or -fereið, —, effortum.

Fërið, —, —, *to strike*.

Fëřecið, -ivi and -ii, *to be fierce*.

Fulcið, fulsī, fultum, *to prop*. Fulcītūs occurs.

Gannið, —, —, *to bark*.

Glōcið, —, —, *to cluck*.

Grandið, —, —, *to make great*.

Haurið, hausī, rarely haurii, hausum, rarely hausitum, hausus, hausurus, hauritūs, hauritūrus.

Hinnið, —, —, *to neigh*.

Ineptið, —, —, *to trifle*.

Parið is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth: as, āpërið, āpëruī, āpertum; so oppërið; řëpërið, řëpëri, řëpertum; so compërið, rarely deponent.

Prūrið, —, —, *to itch*.

Queð (like eð), quīvi, quītum, *to be able*.

Raucið, —, rausum, *to be hoarse*.

Rūgið, —, —, *to roar*.

Sævið, sævii, -itum, *to rage*.

Sāgið, —, —, *to perceive keenly*.

Sālið, sāluī or saliī, saltum, *to leap*;

as- and dē- silið, -uī, -sultum;

pro- and trans- silið, -uī, -ivi, -ii;

ab-, in-, sub- silið, -ii, -uī; dis-,

ex-, řē-silið, -uī; circum- and prae-

silið have no perfect or supine.

Sālið, —, sālitum, *to salt*.

Sancið, sanxī, sanctum and sancitum, *to ratify*.

Sarcið, sarsī, sartum, *to patch*.

Sarrið, -ivi, -uī, -itum, *to hoe*.

Scātūrið, —, —, *to gush out*.

Sentið, sensī, sensum, *to feel*.

Sëpëlið, -ivi and -ii, rarely sëpëli, sëpultum, rarely -itum, *to bury*.

Sëpið, sepsi, septum, *to hedge*.

Singultið, —, —; also singultð, —, -ātum, *to sob*.

Sitið, -ivi and -ii, —, *to be thirsty*.

Suffið, -ivi and -ii, -itum, *to fumigate*.

Tussið, —, —, *to cough*.

Vāgið, -ivi or -ii, *to cry*.

Vënið, vëni, ventum, *to come*.

Vincið, vinxī, vinetum, *to bind*.

Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

Mëtiðr, mensūs and mëtitūs, *to measure*.

Ordiðr, orsūs, *to begin*.

Oriðr, ortūs, řritūrus, *to rise*. Of the third conjugation, except *infin. pres.*

Përiðr (obs. whence përitūs); expë-

riðr, expertūs, *to try*; oppëriðr, oppertūs and oppëritūs, *to wait for*.

Pōtiðr, pōtitūs, *to obtain*.

The poets sometimes use an indicative present and subjunctive imperfect of the third conjugation.

APPENDIX VIII.

ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.

§ 234. 1. The Romans divided the natural day (from sunrise to sunset) into twelve equal hours of varying length according to the time of year. The night was also divided in the same way into four equal watches.

2. The year, according to the calendar of Julius Cæsar, was divided into twelve months, as follows:—

Jānuārius,	31 days.	Maius,	31 days.	September,	30 days.
Februārius,	28 “	Jūnius,	30 “	Octōber,	31 “
Martius,	31 “	Quintilis,	31 “	Nōvember,	30 “
Aprīlis,	30 “	Sextilis,	31 “	Dēcember,	31 “

3. In early times the year began in March: hence the names, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards changed to *Jūlius* and *Augustus*, in honor of the first two Cæsars.

4. The day of the month was reckoned from three points, Kalends, Nones, and Ides, which fell respectively on the *first*, *fifth*, and *thirteenth* of each month; except March, May, July, and October, when the Nones fell on the *seventh*, and the Ides on the *fifteenth*.

5. Any given date was reckoned, not backward from the first day of the month as with us, but forward to the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, *inclusive*. Thus, the 2d of March was called the “sixth before the Nones of March;” *sextūs (antē) Nōnās Martiās*, or *antē diēm sextūm Nōnās Martiās*; the 16th of March was called the “17th before the Kalends of April,” *septimūs dēcimūs (antē) Kālendās Aprīlēs*, or *antē diēm septimūm dēcimūm Kālendās Aprīlēs*. The 2d of June was called *quartūs Nōnās Jūniās*, or *antē diēm quartūm Nōnās Jūniās*, etc.

6. In leap-year February had 29 days, the 24th (*sextūs Kal. Mar.*) being doubled and called *bisextūs Kal. Mar.*—Hence leap-year was called *bisextilis*.

7. Therefore, to reduce the Roman calendar to our own,—

(a.) For a date before the Nones or Ides, subtract the number of days from the day of the month on which the Nones or Ides

fell, and add one to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. VIII, Idus Maias*, $(15 - 8) + 1 = 8$; May 8th.

(*b.*) For a date before the Kalends, subtract the number of days from the number of days in the month, and add *two* to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. XVII, Kal. Jun.*, $(31 - 17) + 2 = 16$; May 16th.

8. To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the process will be reversed.

9. The week of seven days (*hebdomās*) was not used in Rome till after the introduction of Christianity.

APPENDIX IX. PROSODY.

§ 235. Prosody is the science of versification, and belongs rather to poetry than to grammar.

QUANTITY.

§ 236. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it, a long syllable requiring twice as much time as a short one.

2. A vowel is long by *nature*, as *dūco*; or by *position*, as *rēstiti*. A syllable that is sometimes long and sometimes short is said to be *common*.

§ 237. RULE I.—A vowel before another vowel is short.

So also when *h* comes between two vowels, it being only a breathing.

Exc. 1. *Fio* has *i* long except before *ēr*; and sometimes even then: as, *fīunt*, *fīam*, *fīeret*.

Exc. 2. *E* between two *i*'s is long in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension: as, *fāciēi*.

Exc. 3. *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *āi*: as, *aulāi*.

Exc. 4. *A* and *e* are long in the endings *āius*, *ēius*, *ēia*.

Exc. 5. *I* is common in genitives in *īus*, but in *altērius* it is almost always short; in *ālius*, long, contracted for *ālīus*.

Exc. 6. The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Diana*, *io*, and *ohe*, is common.

§ 238. RULE II.—Diphthongs are long.

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel.

Exc. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word is sometimes made short when the next word begins with a vowel.

§ 239. RULE III.—Contracted syllables are long. (For an exception, see § 223, 3.)

§ 240. RULE IV.—A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position.

NOTE.—A vowel, other than *i*, really combines with *j* to form a diphthong.

Remark 1.—The vowel is long by position when one or both the consonants are in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, it is common.

Remark 2.—A short vowel at the end of a word before a double consonant or *j* beginning the next word is not lengthened.

Remark 3.—The law of position is frequently disregarded by the comic poets.

Exc. 1. *I* is short before *j* in the compounds of *jūgūm*: as, *bījūgūs*.

Exc. 2. A vowel naturally short, before a mute followed by a liquid is common.

Remark 4.—A vowel is made long by position in compound words where the former part ends with a mute and the latter part begins with a liquid: as, *āb-luo*.

Remark 5.—A short vowel at the end of a word, before a mute and a liquid in the next word, is rarely lengthened, except in the arsis of a foot.

Remark 6.—In Latin words only *l* and *r* following a mute lengthen a preceding short vowel.

§ 241. RULE V.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives.

Exc. 1. Frequentatives from verbs of the first conjugation change *ā* long into *ī* short: as, *clamāt-um*, *clamīt-o*.

Exc. 2. (a.) Some derivatives lengthen a short vowel: such as *dēni* from *dēcem*, *persōna* from *sōno*, *hūmānus* from *hōmo*, *sēcius* from *sēcus*, *lāterna* from *lāteo*, *sēdes* from *sēdeo*, *lītera* from *līno*, *tēgula* from *tēgo*, *suspīcio* from *suspīcor*.

(b.) Some shorten a long vowel: as, *dīcax* from *dīco*, *dux* (*dūcis*) from *dūco*, *fīdes* from *fīdo*, *lābo* from *lābor*, *lūcerna* from *lūceo*, *molestus* from *mōles*, *nāto* from *nātum*, *nōto* from *nōtum*, *ōdium* from *ōdi*, *sōpor* from *sōpio*, *vādum* from *vādo*, *vōco* from *vōcis*.

§ 242. RULE VI.—Words introduced from the Greek or other languages retain their original quantity; so, also, Latin stems have the same quantity as the cognate Greek ones: as, *Darīus* (Greek *Δαρειος*); *vīcus* (Greek *οἰκος*, digammated).

§ 243. RULE VII.—Compound words retain the quantity of their components.

Exc. 1. *Agnītus* and *cognītus* from *nōtus*, *dējēro* and *pējēro* from *jūro*; *hōdiē* from *hōc diē*; compounds in *dīcus* from *dīco*; *innūba*, *prōnūba*, *subnūba*, from *nūbo* (but *connubium* has *u* common); *imbēcillus* from *bācillum*; *ambītum* from *ītum*, but *i* is short in *ambītus* and *ambītio*.

Exc. 2. *Pro* is short in *prōcella*, *prōcul*, *prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfestus*, *prōfīcor*, *prōfīteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfundus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *prōcūro*, *prōfundo*, *prōpāgo*, *propello*, and *prōpīno*. The Greek *prō* is always short.

Remark 1.—The inseparable prepositions *dīs* and *rē* are short; *dī*, *sē*, and *vē*, are long.

Remark 2.—*A* ending the former part of a compound word is long; the other vowels, short.

Exc. 1. *E* is long in *sē* for *sex* or *sēmī*, and common in some compounds of *facio*.

Exc. 2. *I* is long when the first part of a compound is declined, or may be separated without altering the sense: as, *quīdam*, *agrīcultūra*; also in the former part of compounds of *dīēs*

(*bīdūm*, *merīdiēs*, etc.), in *ibique*, *utrobique*, and *ibidem*, and in *idem* when masculine.

Exc. 3. *O* is long in compounds of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, *quando* (except *quandōquīdem*), and in *aliōqui*.

INCREMENTS.

§ 244. 1. A noun is said to *increase* when in any of its cases it has more syllables than in the nominative-singular. A plural increment is one which belongs to the endings of the plural number; while a singular increment always belongs to the stem.

2. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first increment, and the penult the second; if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third: as,

sermo, ser-mōn-¹-īs, ser-mōn-¹ ²-ī-būs, īt-¹ ² ³-īn-ēr-ī-būs.

SINGULAR INCREMENTS.

§ 245. RULE VIII.—Increments of the third declension in *a* and *o* are long; in *e*, *i*, and *u*, short.

Remark 1.—There are no singular increments in the second declension, stems in *r* merely dropping the nominative-ending. Those of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions belong to § 237.

A.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *āl* and *ār* (except *Car* and *Nar*), with *ānās*, *mās*, *vās* (*vādīs*), *baccār*, *hēpār*, *jūbār*, *lār*, *nectār*, *pār*, *fax*, and *sāl*, increase short.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ś* preceded by a consonant increase short in *a* and *o*: as, *daps*, *dāpīs*; *scrōbs*, *scrōbīs*.

O.

Exc. 3. *O* in the increment of neuters is short; but *ōs* (*ōrīs*)

and neuter comparatives have *o* long. The increment of *ādōi* is common.

Exc. 4. *Arbōr*, *mēmōr*, *bōs*, *compōs*, *impōs*, *lēpūs*, and *præcox* increase short.

E.

Exc. 5. Nouns in *ēn*, *ēnīs* (except *Hymēn*) with *Anio* and *Nērio*, increase long; also, *hærēs*, *lōcuplēs*, *mansuēs*, *mercēs*, *quiēs*, *Ibēr*, *vēr*, *ālēc* or *ālex*, *lex*, *rex*, *vervex*, *plebs*, and *seps*.

I.

Exc. 6. Nouns and adjectives in *ix* increase long; but *cālix*, *coxendix*, *filix*, *fornix*, *lārix*, *nix*, *pix*, *sālix*, and *strix*, increase short.

Exc. 7. *Dis*, *glīs*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nesīs*, *Quīrīs*, *Samnīs*, and *vībex*, increase long.

U.

Exc. 8. Nouns in *ūs* (gen. *ūrīs*, *ūdīs*, *ūtīs*), with *fūr*, *frux*, *lux*, *Pollux*, increase long; but *intercūs*, *Ligūs*, and *pēcūs* increase short.

Remark 2.—Increments in *y* belong to Greek nouns.

PLURAL INCREMENTS.

§ 246. RULE IX.—Plural increments in *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; in *i* and *u*, short.

INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 247. 1. A verb is said to *increase* when any of its forms has more syllables than the second person singular of the indicative present active.

2. The number of the increment is reckoned as in nouns (§ 244, 2): as,

audīs, aud-¹-ī-tīs, aud-ī-^{1 2}-ē-bās, aud-ī-^{1 2 3}-ē-bā-tīs, aud-ī-ē-^{1 2 3 4}-bām-ī-nī.

§ 248. RULE X.—In the increment of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o* are long, *i* and *u* are short.

A.

Exc. 1. The first increment of *dō* is short.

E.

Exc. 2. *E* is short before *r* in the *first* increment of the present and imperfect of the third conjugation, and in the second increment in *bērīs* and *bērē*.

Exc. 3. *E* is short before *rām*, *rīm*, and *ro*, and the persons formed from them.

I.

Exc. 4. *I* is long before *v* or *s* in the perfect-stem.

Exc. 5. *I* is long in the supine-stem of *gaudeo*, *divīdo*, *pēto*, *quæro*, *rēcenseo*, *oblīviscōr*, and intensives in *sso*.

Exc. 6. *I* is long in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except *imūs* of the perfect; also in *sīmus*, *sītīs*, *vētimus*, *vēlītīs*, *nōlito*, *nōlite*, *nōlītōte*.

Exc. 7. *I* is common in *ris*, *rimus*, *ritīs*, of the indicative future-perfect and subjunctive perfect.

U.

Exc. 8. *U* is long in the supine-stem and future participle active.

PENULTS.

§ 249. RULE XI.—Monosyllabic perfect and supine stems are long (§ 225, 2 c): as, *mōvi*, *mōtum* (perhaps syncopated from *mōvītūm*).

Exc. (a.) Seven perfect-stems are short: *bīb-i*, *dēd-i*, *fīd-i* (from *findo*), *scīd-i*, *stēt-i*, *stīt-i*, *tūl-i*.

NOTE.—A reduplication is always short: hence the short stems of *bīb-i*, *dēd-i*, *stēt-i* (for *sēsti*), and *stīt-i* (for *sīsti*).

(b.) Ten supine-stems are short: *cīt-um*, *dāt-um*, *īt-um*, *līt-um*, *quīt-um*, *rāt-um*, *rūt-um*, *sāt-um*, *sīt-um*, *stāt-um*.

So, also, the obsolete *fūtum*, whence *fūtūrus*.

§ 250. RULE XII.—(a.) Words in *ābrum*, *ācrum*,

ātrum, ūbrum, ōsus, ātum, ītum, ūtum, ūdus, āris, and ēlus, lengthen the penult.

Exc. *Gēlus, gēlum, and scēlus; defrūtum, pulpītum, pētōritum, lūtum*.

(b.) Words in *ca, do, ga, go, ma, tus, le, les, lis, na, ne, ni, nis, dex, dix, mex, mix, lex, and rex*, lengthen the penult.

Exc. In *CA*, *brassica, dica, fūlica, mantica, pēdica, pertica, scūtica, tūnica, vōmica*; in *DO*, *cādo, dīvido, ēdo* (to eat), *sōlido, spādo, trēpido*; in *GA* and *GO*, *cāliga, fūga, plāga, tōga, ēgo, ligo*; in *MA*, *ānima, lacrima, victima*; in *TUS*, *cātus, lātus* (-ēris), *mētus, vēgētus, ānhēlitus, dīgītus, grātūitus, hālītus, servītus, spirītus, nōtus, quōtus, arbūtus, pūtus, inclūtus*; in *LE*, *māle*; in *LIS*, verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*; adjectives in *ātilis, dapsilis, grācilis, hūmīlis, pārīlis, mūgīlis, sīmīlis, stērīlis, strīgīlis*; in *NE* and *NIS*, *sīne, cānis, cīnis, jūvenis*; in *NA*, *buccīna, fiscīna, fēmīna, fuscīna, lāmīna, pāgīna, pātīna, sarcīna, āpīnā, nundīnā*; in *LEX*, *cūlex, sīlex*; in *MEX*, *rūmex*.

(c.) *A, e, o, and u*, before *mūs, mum, nus, num*, are long.

Exc. *Glōmus, hūmus, postūmus, nēmus; ānus* (an old woman), *mānus, oceānus, pēnus, tēnus, Vēnus, ōnus, bōnus, sōnus, lāgānum*.

(d.) Words in *ātes, itis, ōtis, āta, ēta, ōta, ūta*, lengthen the penult, except *sītis, pōtis, nōta, rōta*.

(e.) A penultimate vowel before *v* is long.

Exc. *Avis, brēvis, grāvis, lēvis, ōvis; jūvo, lāvo, ōvo; āvus, cāvus, fāvus, nōvus, fāvor, pāvor, nōvem*.

§ 251. RULE XIII.—(a.) Words in *ācus, icus, idus, ilus, imus; ba, bo, pa, po; ētas, itas, and ita*, shorten the penult.

Exc. *Dācus, mērācus, ōpācus; āmicus, apricus, ficus, mendīcus, pīcus, posticus, pūdīcus, spīcus, umbīlicus; Īdus, fīdus*,

infidus, nīdus; asīlus, bīmus, līmus, ōpīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, quadrīmus, trīmus, and the superlatives *īmus* and *prīmus*; *glēba, bābo, glābo, lībo, nābo, scrībo, rīpa, cūpa, pāpa, pūpa, scōpa, rēpo, pituita*.

(b.) Diminutives and polysyllables in *ūlus*, with verbs in *īno, īnor*, shorten the penult.

Exc. *Festīno, sāgīno, prōpīno, ōpīnor*, and compounds of *clīno*.

§ 252. RULE XIV.—Words in *īnus*, except adjectives expressing time or material, lengthen the penult.

Exc. But *mātātīnus, rēpentinus*, and *vespertīnus* lengthen the penult, and the following shorten it: *accīnus, āsīnus, dīmīnus, fācīnus, sīnus, termīnus, gēmīnus, circīnus, mīnus*.

§ 253. RULE XV.—Before final *ro* and *ror*, *a* and *e* are short; the other vowels, long.

Exc. *Pēro, spēro, fōro, sōror, vōro, fūro*.

§ 254. RULE XVI.—Before final *rus, ra, rum*, *e* is short; the other vowels, long.

Exc. *Austērus, gālērus, plērus, prōcērus, sērus, sēvērus, vērus, stātēra; barbārus, nūrus, pīrus, scārus, spārus, tōrus, hāra, mōra, pārum, suppārum*.

§ 255. RULE XVII.—Adverbs in *tīm* lengthen the penult; those in *īter* and *ītus* shorten it. But *stātīm* (immediately) is short.

Remark 1.—Many apparent exceptions to the foregoing rules are covered by § 241, § 242, § 243. The masculine only of adjectival terminations is given, the quantity of the feminine and the neuter being of course that of the masculine.

Remark 2.—Patronymics (Greek) in *ādes* and *īdes* shorten the penult, while those in *āis, ēis*, and *ōis*, lengthen it. Nouns in *eus* form patronymics in *īdes*.

ANTEPENULTS.

§ 256. RULE XVIII.—The connecting vowels *i*, *o*, and *u* are short; *a* is long: as, *vīnōlentus*, *fraudūlentus*, *ālimentum*, *atrāmentum*.

§ 257. RULE XIX.—A vowel before *nea*, *neo*, *nia*, *nio*, *nīus*, *nīum*, is long.

Exc. *Castānea*, *tīnea*, *māneo*, *mīneo*, *mōneo*, *tēneo*, *ignōmīnia*, *luscīnia*, *vēnia*, *lānio*, *vēnio*, and words in *cīnium*.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 258. RULE XX.—(*a*.) Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long.

(*b*.) Monosyllabic *nouns* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short.

Exc. 1. *Cōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *pōl*, *vīr*, *ōs* (*ossis*), *vās* (*vadis*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En*, *nōn*, *crās*, *plūs*, *cūr*, *pār*, are long. So, also, monosyllables in *c*, except *nēc* (short), and *hīc* and *hōc* (common).

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases and verb-forms in *as*, *es*, and *is* are long; but *ēs* from *sūm* is short.

POLYSYLLABLES.

A final.

§ 259. RULE XXI.—*A final*, in words declined, is short, and long in words undeclined.

Exc. 1. *A final* is long in the ablative singular of the first declension, and in the vocative singular of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*.

Exc. 2. *A* final is short in *eiă*, *ită*, *quiă*, and *pătă*, when used adverbially; sometimes also in *contra* and numerals in *ginta*. In *postea* it is common.

E final.

§ 260. RULE XXII.—*E* final is short in words of two or more syllables.

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in the first and fifth declensions.

Exc. 2. Final *e* in the imperative active second person singular of the second conjugation is a contraction; but it is sometimes short in *căve*, *văle*, *vide*.

Exc. 3. Final *e* is long in *fērē*, *fermē*, *ohē*, and in adverbs derived from adjectives of the second declension; but it is short in *bēnē*, *mălē*, *infernē*, and *supernē*.

I final.

§ 261. RULE XXIII.—*I* final is long.

Exc. *I* final is common in *mīhi*, *tībi*, *sībi*, *ībi*, *ūbi*, *nīsi*, *quāsi*, and *cui* when a dissyllable.

O final.

§ 262. RULE XXIV.—*O* final, in words of more than one syllable, is common.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and the ablative, and in the local adverbs *quō*, *eō*, *eōdem*, etc.; also in *omnīnō* and *iō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is short in *cītō*, *illicō*, *prōfectō*, and *mōdō*, and generally in *ēgo* and *hōmō*.

U final.

§ 263. RULE XXV.—*U* final is long.

D, L, N, R, T, final.

§ 264. RULE XXVI.—A vowel before *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, final, is short.

Exc. *E* is long in *liēn*, *Ibēr*, and *Celtībēr*.

C final.

§ 265. RULE XXVII.—A vowel before *c* final is long; but *e* in *donec* is short.

As, Es, Os, final.

§ 266. RULE XXVIII.—*As, es, and os, final, are long.*

Exc. 1. *As* is short in *ānās*.

Exc. 2. *Es* is short in nouns of the third declension, Class III. (§ 35); and in *pēnēs*.

Exc. 3. *Os* is short in *compōs, impōs, and ōs (ossis)*.

Is, Us, Ys, final.

§ 267. RULE XXIX.—*Is, us, and ys, final, are short.*

Exc. 1. *Is* and *us* are long in plural cases, and in the nominative of nouns having a long stem-vowel: as, *mūsīs, fructūs, tellūs, Samnīs*. But *būs* of the dative and the ablative is short.

Exc. 2. Contracted final syllables in *us* and *is* are of course long: as, *audīs* for *audī-īs, fructūs* for *fructū-īs*.

Exc. 3. *Rīs* in the indicative future-perfect and subjunctive perfect is common.

Remark.—The last syllable of a verse (except the anapæstic and Ionic *a minore*) may be long or short.

VERSIFICATION.

§ 268. 1. A *foot* is a combination of two or more syllables. A compound foot consists of two simple feet united.

2. The simple feet of two syllables are the

<i>Spondee,</i>	two long,	— —:	as,	<i>sēsē.</i>
<i>Pyrrhic,</i>	two short,	~ ~:	as,	<i>bōnē.</i>
<i>Trochee</i> or <i>Choree,</i>	} long and short,	— ~:	as,	<i>gūūdēt.</i>
<i>Iambus,</i>		~ —:	as	<i>dēō.</i>

3. The simple feet of three syllables are the

<i>Dactyl</i> ,	one long and two short,	— ∪ ∪: as,	<i>cōrpōrā</i> .
<i>Anapæst</i> ,	two short and one long,	∪ ∪ —: as,	<i>bōnītās</i> .
<i>Tribrach</i> ,	three short,	∪ ∪ ∪: as,	<i>cūpċrċ</i> .
<i>Molossus</i> ,	three long,	— — —: as,	<i>mīrārī</i> .
<i>Amphibrach</i> ,	short, long, and short,	∪ — ∪: as,	<i>pċrītūs</i> .
<i>Amphimācer</i> or <i>Cretic</i> ,	} long, short, and long,	— ∪ —: as,	<i>cċpċrānt</i> .
<i>Bacchīus</i> ,			
<i>Antibacchīus</i> ,	one short, two long,	∪ — —: as,	<i>āmābās</i> .
	two long, one short,	— — ∪: as,	<i>fċcīssċ</i> .

4. The compound feet are the

<i>Dispondeē</i> ,	double spondee,	— — — —: as,	<i>āccċpīssċnt</i> .
<i>Proceleusmatic</i> ,	double Pyrrhic,	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪: as,	<i>cċlċrītċ</i> .
<i>Ditrocheē</i> ,	double trochee,	— ∪ — ∪: as,	<i>ċrūdītūs</i> .
<i>Diiambus</i> ,	double iambus,	∪ — ∪ —: as,	<i>āmāvċrās</i> .
<i>Ionic ā majōre</i> ,	spondee and Pyrrhic,	— — ∪ ∪: as,	<i>cōnfċċrām</i> .
<i>Ionic ā mīnōre</i> ,	Pyrrhic and spondee,	∪ ∪ — —: as,	<i>ādōlēscċns</i> .
<i>Choriambus</i> ,	choree and iambus,	— ∪ ∪ —: as,	<i>crċdūlītās</i> .
<i>Antispast</i> ,	iambus and choree,	∪ — — ∪: as,	<i>vċrċcūdūs</i> .
<i>First epitrīt</i> ,	iambus and spondee,	∪ — — —: as,	<i>āmāvċrānt</i> .
<i>Second epitrīt</i> ,	choree and spondee,	— ∪ — —: as,	<i>īpċrāvī</i> .
<i>Third epitrīt</i> ,	spondee and iambus,	— — ∪ —: as,	<i>āuctōrītās</i> .
<i>Fourth epitrīt</i> ,	spondee and choree,	— — — ∪: as,	<i>fċcīssċtīs</i> .
<i>First pæon</i> ,	choree and Pyrrhic,	— ∪ ∪ ∪: as,	<i>ādmōnītūs</i> .
<i>Second pæon</i> ,	iambus and Pyrrhic,	∪ — ∪ ∪: as,	<i>āmābīlīs</i> .
<i>Third pæon</i> ,	Pyrrhic and choree,	∪ ∪ — ∪: as,	<i>pūċrītīs</i> .
<i>Fourth pæon</i> ,	Pyrrhic and iambus,	∪ ∪ ∪ —: as,	<i>cċlċrītās</i> .

5. *Isochronous* feet are those whose average quantity is equal. Thus, a dactyl is isochronous with a spondee; a choree, with an iambus, etc.

METRE AND VERSES.

§ 269. 1. *Metre* is the arrangement of syllables and feet into verses.

2. There are six kinds of metre, named from the fundamental foot employed in each: to wit, *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*.

3. A verse is a number of feet arranged in a certain order, constituting a line of poetry. Two verses are called a *distich*; half a verse, a *hemistich*.

4. Verses are sometimes named from the author who used them principally: as, *Anacreontic*, from Anacreon; *Asclepiadic*, from Asclepiādes; *Sapphic*, from Sappho, etc.,—sometimes from the number of feet or measures which they contain: as, *pentameter*, containing five feet; *hexameter*, containing six feet,—sometimes from the foot chiefly used: as, *dactylic*, consisting chiefly of dactyls; *spondaic*, consisting chiefly of spondees.

5. A verse wanting one syllable at the end is called *catalectic*; a verse wanting a whole foot at the end is called *brachycatalectic*; a complete verse is called *acatalectic*; a verse wanting a syllable at the beginning is called *acephalous*; a verse having a redundant syllable or foot is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermeter*.

6. A verse or part of a verse consisting of a foot and a half (three half-feet) is called *trihēmimēris*; consisting of two feet and a half (five half-feet), *penthēmimēris*; consisting of three feet and a half (seven half-feet), *hept-hēmimēris*; consisting of four feet and a half (nine half-feet), *ennēhēmimēris*.

7. *Scanning* is dividing a verse into the feet of which it is composed, or reading it *metrically*.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

§ 270. The figures of prosody are—

(a.) *Synalœpha*, or the elision of a final vowel or diphthong when the next word begins with a vowel. Thus, *sī omnīs* is read *s'omnīs*; *illī intēr sē* is read *ill' intēr sē*, etc.

Remark 1.—*O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, and *vah*, are not elided. Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes stand unelided, and, if so, they are generally short in the thesis of a foot.

(b.) *Ecthlipsis*, or the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the next word begins with a vowel: as,

Monstr-(*ŭm*) horrend-(*ŭm*), inform-(*ē*), ingens, cui lūmēn ādemptum.

Final *s* was sometimes elided in the same way by the earlier poets.

Remark 2.—*M* final, when unelided, is short before a vowel.

(c.) *Synœresis*, or the contraction of two separate vowels into one syllable: as, *deinde*, *fluviorum*, *tenuis*, pronounced *dine-de*, *fluv-yorum*, *ten-wis*.

(d.) *Dicœresis*, or the separation of one syllable into two: as, *silua* for *silva*; *su-adent* for *suadent*.

(e.) *Systōle*, or the shortening of a syllable naturally or by position long: as,

Obstŭpŭī, stētērunt cōmæ; vox faucibŭs hæsit.

(f.) *Diastōle*, or lengthening a syllable naturally short.

(g.) *Synaphēia*, or such a connection between the last syllable of one verse and the first of the next, that the former is made long by position, or cut off by synalœpha or ecthlipsis.

RHYTHM.

§ 271. 1. *Rhythm* is the alternate elevation (*arsis*) or depression (*thesis*) of the voice in pronouncing the

syllables of a verse. The terms *arsis* and *thesis* are also applied to the part of the foot on which this elevation or depression takes place. The *arsis* of a foot is on the long syllable, and is determined by the fundamental foot of any measure. Thus, in dactylic measure the *arsis* is on the first syllable, while in iambic it is on the last; therefore a spondee in dactylic measure has the *arsis* on the first syllable, and in iambic, on the last.

2. The *ictus* is the stress of voice in pronouncing the *arsis* of a foot. A short syllable in the *arsis* of a foot is sometimes lengthened by the *ictus*.

3. The *cæsura* of the verse is such a division of the line by the ending of a word as affords a convenient and harmonious pause.

DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 272. I. 1. An *hexameter* or *heroic* verse consists of six feet, the last of which is a spondee, and the fifth a dactyl; but the fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and then the verse is called *spondaic*:

Lūdērē | quā vėl-|lēm || cālā-|mō pēr-|mīsīt ā-|grēstī. *Virg. Æ.* 1, 10.

În nōvā | fērt ānī-|mūs || mū-|tātās | dīcērē | fōrmās. *Ov. M.* 1, 1.

Cārā dē-|ūm sōbō-|lēs || māg-|nūm Jōvīs | īncrē-|mēntūm. *Virg.*

2. The *cæsura* in hexameter usually occurs after the *arsis* of the third foot, as above; frequently, however, it occurs after the *arsis* of the fourth foot, and there is then a slighter one after the *arsis* of the second: as,

Îndē tō-|rō || pătēr | Ænē-|ās || sīc | ōrsūs āb | āltō.

3. A rapid and spirited movement is produced by the recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one, by that of spondees:

Ātquē lē-|vēm stīpū-|lām || crēpī-|tāntī | ūrērē | flāmmā.

Ill-(i) īn-|tēr sē | māg-|nā vī | brāchīā | tōllūnt.

II. 1. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts (*i.e.* two short and one long):

Sūb quā | nūnc rēcū-|bās || ārb-|ōrē vīr-|gā fūit.
Quāquē vė-|nīt mūlt-|ās || āc-|cīpīt ām-|nīs āquās.

2. It is generally, however, divided into two hemistichs, the first containing two dactyls, two spondees, or a dactyl and a spondee, followed by a long syllable; the second, two dactyls, followed by another long syllable. The cæsura occurs at the close of the first hemistich:

Sūb quā | nūnc rēcū-|bās || ārbōrē | vīrgā fū-|it.
Quāquē vė-|nīt mūlt-|ās || āccīpīt | āmnīs ā-|quās.

3. This verse usually alternates with hexameter, forming what is called *elegiac* verse.

III. *Æolic pentameter* consists of five feet, the first being a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus; and the rest, dactyls:

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

IV. *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of the first half of a pentameter, followed by a dactyl and a spondee:

— — | — — — | — || — — — | — —

V. *Tetrameter a priore* consists of the first four feet of an hexameter, the fourth being a dactyl:

Gārrūlā | pēr rā-|mōs, āvis | ōbstrēpīt.

Tetrameter catalectic wants the last two syllables of the fourth foot.

VI. *Tetrameter a posteriore* consists of the last four feet of an hexameter, the third foot being either a dactyl or a spondee:

Mōbīlī-|būs pō-|māriā | rīvīs.
Mēnsō-|rēm cōhī-|bēnt Ar-|chỹta.

VII. *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Faliscan*, is the same as tetrameter *a posteriore*, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee :

— — — | — — | — — — | — —

VIII. *Dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of an hexameter :

Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs.

IX. *Archilochian trimeter catalectic* consists of the first half of a pentameter :

Arbōrī-|būsquē cō-|mæ.

X. *Dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of a dactyl and a spondee :

Mōrē pāl-|æstræ.

ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 273. I. *Anapæstic monometer* consists of two anapæsts :

— — — | — — —

II. *Anapæstic dimeter* consists of four anapæsts :

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

IAMBIC METRE.

§ 274. I. *Iambic trimeter*, or *sēnārius*, consists of six iambic feet; but the iambus is often replaced by a spondee in the first, third, and fifth feet. A tribrach is used instead of an iambus in any foot except the last; and the spondee is replaced by its equivalents, the dactyl or

anapæst, and sometimes by a double Pyrrhic, in the first foot.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
— —		— —		— —	
— — —		— — —		— — —	
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— —
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— —
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— —

There is generally a cæsure in the third or fourth foot.

II. The *choliambus*, or *σχαζων*, also called *Hipponactean*, from its inventor Hippönax, is *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, with a spondee or a trochee in the last foot.

III. *Iambic tetrameter*, or *octonarius*, consists of eight iambic feet, varied as in iambic trimeter, the cæsure usually falling on the arsis of the fourth foot.

IV. *Iambic tetrameter catalectic* is an iambic tetrameter without the last syllable of the last foot, and in the seventh place there is always an iambus.

V. *Iambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Archilochian*, is iambic trimeter without the last syllable of the last foot; but it does not admit of a spondee in the fifth place:

Lŏcās | sūb ip-|sūm fū-|nūs ēt | sēpūl-|crī.

VI. *Iambic dimeter*, or *Archilochian dimeter*, consists of four iambic feet, with the same variations as iambic trimeter. This measure is *acephalous* when it wants the first syllable, and *hypermeter* when a syllable is added at the end:

Quī mā-|jŏr āb-|sēntēs | hābet.

Acephalous,

At | fīdēs | ēt īn-|gēnī.

Hypermeter,

Rēdē-|gīt īn | vērōs | tīmō-|rēs.

VII. *Iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is

iambic dimeter without the final syllable, and with the third foot always an iambus :

~ - | ~ - | ~ - | ~

VIII. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the cæsura occurring at the end of the first dimeter.

TROCHAIC METRE.

§ 275. I. *Trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven trochees and a catalectic syllable. The first five trochees, and sometimes the sixth, are replaced by tribrachs; and the second, fourth, and sixth, by a spondee or its equivalent :

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.
~ ~	— —	~ ~	— —	~ ~	— —	~ ~	—
~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~	—
~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~	—
~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~ ~	~ ~	—

The cæsura falls upon the thesis of the fourth foot.

II. *Sapphic* verse, so called from the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet,—the first, fourth, and fifth being trochees, the second a spondee, and the third a dactyl. The second foot is sometimes a trochee :

·Audī-|ēt cī-|vēs æcū-|īssē | ferrūm.

The cæsura falls upon the arsis of the third foot.

III. *Phalæcian* verse, so called from the old Greek poet Phalæcus, consists of five feet,—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees :

— — | — ~ ~ | — ~ | — ~ | — ~

IV. *Trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three tro-

chees—the second being sometimes replaced by a spondee or dactyl—and a catalectic syllable. This measure may also be scanned as iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 274, VI.):

Āt fī-|dēs ēt | īngē-|nī;
Āt | fīdēs | ēt īn-|gēnī.

CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 276. I. *Choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus:

Tētā-|rīs nūmē-|rōs. | Ut mēliūs | quīdquīd ērīt | pātī.

II. *Choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi and a Bacchius. The iambus of the first foot is sometimes replaced by a spondee:

Sāpē trāns fīn-|ēm jācūlō | nōbīlīs ēx-|pēdītō.

III. *Asclepiadic tetrameter*, so called from the poet Asclepiades, consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus, the cæsura occurring at the end of the first choriambus:

Māēcē-|nās, ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg-|ībūs.

This verse is sometimes scanned as dactylic pentameter catalectic (§ 272, II.):

Māēcē-|nās, ātā-|vīs || ēdītē | rēgībūs.

IV. *Choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic*, so called from the poet Glyco, is composed of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus, the spondee being sometimes replaced by a trochee or an iambus:

III | rōbūr ēt æs | triplex.

V. *Choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (from the poet Pherecrates), is composed of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; in other words, it

is a *catalectic Glyconic*. The spondee is sometimes replaced by a trochee, anapæst, or iambus :

Nīgrīs | æquōrā vēm-|tīs.

VI. A combination of Glyconic and Pherecratic produces *Priapean* verse :

-- | - - - - | - - || -- | - - - - | -

VII. *Choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchiūs :

Sānguīnē vip-|ērīnō.

IONIC METRE.

§ 277. I. *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotādic* (from the poet Sotādes), is composed of three greater Ionics and a spondee. The Ionics are often replaced by ditrochees, and the long syllable of the trochees by two short ones :

1.	2.	3.	4.
-- --	-- --	-- --	--

II. *Ionic a minore* is composed entirely of lesser Ionics :

Sīmūl ūnctōs | Tībērīnīs | hūmērōs lā-|vīt īn āndīs.

COMPOUND METRES.

§ 278. I. *Greater Alcaic* is composed of two iambs and a catalectic syllable, followed by a choriambus and an iambus which may be scanned as two dactyls. The first iambus is frequently replaced by a spondee. The cæsure occurs after the catalectic syllable :

Vīdēs | ūt āl-|tā || stēt nīvē cān-|dīdum.

II. *Dactylico-trochaic tetrameter*, or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls followed by two trochees :

— — — | — — — | — — | — —

III. *Dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter* consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priore* (§ 272, V.), followed by three trochees ; the cæsura after the fourth foot :

Sölvitŭr | æcris hĩ-|ēms grā-|tā vīcē || vēris | ēt Fǣ-|vōnĩ.

IV. *Dactylico-iambic*, or *Elegiambus*, is composed of two and a half dactylic feet, followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.):

Scribēre | vērsicŭ-|lōs || āmō-|rē pār-|cūssūm | grāvĩ.

The cæsura occurs after the penthemimeris, as in hexameter.

V. *Iambico-dactylic* verse, or *Iambelegus*, consists of an iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.) followed by a dactylic penthemimeris ; the cæsura occurring after the fourth foot :

Tŭ vī-|nǣ Tōr-|quātō | mōvē || cōnsŭlē | prēssǣ mē-|ō.

STANZAS.

§ 279. 1. A combination of verses recurring in a certain order is called a *stanza* or *strophe*. A poem containing stanzas of two lines is called *diströphon* ; of three lines, *triströphon* ; of four lines, *tetraströphon*.

2. A poem consisting of only one kind of metre is called *monocōlon* ; of two kinds, *dicōlon* ; of three kinds, *tricōlon*.

HORATIAN METRES.

§ 280. In the lyric poems of Horace there are twenty different species of metre, used in nineteen different

combinations, which are arranged below according to the frequency of their use:—

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 278, I.), one iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 274, VI.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 278, II.).
2. Three Sapphics (§ 275, II.) and one Adonic (§ 272, X.).
3. One Glyconic (§ 276, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 276, III.).
4. One iambic trimeter (§ 274, II.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.).
5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 276, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 276, IV.).
6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 276, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 276, V.), and one Glyconic (§ 276, IV.).
7. Asclepiadic (§ 276, III.).
8. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriore* (§ 272, VI.).
9. Choriambic pentameter (§ 276, I.).
10. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.).
11. Iambic trimeter (§ 274, I.).
12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 276, VII.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 276, II.).
13. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one iambic trimeter (§ 274, I.).
14. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 272, IX.).
15. One iambic trimeter (§ 274, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 272, IX.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.). The last two frequently constitute an Elegiambus (§ 278, IV.).
16. One hexameter (§ 272, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.), and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 272, IX.). The last two frequently constitute an Iambelegus (§ 278, V.).
17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 278, III.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 274, V.).
18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 274, VI.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 274, V.).
19. Ionic *a minore* (§ 277, II.).

METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE.

§ 281. The following is an alphabetical list of the first words of the Odes, with the number in the preceding section annexed, where the metre is explained:—

Æli, vetusto.....	No. 1	Intermissa, Venus, diu.....	No. 3
Æquam memento.....	1	Jam jam effici.....	11
Albi, ne doleas.....	5	Jam pauca arātro.....	1
Altēra jam teritur.....	13	Jam satis terris.....	2
Angustam, amīce.....	1	Jam veris comītes.....	5
At, O deōrum.....	4	Justum et tenācem.....	1
Audivēre, Lyce.....	6	Laudābunt alii.....	8
Bacchum in remōtis.....	1	Lupis et agnis.....	4
Beātus ille.....	4	Lydia, dic, per omnes.....	12
Cœlo supīnas.....	1	Mæcēnas atāvis.....	7
Cœlo tonantem.....	1	Malâ solūta.....	4
Cūm tu, Lydia.....	3	Martiis cælebs.....	2
Cur me querēlis.....	1	Mater sæva Cupidīnum.....	3
Delicta majōrum.....	1	Mercūri, facunde.....	2
Descende cœlo.....	1	Mercūri, nam te.....	2
Diānam, tenēræ.....	6	Miserārum est.....	19
Diffugēre nives.....	14	Mollis inertia.....	10
Dive, quem proles.....	2	Montium custos.....	2
Divis orte bonis.....	5	Motum ex Metello.....	1
Donārem patēras.....	7	Musis amīcus.....	1
Donec gratus eram.....	3	Natis in usum.....	1
Eheu! fugāces.....	1	Ne forte credas.....	1
Est mihi onum.....	2	Ne sit ancillæ.....	2
Et thure et fidibus.....	3	Nolis longa feræ.....	5
Exēgi monumentum.....	7	Nondum subacta.....	1
Extrēmum Tanaim.....	5	Non ebur neque aureum.....	18
Faune, nymphārum.....	2	Non semper imbres.....	1
Festo quid potius die.....	3	Non usitātâ.....	1
Hercūlis ritu.....	2	Non vides, quanto.....	2
Horrida tempestas.....	16	Nox erat.....	10
Ibis Liburnis.....	4	Nullam, Vare, sacrâ.....	9
Icci, beātis.....	1	Nullus argento.....	2
Ille et nefasto.....	1	Nunc est bibendum.....	1
Impios parræ.....	2	O crudēlis adhuc.....	9
Inclūsam Danāën.....	5	O diva, gratum.....	1
Intactis opulentior.....	3	O fons Bandusiæ.....	6
Intēger vitæ.....	2	O matre pulchrâ.....	1

O nata mecum.....	No. 1	Quid fles, Asterie.....	No. 6
O navis, referent.....	6	Quid immerentes.....	4
O sæpe mecum.....	1	Quid obserātis.....	11
O Venus, regīna.....	2	Quid tibi vis.....	8
Odi profānum.....	1	Quis desiderio.....	5
Otium Divos.....	2	Quis multa gracīlis.....	6
Parciūs junctas.....	2	Quo me, Bacche.....	3
Parcus Deōrum.....	1	Quo, quo, scelesti ruītis.....	4
Parentis olim.....	4	Rectiūs vives.....	2
Pastor quum trahēret.....	5	Rogāre longo.....	4
Persīcos odi, puer.....	2	Scribēris Vario.....	5
Petti, nihil me.....	15	Septīmi, Gades.....	2
Phœbe, silvarumque.....	2	Sic te Diva potens.....	3
Phœbus volentem.....	1	Solvitur aeris hiems.....	17
Pindārum quisquis.....	2	Te maris et terræ.....	8
Poscīmur: si quid.....	2	Tu ne quæsiēris.....	9
Quæ cura Patrum.....	1	Tyrrhēna regum.....	1
Qualem ministrum.....	1	Ulla si juris.....	2
Quando repostum.....	4	Uxor paupēris Ibŷci.....	3
Quantum distet ab Inācho.....	3	Velox amœnum.....	1
Quem tu, Melpomēne.....	3	Vides, ut altā.....	1
Quem virum aut herōa.....	2	Vile potābis.....	2
Quid bellicōsus.....	1	Vitas hinnuleo.....	6
Quid dedicātum.....	1	Vixi puellis.....	1

APPENDIX X.

FIGURES.

§ 282, *Figures of Etymology.*

1. *Prosthēsis* is prefixing a letter or syllable to a word: as, *gŭ-gēno*, *gŭ-gno*, for *gēno*.

2. *Paragōge* is affixing a letter or syllable to a word: as, *āmāriēr* for *āmārī*.

3. *Epenthēsis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word: as, *cer-n-o* for *cēr-o*.

4. *Aphærēsis* is cutting off a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: as, *'st* for *est*.

5. *Apocöpe* is cutting off a letter or syllable from the end of a word : as, *vě* for *věl*.

6. *Syncöpe* is taking away a letter or syllable from the middle of a word : as, *fer-re* for *fer-ě-re*.

7. *Crasis* is the blending of two vowels into one : as, *cōgo* for *cō-āgo*.

8. *Antithēsis* is putting one letter in the place of another : as, *vōlo* for *vělo* ; *olli* for *illi*.

9. *Metathēsis* is changing the order of letters : as, *certus* for *crētus*.

§ 283. *Figures of Syntax.*

1. *Ellipsis* is the omission of one or more words in a sentence. It includes—

(a.) *Asyndeton*, or the omission of copulative conjunctions in animated discourse : as, *copias educit, aciem instruit*.

(b.) *Zeugma*, or the connection of a word with two constructions while it is properly applicable to only one : as, *pollicentur se imperata facturos ; se nunquam contra populum Romanum conjurasse*. (Here the second infinitive proposition depends not on *pollicentur*, but on *dicunt* implied in it.)

(c.) *Syllepsis*, or the agreement of an adjective or verb with one of several different words, to all of which it equally belongs : as, *mens enim, et ratio, et consilium in senibus est. Sociis et rege recepto*.

(d.) *Prölepsis*, or placing the parts after the whole without repeating the verb : as, *consules discedunt, alter ad urbem, alter in Numidiam*.

2. *Pleonasm* is using more words than are necessary. It includes—

(a.) *Polysyndeton*, or redundancy of conjunctions : as, *et pater, et mater, et liberi*.

(b.) *Hendiādys* (one-by-two), or the connection of two words by *et* when one is an attributive of the other : as, *patēris et auro* for *aureis patēris*.

(c.) *Periphrasis*, or a roundabout mode of expression : as, *regina noctis* for *luna*.

3. *Enallāge* is a change of construction, or a departure from the established usage. It includes—

(a.) *Synēsis*, or a referring to the sense rather than the form : as, *plebs clamant ; equitatus qui præmissi erant ; mea ipsius causa*.

(b.) *Anacoluthon*, or beginning a sentence in one way and ending it in another, so that the harmony of its parts is destroyed.

(c.) *Antiptōsis*, or using one case for another : as, *nomen mihi Arcturo est*,—instead of *Arcturus*.

4. *Hyperbāton* is a change in the usual order of words or propositions. It includes—

(a.) *Anastrōphe*, or inversion of the natural order of words : as, *urbem circum*.

(b.) *Hystēron protēron* (hind-part-before), or inverting the natural order of the sense : as, *pater tuus valetne ? vīvitne ?*

(c.) *Hypallāge*, or an interchange of constructions : as,

In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas

Corpora,

instead of *corpora in novas formas mutata*.

(d.) *Tmēsis*, or the separation by intervening words of the parts of a compound : as, *prius advenit quam visus est*.

APPENDIX XI.

MODELS OF ANALYSIS.

(As these models are intended for permanent use, they include derivation, of which beginners know nothing.)

1. To analyze a noun, state—

- (1.) What kind of noun.
- (2.) Gender.
- (3.) Declension, and class if of the 3d declension.
- (4.) Decline it.
- (5.) Derivation.
- (6.) What case, and why.
- (7.) The rule.

EXAMPLE.—*Imperator venit.* *Imperator* is a common noun, masc., third, fifth class; *imperator, imperatoris, imperatori, &c.* (throughout); derived from *impero* by adding the ending *or*, which denotes the *doer*, to the supine stem; and *impero* from *in* and *paro*; found in the nominative singular, subject of *venit*. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.*

2. To analyze an adjective, state—

- (1.) What part of speech.
- (2.) Class.
- (3.) Decline it.
- (4.) Degree.
- (5.) Compare it.
- (6.) Derivation.
- (7.) Case, number, and gender, and why.
- (8.) Rule.

EXAMPLE.—*Pastor est prudens.* *Prudens* is an adjective of the third class; *prudens, prudens; prudentis, prudentis, &c.* (throughout); positive degree, *prudens, prudentior, prudentissimus*; contracted form of *providens*, present participle of *provideo*, compounded of *pro* and *video*;

found in the nominative singular masculine, agreeing with *pastor*, and forming part of the predicate. *An adjective in the predicate agrees with the subject.*

3. To analyze a substantive-personal pronoun, state—

- (1.) What kind of pronoun.
- (2.) What person.
- (3.) Decline it.
- (4.) What case, and why.
- (5.) Rule.

EXAMPLE.—*Mihi librum dedit.* *Mihi* is a substantive-personal pronoun of the first person; *ego, mei, &c.* (throughout); found in the dative singular, indirect object of *dedit*. *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

4. To analyze a possessive pronoun, state—

- (1.) What kind of pronoun.
- (2.) Person (and number of primitive).
- (3.) Decline it.
- (4.) Derivation.
- (5.) Where found, and why.
- (6.) Rule.

EXAMPLE.—*Pater noster.* *Noster* is a possessive pronoun of the first person plural; *noster, nostra, nostrum, &c.* (throughout); derived from *nos*; found in the nom. sing. masc., agreeing with *pater*. *Adjective words agree with the nouns which they limit, in gender, number, and case.*

5. To analyze a relative or demonstrative, state—

- (1.) What kind of pronoun.
- (2.) Decline it.
- (3.) Derivation, if derived.
- (4.) Antecedent.
- (5.) Where found, and why.
- (6.) Rule.

EXAMPLE.—*Puella quam vidi.* *Quam* is a relative pronoun; *qui, quæ, quod*, &c. (throughout); referring to *puella* as its antecedent, with which it agrees in number and person; found in the acc. sing. fem., direct object of *vidi*. *The relative pronoun agrees, &c.*

6. To analyze a regular verb, state—

- (1.) What part of speech.
- (2.) Transitive or intransitive.
- (3.) What conjugation.
- (4.) Give the principal parts.
- (5.) Derivation.
- (6.) Where found (mood, tense, voice, person, and number), and why.
- (7.) Rule.

EXAMPLE.—*Imperator centuriones convocavit.* *Convocavit* is a verb, transitive, first; *convoco, convocare, convocavi, convocatum*; compounded of *con* for *cum*, and *voco*; found in the indicative present-perfect active, third person singular, agreeing with *imperator* as its subject. *The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

7. To analyze an irregular verb, state the same, with the addition of the fact that it is irregular.

EXAMPLE.—*Vita brevis est.* *Est* is a verb, intransitive, irregular; *sum, esse, fori*, &c.

8. To analyze an adverb, state—

- (1.) What sort of adverb.
- (2.) What degree, and compare it.
- (3.) Derivation and formation.
- (4.) What it limits.

EXAMPLE.—*Milites fortiter pugnabant.* *Fortiter* is a modal adverb; positive degree; *fortiter, fortius, fortissime*; derived from *fortis* by adding *iter* to the stem; and limits

pugnabant, expressing the manner of the fighting, and answering the question "How?"

9. To analyze a preposition, state—

(1.) What part of speech.

(2.) What case follows it.

(3.) Derivation.

(4.) Object.

(5.) What the adjunct limits, and what question it answers.

EXAMPLE.—*Ædui citra Rhenum habitant*. *Citra* is a preposition followed by the accusative; originally the abl. sing. fem. of the adjective *citer*; having *Rhenum* as its object. The adjunct *citra Rhenum* limits *habitant*, and answers the question "Where?"—a local limitation.

10. To analyze a conjunction, state—

(1.) What sort of conjunction.

(2.) Derivation.

(3.) What it connects.

(4.) What sort of proposition it introduces.

11. To analyze a proposition, state—

(1.) Whether principal or dependent.

(2.) Class.

(3.) Subject and predicate.

(4.) What part of speech, if dependent.

(5.) What it limits, and how.

(6.) What question it answers.

EXAMPLE.—*Veni ut viderem*. *Ut viderem* is a dependent final proposition; *ego* subject, *viderem* predicate; a noun, dative of purpose limiting *veni* and expressing the purpose of the coming. It answers the question "Why?" "To what end?"

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A or AB

A.

ā or āb (prep.), *from, by*; § 120, 2.
 ab-dō, -ērē, abdīdī, abdītūm, *to run for concealment, to hide.*
 āb-eō, -īrē, ābiī, ābītūm, *to go away.*
 absens, -entīs (absūm), *absent.*
 ab-solvō, -ērē, -solvī, -sōlūtūm, *to free from, clear, absolve, acquit.*
 ab-sūm, -essē, -fuī, -fūtūrūs, *to be away from, to be absent.* Mīnīmūm abfuit, *he lacked very little, was very near.*
 āb-undō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to abound.*
 āb-ūtōr, -ī, -ūsūs, *to abuse.*
 āc (cop. conj., § 123, Rem. 3), *and.*
 ac-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to approach.*
 ac-cendō, -ērē, accendī, accensūm (ād and candō), *to set on fire.*
 ac-cīdō, -ērē, accidī (ād and cādō), *to happen.*
 ac-cīpiō, -ērē, -cēpī, -ceptūm (ād and cāpiō), *to receive.*
 ac-currō, -ērē, -currī, *seldom* -cūcurrī, -cursūm (ād and currō), *to run to.*
 ac-cūsō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm (ād and causā), *to bring to trial, accuse, reproach.*
 ācēr or acrīs, -īs, -ē (§ 59, Rem. 3), *sharp.*
 ācerbūs, -ā, -ūm, *bitter.*

ADVERSUS

Achaiā, -æ, *Achaia.*

āciēs, -ēī, *edge, point, line of battle.*

acrītēr (adv. ācēr), *sharply*; § 119.

ād (prep., § 120, 1), *to, at, towards.*

ad-dō, -ērē, addīdī, addītūm, *to add.*

ad-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to lead to or against, to prompt, excite.*

ādeō (adv.), *so.*

Adherbāl, -ālīs, *a Numidian prince, son of Micipsa and half-brother to Jugurtha.*

ād-hībeō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to bring to, apply, employ.*

ād-hūc (adv.), *as yet.*

ād-ītūs, -ūs, *approach.*

ad-mīrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to wonder.*

ad-mittō, -ērē, -mīsī, -missūm, *to send forth.* Equō admissō, *with his horse at full speed.*

ad-mōneō, -ērē, -mōnuī, -mōnītūm, *to remind.*

ād-ōlescens, -entīs, *young, a young man.*

ad-spīciō, -ērē, -spexī, -spectūm, *to look at, behold.*

ād-ūlātiō, -ōnīs, *flattery.*

ad-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to arrive.*

ad-ventūs, -ūs, *arrival, approach.*

adversōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to object, oppose.*

ad-versūs, adversūm (prep.), *against.*

ad-vertō, -ērē, -vertī, -versūm, to turn towards. Participle, adversūs, adversūm, used as preposition aedificiūm, -ī, building. From aedificō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to build. Eduūs, -ī, an *Æduan*. ægēr, -grā, -grūm, sick, lame. Ægimūrūm, -ī, *Ægimurum*. æquōr, -ōris, a level surface, the sea.

From

æquūs, -ā, -ūm, level, even, just. aēr, -īs, air. aestās, -tātīs, summer. aestimō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to value, esteem. ætās, -tātīs, age, life. af-fērō, -ferrē, attūlī, allātūm, to bring to.

Africā, -æ, *Africa*. Hence

Africānūs, -ā, -ūm, *African*: a surname of Scipio on account of his exploits in Africa.

ægēr, ægrī, field, land, territory.

Agēsīlāūs, -ī, *Agesilaus*, a distinguished Spartan king.

ag-grēdiōr, -ī, -gressūs, to go to, approach, attack.

ægīlīs, -ē, active.

agmēn, -īnīs, an army on the march.

agnūs, -ī, lamb.

ægō, -ērē, ēgī, actūm, to lead, drive; (of time,) to spend.

ægričōlā, -æ, farmer.

ālā, -æ, wing.

ālācēr or -crīs, -ē, cheerful; whence ālācrītās, -tātīs, eagerness, promptness.

Ālexandēr, -drī, *Alexander*, king of Macedonia.

ālīenūs, -ā, -ūm, belonging to another, foreign.

ālīquandō, at some time.

ālīquantūs, -ā, -ūm, somewhat great,

considerable; ālīquantūm āgrī, a considerable piece of ground.

ālīquīs, -quā, -quōd or -quīd, some, any, some one; § 89.

ālītēr, otherwise.

ālīūs, -ā, -ūd (§ 56, Rem. 1 and 2), another (of many).

Allōbrox, -brōg-īs, an *Allobrogian*.

ālō, -ērē, āluī, ālītūm and altūm, to support.

Alpēs, -iūm, the Alps.

altēr, -ā, -ūm (§ 56), another (of two), second.

altītūdō, -īnīs, height, depth.

altūs, -ā, -ūm, high, deep.

āmāns, -antīs, fond; (as noun,) lover.

ambūlō, -ārē, -āvī, ātūm, to walk.

āmēns, -entīs, mad.

āmīcītiā, -æ, friendship; from

āmīcūs, -ī, friend.

ā-mittō, -ērē, -mīsī, -missūm, to lose.

amnis, -īs (§ 33, Rem. 6, Exc. 2), river.

āmō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to love.

āmōr, -ōris, love.

amplectōr, -ī, -plexūs, to embrace.

amplūs, -ā, -ūm, large, ample; ampliūs, more.

ān (interrog. disjunc. conj.), or.

ancillā, -æ, maid-servant.

ancōrā, -æ, anchor.

Ancūs Martiūs, -ī, fourth king of Rome.

angustūs, -ā, -ūm, narrow.

ānīmā, -æ, breath, life.

ānīmadvertō, -ērē, -vertī, -versūm, to turn the mind to, to perceive.

ānīmāl, -ālīs (§ 39), animal.

ānīmūs, -ī, mind, soul.

annūs, -ī, year.

ansēr, -ērīs, goose.

antē (§ 120, 1), before.

anteā, *aforetime, before.*
 antennā, -æ, *sail-yard.*
 antēquām (often separated; temp. conj.), *before.*
 Antīgōnūs, -ī, *Antigonus.*
 Antiōchīa, -æ, *Antioch, a city of Syria.*
 Antiōchūs, -ī, *Antiochus.*
 anxiūs, -ā, -ūm, *anxious, uneasy.*
 āpēr, -prī, *wild boar.*
 āpēriō, -īrē, āpēruī, āpertūm, *to open.*
 Āpollō, -īnīs, *Apollo*; ab. Apollīnē pētērē, *to inquire of Apollo.*
 appellō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to call.*
 appētens, -entīs, *eager for.*
 ap-prōpinquō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to approach.*
 aptūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, suitable.*
 āpūd, *with, among*; (of persons,) *at the house of, in the works of.*
 āquā, -æ, *water.*
 āquīlā, -æ, *eagle.*
 ārā, -æ, *altar.*
 Ārār or Arārīs, -īs (33, Rem. 1), *the Saone, a river of Gaul.*
 ārātrūm, -ī, *plough.*
 arbītrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to think, suppose.*
 arbōr, -ōrīs (2 38, Exc. 1), *tree.*
 arecessō, -ērē, -īvi, -ītūm, *to call, bring.*
 Arētūrūs, -ī, *Arcturus.*
 arcūs, -ūs, *bow*; 2 48, Rem. 4.
 arduūs, -ā, -ūm, *high, difficult.*
 argentūm, -ī, *silver.*
 argūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *sagacious.*
 āriēs, -ētīs, *ram, battering-ram.*
 Āriōvistūs, -ī, *a German king.*
 Āristidēs, -īs, *an Athenian, surnamed the Just, from his integrity.*
 armā, -ōrūm, *arms.*
 armō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to arm.*
 ārō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to plough.*

ar-rīpiō, -ērē, -rīpuī, -reptūm, *to seize, snatch up.*
 ars, art-īs, *skill, art.*
 arx, arc-īs, *citadel.*
 as, assīs, *a pound of copper (about sixteen and two-third cents of our money); in general, a thing of small value.*
 ascendō, -ērē, -cendī, -censūm, *to ascend.*
 āsīnūs, -ī, *ass.*
 aspēr, -ā, -ūm (2 55, Rem. 3), *rough.*
 aspiciō, -ērē, -spexī, -spectūm, *to behold, see.*
 Āthēnæ, -ārūm, *Athens.*
 Athēniēnsīs, -īs, *Athenian.*
 atquē or āc (cop. conj.), *and* (2 123, Rem. 3), *as, than* (2 123, 10).
 Atrēbās, -ātīs, *an Atrebatian.*
 ātrox, -ōcīs, *savage, cruel, fierce.*
 attingō, -ērē, attīgī, attactūm, *to touch.*
 auctōritās, -tātīs, *authority, influence.*
 audactēr (adv.), *boldly.*
 audax, -ācīs, *bold, daring.*
 audeō, -ērē, ausūs, *to dare.*
 audiens (participial adj.), *hearing, attentive*; audiens dietō, *attentive to orders, obedient.*
 audiō, -īrē, -īvi, -ītūm, *to hear.*
 augeō, -ērē, auxī, auctūm, *to increase, swell.*
 aureūs, -ā, -ūm, *golden.* From
 aurūm, -ī, *gold.*
 aut, *or*; aut — aut, *either — or.*
 auxiliūm, -ī, *aid, help.*
 āvārītiā, -æ, *covetousness.*
 āvārūs, -ā, -ūm, *greedy, covetous.*
 āvidē (adv.), *eagerly.*
 āvidūs, -ā, -ūm, *desirous, eager.*
 āvis, -īs, *bird*; 2 33, Rem. 6.
 āvocō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to call away, separate.*

B.

Bābŷlōn, -ōnīs, *Babylon*.
 Balbūs, -ī, *Balbus* (*stammerer*).
 barbārūs, -ā, -ūm, *foreign, barbarous*.
 beātē, *happily*.
 beātūs, -ā, -ūm, *happy*.
 Belgā, -æ, *a Belgian*.
 bellō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to war*.
 bellūm, -ī, *war*.
 bēnē (mēliūs, optīmē), *well*.
 bēnēficiūm, -ī, *benefit*.
 bēnignūs, -ā, -ūm, *kind*.
 bestiā, -æ, *brute, beast*.
 bibō, -ērē, bibī, bibītūm, *to drink*.
 Bibrax, -actīs, *a town in Gaul*.
 bīduūm, -ī, *two days' time*.
 bienniūm, -ī, *two years' time*.
 bipartītō (adv.), *in two divisions*.
 blandūs, -ā, -ūm, *flattering*.
 Bocchūs, -ī, *Bocchus*.
 Bœōtiā, -æ, *Bœotia*.
 Bœōtīi, -ōrūm, *the Bœotians*.
 bōnūs, -ā, -ūm, *good*.
 bōs, bōvis, *ox or cow*.
 brēvis, -ē, *short*.
 brēvītēr (adv.), *shortly*.
 Brītanīā, -æ, *Britain*.
 Brītanūs, -ā, -ūm, *British*; (as a noun,) *a Briton*.

C.

cādāvēr, -ērīs, *corpse*.
 Cadmūs, -ī, *Cadmus*.
 cādō, -ērē, cēcīdī, cāsūm, *to fall*.
 cæcūs, -ā, -ūm, *blind*.
 cædō, -ērē, cēcīdī, cæsūm, *to cut, kill*.
 Cæsār, -ārīs, *Cæsar*.
 cæspēs, -ītīs, *turf*.
 Caiūs, -ī, *Caius*.
 cālāmītās, -tātīs, *misfortune*.
 calcār, -ārīs, *spur*. From

calx, calc-īs, *heel*.
 campestēr, *level*. From
 campūs, -ī, *plain*.
 cānīs, -īs, *dog*.
 cantō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to sing*.
 cantūs, -ūs, *singing*.
 cāpax, -ācīs, *capable of receiving, roomy, large*.
 cāpiō, -ērē, cēpī, captūm, *to take*.
 cāpitālīs, -ē, *of the head, capital*.
 captīvūs, -ī, *prisoner, captive*.
 Cāpuā, -æ, *Capua*.
 cāpūt, cāpītīs, *head*.
 carcēr, -ērīs, *prison*.
 earmēn, -īnīs, *song, poem*.
 cārō, carnīs, *flesh*.
 carpō, -ērē, carpsī, carptūm, *to pluck*.
 Carthāgīniensīs, -īs, *Carthaginian*.
 Carthāgō, -īnīs, *Carthage*.
 cārūs, -ā, -ūm, *dear*.
 Cassiūs, -ī, *Cassius*.
 castellūm, -ī, *tower, fort*.
 Casticūs, -ī, *Casticus*.
 castīgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to chastise*.
 castrā, -ōrūm, *camp*.
 cāsūs, -ūs, *a falling, chance*.
 cātēnā, -æ, *chain, fetter*.
 Cātilīnā, -æ, *Catiline*.
 cātīnūs or -ūm, -ī, *bowl, dish*.
 Cātō, -ōnīs, *Cato*.
 causā, -æ, *reason, cause*; abl., *for the sake of* (always placed after the limiting word).
 cāveō, -ērē, cāvī, cautūm, *to beware*.
 Cēcrops, Cēcropīs, *Cecrops*.
 cēdō, -ērē, cessī, cessūm, *to yield*.
 cēlēr or -īs, -ē, *swift*. Hence
 cēlērītās, -tātīs, *swiftness*.
 cēlērītēr (adv.), *swiftly*.
 cēlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to conceal*.
 censeō, -ērē, censuī, censūm, *to be of opinion, to think*.

censör, -öris, *ensor, a Roman magistrate.*

centüm, *hundred*; § 63.

centüriö, -önis, *centurion, captain of a hundred men.*

Cērēs, Cērēris, *Ceres.*

cernö, -ērē, crēvī, crētüm, *to perceive, see.*

certāmēn, -inis, *contest, strife.*

certüs, -ä, -üm, *certain.*

cervüs, -i, *stag.*

cētērā, -üm (nom. sing. masc. not used), *the rest (of a thing).*

chartā, -æ, *paper.*

cībūs, -ī, *food.*

Cicērö, -önis, *Cicero.*

Cimön, -önis, *Cimon.*

Cingētörix, -igis, *Cingetorix.*

cingö, -ērē, cinxī, cinctüm, *to gird.*

cīnis, -ēris, *ashes.*

circitēr, *about.*

cireüm, *around.*

circum-dö, -därē, -dēdī, -dätüm, *to put around, to surround.*

circum-fundö, -ērē, -fūdī, -fūsüm, *to pour around, to surround.*

circum-vēniö, -irē, -vēnī, -ventüm, *to surround.*

cīs, cītrā, *on this side of.*

cīvilis, *of citizens, civil.*

cīvis, -is, *citizen.*

cīvitas, -tātis, *state.*

clāmītö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to cry out violently.*

clāmö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to shout.*

clāmör, -öris, *shouting.*

clārüs, -ä, -üm, *famous, renowned.*

classis, -is, *fleet.*

Claudiüs, -i, *Claudius.*

claudö, -ērē, clausī, clausüm, *to shut.*

clāvis, -is, *key.*

clēmentia, -æ, *mildness.*

eliens, -entis, *client, dependant.*

Clödiüs, -i, *Clodius.*

coelum, -i, *heaven.*

coenö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to dine, sup.*

coepi (§ 113, Rem. 1), *I begin.*

cögītö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to think, reflect.*

cognömēn, -inis, *surname.*

cognoseö, -ērē, -nōvī, cognitüm, *to find out, learn.*

cögö, -ērē, coēgī, coactüm, *to collect, bring together, compel.*

cöhors, -hortis, *cohort.*

cöhortör, -äri, -ätüs, *to encourage.*

collēgä, -æ, *colleague.*

colligö, -ērē, -lēgī, -lectüm, *to assemble, gather, collect.*

collis, -is, *hill.*

collöcö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to put, station, place, set up.*

collöquiüm, *conversation, conference.*

collöquör, -löcütüs, *to converse.*

cölö, -ērē, cölui, cultüm, *to cultivate*; (of the gods,) *to worship.*

cölör, -öris, *color.*

cölumbä, -æ, *dove.*

cöm-ēdö, -önis, *glutton.*

cöm-ēs, -itis, *companion.*

cömitiüm, -i, *a place of assembling*; pl. elections.

commemörö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to relate.*

com-meö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to come and go.*

com-missüm, -i (part. of com-mittö), *a thing done, crime.*

com-mittö, -ērē, -misi, -missüm, *to bring or send together, to commence (battle), to commit.*

Commis, -i, *Commis.*

commödüm, -i, *convenience.*

com-möveö, -ērē, -mövī, -mötüm, *to move, disturb, disquiet.*

commünicatiö, -önis, *communication.*

commūniō, -irē, -ivī, -itūm, <i>to fortify.</i>	con-fērō, -ferrē, contūlī, collātūm, <i>to bring together, compare.</i>
commūnis, -ē, <i>common.</i>	con-fīciō, -ērē, -fēcī, -fectūm, <i>to finish.</i>
commūtātiō, -ōnis, <i>change.</i>	con-fidō, -ērē, -fīsūs, <i>to trust.</i>
compārō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to bring together, acquire.</i>	con-firmō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to assert, establish.</i>
com-pellō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to call, address.</i>	con-fiteōr, -ērī, -fessūs, <i>to confess.</i>
com-pellō, -ērē, -pūlī, -pulsūm, <i>to drive together.</i>	con-grēdiōr, -ī, -gressūs, <i>to meet with (in a friendly or hostile sense).</i>
com-pēriō, -irē, -pērī, -pertūm, <i>to find out, ascertain.</i>	con-jiciō, -ērē, -jēcī, -jectūm, <i>to throw, hurl.</i>
com-plectōr, -ī, -plexūs, <i>to embrace.</i>	con-junctiō, -ōnis, <i>union, friendship, intimacy.</i>
compleō, -ērē, -plēvī, -plētūm, <i>to fill.</i>	con-jungō, -ērē, -junxī, -junctūm, <i>to unite.</i>
com-plūrēs, -iūm (q̄ 72, 5), <i>a great many.</i>	con-jūrātiō, -ōnis, <i>conspiracy.</i>
com-pōs, -ōtis, <i>having control of.</i>	con-jūrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to swear together, conspire.</i>
comprēhendō, -ērē, -prēhendī, -prēhensūm, <i>to catch hold of.</i>	con-jux, -jūgīs, <i>husband or wife.</i>
compulsūs, -ā, -ūm (<i>part. compellō</i>).	cōnōr, -ārī, -ātūs, <i>to attempt.</i>
cōnātūs, -ūs, <i>attempt.</i>	consciūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>conscious.</i>
con-cāvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>hollow; mānūs concāvā, the hollow of the hand.</i>	con-scribō, -ērē, -scripsī, -scriptūm, <i>to levy, enroll.</i>
con-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, <i>to yield.</i>	con-sectōr, -ārī, -ātūs, <i>to pursue eagerly and overtake.</i>
con-cīliūm, -ī, <i>council.</i>	con-sēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, <i>to pursue, attain.</i>
con-citō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to rouse, excite, urge on, raise.</i>	con-servō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to preserve, save.</i>
con-cordiā, -æ, <i>agreement, concord.</i>	Consīdiūs, -ī, <i>Considius.</i>
con-currō, -ērē, -currī, -cursūm, <i>to run together.</i>	con-sidō, -ērē, -sēdī, -sessūm, <i>to encamp, settle.</i>
con-cursūs, -ūs, <i>running together.</i>	con-sīliūm, -ī, <i>counsel, advice.</i>
con-cūtiō, -ērē, -cussī, -cussūm, <i>to shake violently.</i>	con-spergō, -ērē, -spersī, -spersūm, <i>to sprinkle.</i>
con-demnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to condemn.</i>	con-stantēr, <i>firmly, persistently.</i>
con-dō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, <i>to found, build.</i>	con-stāt, constābāt, constitūt, <i>it is evident.</i>
condōnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to present, give away.</i>	con-stituō, -ērē, -stītuī, -stītūtūm, <i>to determine, put, fix.</i>
con-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, <i>to bring or lead together.</i>	

con-suescō, -ērē, -suēvī, -suētūm, *to accustom.*

con-suētūdō, -īnīs, *custom.*

consūl, -īs, *consul.*

consūlō, -ērē, -sūluī, -sultūm, *to counsel, reflect, consult.*

consultūm, -ī (part.), *a thing reflected on; abl., on purpose.*

con-sūmō, -ērē, -sumpsī, -sumptūm, *to consume.*

con-temnō, -ērē, -tempsī, -temptūm, *to despise.*

con-tendō, -ērē, -tendī, -tentūm, *to strive, contend, hasten.*

con-tīnens, -entīs (part. pres.), *holding together, continent.*

con-tīnentēr (adv.), *continually.*

con-tīneō, -ērē, -tīnuī, -tentūm, *to hold on all sides, keep in.*

contrā, *against.*

con-trāhō, -ērē, -traxī, -tractūm, *to draw together.*

contūmēliā, -æ, *insult.*

con-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to come together, assemble.*

con-vocō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to call together.*

eūpiā, -æ, *abundance; pl., forces.*

coōquō, -ērē, coxī, coctūm, *to cook.*

cōr, cordīs, *heart.*

Cōrīnthūs, -ī, *Corinth.*

cornīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *horned.*

cornū, -ūs, *horn.*

cōrōnā, -æ, *crown.*

corpūs, -ōrīs, *body.*

cor-rīgō, -ērē, -rexī, -rectūm, *to set straight, correct.*

cor-rumpō, -ērē, -rūpī, -ruptūm, *to destroy, to corrupt.*

crās (adv.), *to-morrow.*

Crassūs, -ī, *Crassus.*

crēbēr, -ā, -ūm, *frequent.*

crebrō (adv.), *frequently.*

crēdō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, *to believe.*

crēmō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn.*

creō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to create. make.*

cresecō, -ērē, crēvī, crētūm, *to grow.*

crīnīs, -īs, *hair.*

crūciātūs, -ūs, *torture.*

crūdēlīs, -ē, *cruel.*

crūdēlītās, -tātīs, *cruelty.*

cūbīcūlūm, -ī, *bedchamber.*

cūbīlē, -īs, *couch.*

cujūs, -ā, -ūm, *whose* (§ 88).

culpā, -æ, *fault.*

cultēr, -ī, *knife.*

cūm, *with.*

cūpīdītās, -tātīs, *longing, lust.*

cūpīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *desirous, eager.*

cūpiō, -ērē, -ivī, -ītūm, *to desire.*

cūr, *why.*

cūrā, -æ, *care.*

cūrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to care for, attend to.*

currō, -ērē, cūcurrī, cursūm, *to run.*

currūs, -ūs, *chariot.*

cursūs, -ūs, *running, course.*

custōs, -ōdīs, *keeper, guardian, sentinel.*

D.

damnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to condemn.*

Dāvūs, -ī, *Davus.*

dē (prep. with abl.), *down from, concerning, of.*

deā, -æ (§ 18, Rem. 5), *goddess.*

dēbeō, -ērē, dēbuī, dēbītūm, *to owe, ought.*

dē-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to depart.*

dēcēm, *ten; § 63.*

dēcēt, dēcēbāt, dēcūit (§ 114), *it becomes, it is right.*

dēcīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *tenth.*

de-clivīs, -ē, *sloping downward.*

dēcōrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to adorn.*
 dēcōrūs, -ā, -ūm, *becoming.*
 dēcūs, -ōrīs, *honor, dignity.*
 dē-dēcūs, -ōrīs, *disgrace.*
 dē-dītiō, -ōnīs, *surrender.*
 dē-dō, -ērē, dēdidī, dēditūm, *to surrender.*
 dē-fendō, -ērē, -fendī, -fensūm, *to defend.*
 dē-fensō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to defend diligently.*
 dē-fērō, -ferrē, -tūlī, -lātūm, *to bring or carry (from one place or person to another), to report, to tell.*
 dē-fervescō, -ērē, -fervī and -ferbuī, *to boil down, subside.*
 dēfessūs, -ā, -ūm, *weary.*
 de-flagrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn down.*
 de-fluō, -ērē, -fluxī, -fluxūm, *to flow down or away.*
 de-jiciō, -ērē, -jēcī, jectūm, *to throw down.*
 dēlectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to delight.*
 dēleō, -ērē, -ēvī, -ētūm, *to destroy.*
 dē-libērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to liberate.*
 dē-lietūm, -ī, *fault, crime.*
 dē-līgō, -ērē, -lēgī, -lectūm, *to choose.*
 Delphī, -ōrūm, *Delphi, a town of Greece.*
 Dēmārātūs, -ī, *Demaratus.*
 dēmentīā, -æ, *madness.*
 dē-monstrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to show.*
 Dēmosthēnēs, -īs, *Demosthenes.*
 dēnī, *ten at a time ; § 63.*
 dens, dentīs, *tooth.*
 densūs, -ā, -ūm, *thick, dense.*
 dēnuntiō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to denounce, threaten.*
 deorsūm (adv.), *down-hill.*
 dē-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -ītūm, *to lay aside.*

dē-sīliō, -īrē, -sīluī, -sultūm, *to leap down.*
 dē-sistō, -ērē, destītī, destītūm, *to cease.*
 de-spērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to despair.*
 destīnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to fasten.*
 de-stītuō, -ērē, -stītuī, -stītūtūm, *to desert.*
 de-stringō, -ērē, -strinxī, -strictūm, *to draw.*
 dē-sūpēr (adv.), *from above.*
 dē-terreō, -ērē, -terruī, -terrītūm, *to scare off, deter.*
 deūs, -ī (§ 24, Rem. §), *a god.*
 dē-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to come down.*
 dē-vōrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to gulp down.*
 dextēr, -tērā, -tērūm or -trā, -trūm, *on the right, right.*
 Diānā, -æ, *Diana.*
 dīcō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dedicate.*
 dīcō, -ērē, dixī, dictūm, *to say.*
 dictātōr, -ōrīs, *dictator.*
 dictūm, -ī, *word.*
 diēs, -ēī, *day.*
 dif-fērō, -ferrē, dis-tūlī, dī-lātūm, *to put off, defer.*
 dif-fīcīlīs, -ē, *difficult.*
 dif-fīdō, -ērē, -fīsūs, *to distrust.*
 dignūs, -ā, -ūm, *worthy.*
 dī-lābōr, -ī, -lapsūs, *to fall to pieces.*
 dīlīgentiā, -æ, *diligence.*
 dī-līgō, -ērē, -lexī, -lectūm, *to love.*
 dī-mīdiūm, -ī, *half.*
 dī-mittō, -ērē, -mīsī, -missūm, *to send out.*
 Diōnysīūs, -ī, *Dionysius.*
 dī-rīpiō, -ērē, -rīpuī, -reptūm, *to tear asunder, plunder, pillage.*

dis-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessum, to *depart*.

discipulus, -ī, *pupil, learner*.

discō, -ērē, didici, to *learn*.

dis-cordiā, -æ, *disagreement*.

dis-plīceō, -ērē, -plīcui, -plīcītum, to *displease*.

dis-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -pōsītum, to *arrange*.

dis-pūtō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, to *dis-*
cuss, dispute.

dis-sentiō, -irē, -sensi, -sensum, to *differ in opinion, dissent*.

dis-similis, -ē, *unlike*.

diū, -ūtius, -ūtissimē (adv.), *long*.

diūturnus, -ā, -um, *lasting*.

divēs, -ītis, *rich*.

dividō, -ērē, -visī, -visum, to *di-*
vide.

divinūs, -ā, -um, *divine*.

Divitiācūs, -ī, *an Æduan chief*.

divitiæ, -arum, *riches*.

dō, dārē, dēdī, dātum, to *give*.

dōceō, -ērē, dōcui, doctum, to *teach*.

doctrinā, -æ, *teaching, doctrine*.

doctus, -ā, -um, *learned*.

doleō, -ērē, -ui, -itum, to *grieve*.

dolōr, -ōris, *pain, grief*.

dōminā, -æ, *mistress*.

dōmīnūs, -ī, *master*.

dōmō, -ārē, -ui, -itum, to *tame*.

dōmūs (‡ 48, Rem. 5), *house*.

dōnēc, until (temp. conj.).

dōnūm, -ī, *gift*.

dormiō, -irē, -ivī, -itum, to *sleep*.

dormitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, to *fall*
asleep.

Druīdēs, -um, *the Druids*.

dūbitātiō, -ōnis, *doubt*.

dūbitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, to *doubt*.

dūbiūs, -ā, -um, *doubtful*.

dūcentī, -æ, -ā (‡ 63), *two hun-*
dred.

dūcō, -ērē, duxī, ductum, to *lead,*
deem, consider, regard.

dulcis, -ē, *sweet*.

dūm, *while, as long as, until*.

Dumnōrix, -īgīs, *brother of Divitia-*
cus.

duō, -æ, -ō, *two*.

dūplex, -icis, *double*.

dūplicō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, to *double*.

dūrūs, -ā, -um, *hard*.

dux, dūcis, *leader*.

Dyonysius, -ī, *Dyonysius*.

E.

Ē or ex, out of, from, in consequence
of, after.

ē-dicō, -ērē, -dixī, -dictum, to *issue*
an edict.

ēdō, -ērē, ēdī, ēsum (‡ 111), to *eat*.

ē-dōceō, -ērē, -dōcui, -doctum, to
teach thoroughly, educate.

ē-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductum, to *lead*
out.

effigies, -eī, *image, likeness*.

ēgens, -entis, *needy*.

ēgeō, -ērē, ēguī, to *need*.

ēgestās, -tātis, *poverty*.

ēgō (‡ 78), *I*.

e-grēdiōr, -ī, egressus, to *go out*.

egrēgiūs, -ā, -um, *remarkable*.

e-jiciō, -ērē, -jecī, -jectum, to *cast*
out.

ēlēgans, -antis, *luxurious, elegant*.

ēlōquens, -entis, *eloquent*.

ēlōquentiā, -æ, *eloquence*.

ēmō, -ērē, ēmī, emptum, to *buy*.

ēmōlumentum, -ī, *advantage*.

eō, irē, ivī, itum, to *go*.

Ēpamīnondās, -æ (App. I.), *the grea*
Theban general.

Ēphēsīūs, -ā, -um, *Ephesian*.

Ēphēsūs, -ī, *a city of Asia Minor*.

ēpistolā, -æ, *letter, epistle*.

ēquēs, -ītis, *horseman*.

ēquestēr or -trīs, -ē, *of a horse*.

ēquitātūs, -ūs, *cavalry*.

ēquitō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to be a horseman, to ride on horseback*.

ēquūs, -ī, *horse*.

ergā (prep. with acc.), *towards*.

ē-ripiō, -ērē, -ripiui, -reptūm, *to rescue*.

errō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to err*.

errōr, -ōris, *error*.

ēsūriens, -entis, *hungry*.

ēt, *and*; ēt — ēt, *both — and*.

ētiām, *also*.

Ētrūriā, -æ, *Etruria*.

ex (prep. with abl.), *out of*.

ex-cēdō, -ērē, -cessi, -cessūm, *to retire*.

exemplūm, -ī, *example*.

ex-eō, -irē, exiī, exītūm, *to go out*.

exerceō, -ērē, -ui, -ītūm, *to exercise*.

exercītūs, -ūs, *army*.

exigō, -ērē, -ēgi, -actūm, *to demand*.

exiguūs, -ā, -ūm, *slight, small*.

existimō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to judge, think*.

exitium, -ī, *destruction*.

ex-pellō, -ērē, -puli, -pulsūm, *to drive out*.

expers, -pertis, *destitute*.

expleō, -ērē, -plēvi, -plētūm, *to fill out, satisfy*.

ex-plōrātōr, -ōris, *scout*.

ex-plōrō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to search out*.

ex-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -pōsitūm, *to explain*.

ex-pugnō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to storm*.

ex-sistō, -ērē, exstīti, exstītūm, *to stand out*.

ex-spectō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to await, look for*.

ex-ūrō, -ērē, -ussi, -ustūm, *to burn up*.

F.

fāciēs, -ēi, *form, face*.

fācilē, *easily*. From

fācilis, -ē, *easy*.

fācinūs, -ōris, *deed, crime*. From

fāciō, -ērē, fēcī, factūm, *to do, make, esteem, value*. — plūris, *to think more*

fācultās, -tātis, *means, power*. [of fallō, -ērē, fēfelli, falsūm, *to deceive*.

fāmā, -æ, *fame, reputation*.

fāmēs, -is, *hunger, famine*.

fāmiliā, -æ, *family*.

fāmiliāris, -ē, *pertaining to the family*; res fam., *property*.

fāteōr, -ērī, fassūs, *to confess*.

fātīgō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to weary*.

fāveō, -ērē, fāvī, fautūm, *to favor*.

febris, -is, *fever*.

fēmīnā, -æ, *woman*.

fēmūr, -ōris and -inis, *thigh*.

fērax, -ācis, *fertile*.

fērē (adv.), *almost*.

fērō, ferrē, tūli, lātūm, *to bear, carry, acquire*.

fērox, -ōcis, *fierce*.

ferreūs, -ā, -ūm, *made of iron*.

ferrūm, -ī, *iron*.

fērūs, -ā, -ūm, *wild, savage*.

fessūs, -ā, -ūm, *wearied*.

festinō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to hasten*.

fictilis, -ē, *earthen*.

fīdēs, -ēi, *faith, promise*.

fīdēs, -iūm, *strings, a lute, lyre*.

fīdō, -ērē, fīsūs, *to trust*.

fīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *faithful*.

fīgō, -ērē, fixī, fixūm, *to fix, fasten*.

fīgūrā, -æ, *figure, shape*.

filiā, -æ, *daughter*.

filiūs, -ī, *son*.

fiŋō, -ērē, finxi, fictūm, *to make, feign*.

fīnis, -is, *end, limit, boundary*.

finitīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *neighboring*.
 fiō, fieri, factūs, *to become, to be made*.
 firmūs, -ā, -ūm, *strong, firm*.
 flāgitō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to demand (earnestly)*.
 flātūs, -ūs, *blast*.
 flectō, -ērē, flexi, flexūm, *to bend*.
 fleō, flērē, flēvi, flētūm, *to weep*.
 flētūs, -ūs, *weeping*.
 floccūs, *a lock of wool (any thing of small value)*.
 flōs, flōris, *flower*.
 fluctūs, -ūs, *wave*.
 flūmēn, -inis, *river*.
 fluō, -ērē, fluxi, fluxūm, *to flow*.
 foedūs, -ōris, *league, treaty*.
 fōliūm, -i, *leaf*.
 fons, fontis, *fountain*.
 formā, -ae, *form, shape*.
 formidō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to dread*.
 forsītān (adv.), *perhaps*.
 fortis, -ē, *brave*.
 fortitēr (adv.), *bravely*.
 fortitūdō, -inis, *fortitude, firmness*.
 fortunā, -ae, *fortune*.
 fortunātūs, -ā, -ūm, *fortunate*.
 fossā, -ae, *ditch*.
 frāter, -tris, *brother*.
 frātricidā, -ae, *fratricide*.
 fraus, fraudis, *deceit*.
 frēmō, -ērē, frēmuī, frēmītūm, *to murmur, rage*.
 frēnūm, -i, *pl. -i and -ā, bit, bridle*.
 frētūs, -ā, -ūm, *trusting*.
 frons, frontis, *forehead*.
 fructūs, -ūs, *fruit*.
 frūmentāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *of corn*.
 frūmentōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to forage*.
 frūmentūm, -i, *corn, grain*.
 fruōr, -i, fructūs, fruitūs, *to enjoy*.
 frustrā (adv.), *in vain*.
 fūgā, -ae, *flight*.

fūgiō, -ērē, fūgi, fūgitūm, *to flee*.
 fūgō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to put to flight, rout*.
 fulgūrātiō, -ōnis, *lightning*.
 funditōr, -ōris, *slinger*.
 fungōr, -i, functūs, *to perform*.
 fūr, fūris, *thief*.
 furfūr, -ūris, *bran*.
 fūrōr, -ōris, *rage, fury*.
 fūtūrūs, -ā, -ūm, *about to be*.

G.

Galbā, -ae, *Galba*.
 Galliā, -ae, *Gaul*.
 Gallicūs, -ā, -ūm, *Gallie*.
 gallinā, -ae, *hen*.
 Gallūs, -i, *a Gaul*.
 gaudeō, -ērē, gāvisūs, *to rejoice*.
 gēnēr, -i, *son-in-law*.
 gēnērātīm (adv.), *by tribes*.
 gens, gentis, *race, family*.
 gēnūs, -ērīs, *kind, race*.
 Germāniā, -ae, *Germany*.
 Germānūs, -i, *a German*.
 gērō, -ērē, gessi, gestūm, *to wage, carry on*.
 glādiūs, -i, *sword*.
 glans, glandis, *acorn*.
 Glaucūs, -i, *Glaucus*.
 glōriā, -ae, *glory*.
 Græciā, -ae, *Greece*.
 Græcūs, -i, *a Greek*.
 grammāticā, -ae, *grammar*.
 grātūs, -ā, -ūm, *acceptable, pleasant*.
 grāvis, -ē, *heavy, severe*.
 grāvītēr, *heavily, severely*.
 grēgātīm, *in flocks, herds*.
 grex, grēgis, *flock, herd*.

H.

hābeō, -ērē, hābuī, hābitūm, *to have, hold*.
 hābitō, *to have frequently, dwell*.

hædūs, -ī, *kid*.
 hæreð, -ērē, hæsi, hæsum, *to stick*.
 Hannibāl, -ālīs, *Hannibal*.
 Hārūdēs, -ūm, *Harudians*.
 hastā, -æ, *spear*.
 haud, *not*.
 Hēlōtēs, -ūm, *Helots*.
 Helvētiūs, -ī, *a Helvetian*.
 Hereulēs, -īs, *Hercules*.
 Hermīniūs, -ī, *Herminius*.
 hērūs, -ī, *master*.
 hibernā (castrā), *winter quarters*.
 Hiberniā, -æ, *Ireland*.
 hīc, hæc, hūc, *this*.
 hiēmō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to winter*.
 hiems, -īs, *winter*.
 hōdiē, *to-day*.
 Hōmērūs, -ī, *Homer*.
 hōmō, -inīs, *man*.
 hōnestē, *honorably*.
 hōnestūs, *honorable*.
 hōnōr, -ōrīs, *honor*.
 hōrā, -æ, *hour*.
 horreūm, -ī, *granary*.
 hortōr, -ārī, -atūs, *to encourage*.
 hortūs, -ī, *garden*.
 hospēs, -ītīs, *guest*.
 hostilīs, -ē, *of an enemy, hostile*.
 hostīs, -īs, *enemy*.
 hūmānitās, -tātīs, *refinement*.
 hūmānūs, -ā, -ūm, *human*.
 hūmērūs, -ī, *shoulder*.
 hūmilīs, -ē, *low*.
 hūmūs, -ī, *ground*.

I.

ībī, *there*.
 idēm, eādēm, idēm, *same*.
 idōneūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, suitable*.
 ignārūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant*.
 ignīs, -īs, *fire*.
 ignoscō, -ērē, -nōvī, -nōtūm, *to forgive*.

ignōtūs, -ā, -ūm, *unknown*.
 illē, -ā, -ūd, *that, the former, he*.
 illīcið, -ērē, -lexī, -lectūm, *to decoy*.
 imbēr, -brīs, *rain, shower*.
 imītōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to imitate*.
 immānīs, -ē, *immense, huge*.
 immēmōr, -ōrīs, *unmindful*.
 immortalīs, -īs, -ē, *immortal*.
 immortalītās, -tātīs, *immortality*.
 impātiens, -entīs, *not able or willing to bear, impatient*.
 impēdimentūm, -ī, *hindrance*.
 impēdið, -irē, -ivī, -itūm, *to hinder*.
 impellō, -ērē, -pūlī, -pulsūm, *to drive on*.
 impērātōr, -ōrīs, *general, emperor*.
 impērātūm, -ī, *order*.
 impērītūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant, unskilled*.
 impēriūm, -ī, *command, government*.
 impērō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to order*.
 impētrō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to obtain*.
 impētūs, -ūs, *attack*.
 impiētās, -tātīs, *undutifulness*.
 impīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *active*.
 impleð, -ērē, -plēvī, -plētūm, *to fill*.
 impōnō, -ērē, pōsuī, -pōsitūm, *to put upon*.
 importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūm, *to bring in, import*.
 impōtens, -entīs, *unable to restrain*.
 imprōbūs, -ā, -ūm, *wicked*.
 imprūdēns, -entīs, *imprudent*.
 imūs, -ā, -ūm. *See infērūs*.
 īn (with acc.), *into, upon*; (with abl.), *in, among*.
 incendiūm, *a burning, conflagration*.
 incendō, -ērē, -cendī, -censūm, *to set on fire, to burn up*.
 incertūs, -ā, -ūm, *uncertain*.
 incīdō, -ērē, incīdī, -cāsūm, *to happen*.
 incīpið, -ērē, -cēpī, -ceptūm, *to begin*.

incitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to set in motion, arouse, excite.*

incōlā, -æ, *inhabitant.*

incōlō, -ērē, -cōluī, *to inhabit, dwell, live.*

incōlūmīs, -ē, *unhurt, safe.*

incondītūs, -ā, -ūm, *rude, uncouth.*

inerēdībīlīs, -ē, *incredible.*

incūsō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to blame, censure, find fault with, accuse.*

indignūs, -ā, -ūm, *unworthy.*

in-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, ductum, *to lead on.*

indulgeō, -ērē, -dulsī, -dultum, *to indulge.*

infans, -antīs, *infant.*

infēlix, -icīs, *unfruitful, unhappy.*

infērō, -ferrē, intūlī, illātum, *to bring upon, wage upon, inflict.*

infērūs, -ā, -ūm, *low ; § 72, 4.*

infīnītūs, -ā, -ūm, *boundless.*

infirmūs, -ā, -ūm, *weak.*

in-fluō, -ērē, -fluxī, -fluxum, *to flow into.*

infrēnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to bridle.*

ingēniūm, -ī, *intellect, natural disposition.*

ingens, -entīs, *huge.*

ingrātūs, -ā, -ūm, *disagreeable, ungrateful.*

īnīmīcitiā, -æ, *enmity.*

īnīmīcūs, -ī, *enemy.*

īnīquūs, -ā, -ūm, *unjust.*

īnītiūm, -ī, *beginning.*

injūriā, -æ, *injury.*

in-nascōr, -ī, -nātūs, *to spring up.*

innōcens, -entīs, *innocent.*

innōcentiā, -æ, *innocence, purity.*

īnōpiā, -æ, *want, scarcity.*

inquām (§ 113), *I say (used only after one or more words of a quotation).*

insīdiā, -ārūm, *ambush, snares.*

in-sīliō, -īrē, -sīlii and -sīluī, *to leap upon.*

instīgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to stir up.*

in-stītuō, -ērē, -stītuī, -stītūtum, *to arrange, instruct.*

in-struō, -ērē, -struxī, -structum, *to set in order, draw up, build.*

in-suētūs, -ā, -ūm, *unaccustomed.*

insulā, -æ, *island.*

intēgēr, -grā, -grūm, *sound, unhurt.*

intēgrātiō, -ōnīs, *renewal.*

intelligō, -ērē, -lexī, -lectum, *to understand.*

intēr, *between, among, in the midst of ; intēr sē, with or against one another ; intēr spōliandūm, in the act of despoiling.*

inter-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessum, *to come between, intervene.*

inter-dicō, -ērē, -dixī, -dictum, *to forbid.*

interdūm, *sometimes.*

intēreō, -īrē, intēriī, intērītum, *to die, perish.*

intērest. *See intersum.*

interficiō, -ērē, -fēcī, -fectum, *to kill.*

inter-rōgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to ask.*

intersum, -essē, -fuī, *to be of importance, to be between ; nihīl intērest, it makes no difference.*

intērūs, -ā, -ūm, *inward.*

intrōducō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductum, *to introduce.*

in-ūtīlīs, -ē, *useless.*

in-vādō, -ērē, -vāsī, -vāsūm, *to attack, invade.*

in-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come upon, find, invent.*

in-ventōr, -ōrīs, *inventor.*

in-vestigō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to search out.*

in-victūs, -ā, -ūm, *invincible.*

invidiā, -æ, *envy.*

invītō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to invite.*

invītūs, -ā, -ūm, *unwilling.*

ipsē, -ā, -ūm, *self.*

irā, -æ, *anger.*

iracundiā, -æ, *hasty temper.*

irascōr, -ī, *to be angry.*

irātūs, -ā, -ūm, *angry.*

īs, eā, id, *this, that*; § 82.

istē, -ā, -ūd, *that (of yours).*

itā, *thus, so.*

Itāliā, -æ, *Italy.*

Itālicī, *the Italians.*

Itālicūs, -ā, -ūm, *Italian.*

itāquē, *and so, therefore.*

itēm, *likewise.*

itēr, itīnērīs, *journey, march, way.*

J.

jāciō, -ērē, jēcī, jactūm, *to throw.*

jactō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to throw about, discuss.*

jām, *now, already.*

jēcūr (§ 45), *the liver.*

jūbār, -ārīs, *sunshine.*

jūbeō, -ērē, jussī, jussūm, *to order.*

jūcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *delightful.*

jūdex, -icīs, *judge.*

jūdicō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to judge.*

jūgūm, -ī, *a yoke. Two spears set upright, with a third laid across the top, were called jūgūm.*

Jūgurthā, -æ, *king of Numidia.*

jūmentūm, -ī, *beast of burden, work-horse or ox.*

Jūpitēr, Jōvīs, *Jupiter.*

Jūrā, -æ, *Jura, a mountain.*

jūs, jūrīs, *law, right (usually unwritten law, as opposed to lex, statute law).*

jusjūrandūm (§ 45), *oath.*

justūs, -ā, -ūm, *just.*

jūvāt, -ābāt, jūvīt, *it pleases.*

jūvenīs, -īs, *young man.*

jūventūs, -tūtīs, *youth.*

jūvō, -ārē, jūvī, jūtūm, jūvātūrūs, *to help, please.*

L.

Lābiēnūs, -ī, *a lieutenant of Cæsar.*

lābōr, -ōrīs, *labor.*

lāc, lactīs, *milk.*

Lācēdæmōn, -ōnīs, *Sparta.*

lācessō, -ērē, -ivī, -itūm, *to provoke*; injūriā lācessērē, *to injure.*

lacrīmā, -æ, *tear.*

lācūs, -ūs, *lake.*

lætūs, -ā, -ūm, *joyful.*

lāniō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to tear to pieces.*

lāpīs, -idīs, *stone.*

largiōr, -irī, -itūs, *to bribe.*

lātēō, -ērē, lātui, *to lie hid.*

lātītūdō, -inīs, *breadth.*

latrō, -ōnīs, *robber.*

lātūs, -ā, -ūm, *wide, broad.*

lātūs, -ērīs, *side, flank.*

laudō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to praise.*

laus, laudīs, *praise, glory.*

lāvō, -ārē, lāvī, lōtūm, lautūm, lāvātūm, *to bathe.*

lēgātīō, -ōnīs, *embassy.*

lēgātūs, -ī, *ambassador, lieutenant.*

lēgiō, -ōnīs, *legion.*

lēgō, -ērē, lēgī, lectūm, *to read.*

Lēmānnūs, -ī, *the lake of Geneva.*

leō, -ōnīs, *lion.*

lēpūs, -ōrīs, *hare.*

lēvis, -ē, *light, slight.*

lēvō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to lighten, relieve.*

lex, lēgīs, *law.*

libentĕr (adv.), *willingly, gladly.*
 libĕr, -ā, -ūm, *free.*
 libĕr, -brī, *book.*
 libĕrī, -ōrūm, *children.*
 libĕrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to free.*
 libertās, -tātis, *liberty.*
 licĕt, licuit, *it is allowed, permitted;*
right, lawful.
 lignūm, -ī, *wood.*
 linguā, -æ, *tongue, language.*
 lintĕr, -trīs, *boat.*
 Liscūs, -ī, *an Æduan chief.*
 litĕrā, -æ, *a letter (of the alpha-*
bet).
 litūs, -ōris, *shore.*
 locūplĕs, -ētis, *rich.*
 locūs, -ī, *pl. -ī and -ā, place.*
 longē (adv.), *by far.*
 longitūdō, -inis, *length.*
 longūs, -ā, -ūm, *long.*
 loquor, -ī, locūtus, *to speak.*
 Lūcius, -ī, *Lucius.*
 lūdus, -ī, *game, play.*
 lūmĕn, -inis, *light.*
 lūnā, -æ, *moon.*
 lūpūs, -ī, *wolf.*
 lux, lucis, *light.*

M.

Mācĕdōniā, -æ, *Macedonia.*
 mactō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to sacri-*
fice.
 mārōr, -ōris, *grief; præ mārōrē,*
for grief (a preventing cause).
 māgis, maxīmē, *more, most.*
 māgistĕr, -ī, *master (of a school,*
etc.).
 magnānimūs, -ā, -ūm, *great-souled,*
magnanimous.
 magnitūdō, -inis, *greatness.*
 magnūs, -ā, -ūm (majōr, maxīmūs),
great.
 mālĕ (pejās, pessīmē), *badly.*

mālĕdicō, -ērē, -dixī, -dictūm, *to be*
abusive, revile, curse.
 mālō, mallĕ, māluī, *to prefer.*
 mālūm, -ī, *apple.*
 mālūs, -ā, -ūm (pejōr, pessīmūs),
bad, wicked, evil.
 mālūs, -ī, *mast of a ship.*
 mandātūm, -ī, *a thing intrusted, com-*
mand.
 mandō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to intrust.*
 māneō, -ērē, mansī, mansūm, *to re-*
main.
 Māniliūs, -ā, -ūm, *of Manilius.*
 Manliūs, -ī, *Manlius.*
 mānūs, -ūs, *hand.*
 Marcūs, -ī, *Mark.*
 mārē, -is, *sea.*
 mārītīmūs, *bordering on the sea.*
 Māriūs, -ī, *Marius.*
 marmōr, -ōris, *marble.*
 mātĕr, -trīs, *mother.*
 māterfāmilīās, *matron (§ 45).*
 mātūrē (adv.), *quickly, soon.*
 mātūrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hasten.*
 mātūrūs, -ā, -ūm, *ripe.*
 mēdicāmentūm, -ī, *drug, dose.*
 mēdicīnā, -æ, *medicine.*
 mēdicūs, -ī, *physician.*
 mēdiūs, -ā, -ūm, *middle.*
 mēliōr, -ūs, *better.*
 membrūm, -ī, *limb.*
 mēmīnī (§ 113), *I remember.*
 mēmōr, -ōris, *mindful.*
 mēmōriā, -æ, *memory, recollection.*
 mendāciūm, -ī, *falsehood, lie.*
 mendax, -ācis, *false, lying.*
 mens, mentis, *mind.*
 mensā, -æ, *table.*
 mensis, -is, *month.*
 mentiōr, -īrī, -itūs, *to lie.*
 mercātōr, -ōris, *merchant.*
 Mercūriūs, -ī, *Mercury.*
 mergĕs, -itīs, *sheaf.*

mēridiēs, -ei, *mid-day*.
 mēritūs, -ā, -ūm, *deserving*.
 Messālā, -æ, *Messala*.
 mētiōr, -īrī, mensūs, *to measure*.
 mētō, -ērē, messuī, messūm, *to reap*.
 mētuo, -ērē, mētui, rarely mētūtūm,
to fear, be apprehensive.
 mētūs, -ūs, *apprehension, fear*.
 meūs, -ā, -ūm, *my, mine*.
 Mīcipsā, -æ, *Micipsa*.
 milēs, -ītīs, *soldier*.
 Milētūs, -ī, *Miletus, a city of Asia*.
 militāris, -ē, *military*.
 militiā, -æ, *military service*.
 millē (‡ 64, 6), *thousand*.
 mīnīmē, *least, not at all*.
 mīnōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to threaten*.
 mīnōr, -ūs, *less*.
 mīnuo, -ērē, mīnuī, mīnūtūm, *to*
make less, weaken.
 mīrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to wonder*.
 mīrūs, -ā, -ūm, *wonderful*.
 mīsēr, -ā, -ūm, *wretched*.
 mīsēreō, -ērē, -ui, *to pity* (generally
 used impersonally, ‡ 135 c).
 mīsērescō, -ērē, *to pity*.
 mittō, -ērē, mīsi, missūm, *to send*.
 mōdūs, -ī, *manner, measure, limit*;
 prætēr mōdūm, *beyond measure,*
unduly.
 mœniā, -iūm, etc., *walls*.
 mœrōr, -ōris, *grief*.
 mollis, -ē, *soft*.
 mōneō, -ērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm, *to*
advise, remind.
 mōnīlē, -īs, *necklace*.
 mons, mont-īs, *mountain*.
 monstrō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to show*.
 mordeō, -ērē, mōmordī, morsūm, *to*
champ, bite.
 Mōrīnī, -ōrūm, *the Morini*.
 mōriōr, -ī and -īrī, mortuūs, mōrītū-
 rū, *to die*.

mōrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to delay*.
 mors, mortīs, *death*.
 morsūs, -ūs, *biting*.
 mortālis, -ē, *mortal*.
 mortī-fēr, -ā, -ūm, *death-bearing,*
mortal.
 mortuūs, -ā, -ūm, *dead*.
 mōs, mōris, *manner, custom*.
 mōtūs, -ūs, *moving, insurrection*.
 mōveō, -ērē, mōvi, mōtūm, *to move*.
 mūliēr, -ērīs, *woman*.
 multītūdō, -īnīs, *multitude*.
 multūs (plūs, plūrīmūs), *much, many*.
 mundūs, -ī, *world*.
 mūniō, -īrē, -īvi, -ītūm, *to fortify*.
 mūnūs, -ērīs, *duty, present*.
 mūrūs, -ī, *wall*.
 mūs, mūris, *mouse*.
 mūsā, -æ, *muse*.
 mūsicā, -æ, *music*.
 mūtō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to change*.

N.

nactūs, *participle from nanciscōr*.
 nām, *for* (conj.).
 namquē, *for indeed*.
 nanciscōr, -ī, nactūs and nanctūs, *to*
get.
 narrō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to tell, relate*.
 nascōr, -ī, nātūs, *to be born*.
 nātūrā, -æ, *nature*.
 nātūs, -ūs, *birth*.
 nautā, -æ, *sailor*.
 nāvālē, -īs, *dock-yard*.
 nāvīgātiō, -ōnīs, *navigation*.
 nāvīgō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to sail*.
 nāvis, -īs, *ship*.
 nē (final conj.), *that — not, lest*.
 nec (conj.), *neither, nor, and not*.
 necessāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *critical, neccs-*
sary.
 necō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to murder,*
kill.

negligens, -entis, *negligent*; part.
adj.

negligō, -ērē, -lexī, -lectūm, to *neglect*.

nēgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *deny*.

nēgōtiūm, -ī, *business*.

nēmō, -īnī, īnēm, *no man, no one*.

nēmūs, -ōris, *grove*.

nēpōs, -ōtis, *grandson*.

Neptūnūs, -ī, *Neptune, god of the sea*.

nēquē, *and not, neither, nor*.

nē — quidēm, *not even*.

Nerviūs, -ā, -ūm, *Nervian*.

nesciō, -īrē, -īvī, -ītūm, *not to know*.

neutēr, -ā, -ūm, *neither (of two)*.

nēvē, neu, *and — not, nor (neg. fin. conj.)*.

nīdificō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *build a nest*.

nīdūs, -ī, *nest*.

nīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *black*.

nīhīl (indecl.) or nīhīlūm, -ī, *nothing*.

nīmiūs, -ā, -ūm, *too much, excessive*.

nīsī (cond. conj.), *unless, if not*.

nītōr, -ī, nīsūs or nixūs, to *strive*.

nōbīlis, -ē, *noble*.

nōbīlītās, -ātīs, *nobility*.

nōceō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, to *hurt, harm*.

nōlō, nollē, nōluī, to *be unwilling*.

nōmēn, -īnīs, *name*.

nōn, *not*.

nondūm, *not yet*.

non nē (in direct questions, § 81, 4; in indirect questions), *if not, whether not*.

nōnūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 63), *ninth*.

nōs, § 78.

noscō, -ērē, nōvī, nōtūm, to *know*.

nostēr, -ā, -ūm, *our, ours*.

nōvēm (§ 63), *nine*.

nōvūs, -ā, -ūm, *new, late*.

nox, noctīs, *night*.

noxīūs, *hurtful*.

nūbēs, -īs, *cloud*.

nūdō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *strip*.

nūdūs, -ā, -ūm, *naked*.

nullūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56), *none, not any*.

nūm, § 81, 3.

Nūmā, -æ, *Numa*.

Nūmantīnūs, -ā, -ūm, *Numantian*.

nūmērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *count*.

nūmērūs, -ī, *number*.

Nūmīdā, -æ, *a Numidian*.

Nūmīdiā, -æ, *Numidia*.

numquīs, § 89.

nunc, *now*.

nunciō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *announce*.

nunciūs, -ī, *messenger*.

nunquā or numquā, *never*.

O.

ōb, *for, on account of*.

obliscōr, oblitūs, to *forget*.

obscūrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *observe*.

ob-sēcōr, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *beseech*.

obsēs, -īdīs, *hostage*.

ob-sideō, -ērē, -sēdī, -sessūm, to *besiege*.

obsīdīō, -ōnīs, *siege*.

ob-stō, -ārē, -stītī, -stātūm, to *stand before, hinder, prevent*.

ob-truncō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *slay*.

occāsūs, -ūs, *going down, setting*.

oc-cīdō (ōb — cādō), -cīdī, -cīsūm, to *cut down, kill*.

oc-cīdō (ōb — cādō), -ērē, -cīdī, -cāsūm, to *fall, set*.

occultō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *hide*.

oc-cultūs, -ā, -ūm, *hidden*.

occūpō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to *seize, take possession of*.

ōceānūs, -ī, *ocean*.

octāvūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 63), *eighth*.

octingentī, -æ, -ā (§ 63), *eight hundred*.

octō (§ 63), *eight*.

ōcūlūs, -ī, *eye*.

ōdī (§ 113, *Rem. 1*), *I hate*.

ōdiūm, -ī, *hatred*.

offendō, -ērē, offendī, offensūm, *to offend*.

officiūm, -ī, *duty, service*.

olīm (adv.), *formerly, anciently*;
(of the future,) *some time or other*.

omnīnō, *altogether, wholly, at all*.

omnis, -ē, *all, every*.

ōnērāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *of burden*.

ōnērō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to load, lade*.

ōnūs, -ērīs, *burden*.

ōpērā, -æ, *pains, work, labor*.

ōpīniō, -ōnīs, *opinion, belief*.

ōpīnōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to be of opinion*.

ōpīs (gen.), *of help, strength*, § 51;
summā ōpē, *with all one's might*.

ōportēt, -uīt, *it is necessary, proper, it behooves*.

oppidānūs, -ā, -ūm, *of a town*.

oppidūm, -ī, *town*.

opportūnītās, -ātīs, *fitness, suitability, ness*.

opportūnūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, favorable*.

opprimō, -ērē, -pressī, -pressūm, *to press down, put down, suppress, overcome, crush, oppress*.

oppugnō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to assault*.

optimūs, -ā, -ūm (bōnūs), *best*.

ōpūlens or ōpūlentūs, -ā, -ūm, *powerful*.

ōpūs, -ērīs, *work*.

ōpūs (indecl.), *need, necessity*; ōpūs est, *it is necessary, there is need*.

ōrācūlūm, -ī, *oracle*.

ōrātiō, -ōnīs, *speech, oration*.

ōrātōr, -ōrīs, *orator*.

orbīs, -īs, *circle*; orbīs terrārūm, *the world*.

ordō, -īnīs, *rank, order*.

Orgētōrix, -īgīs, *a Helvetian chief*.

ōrīgō, -īnīs, *origin*.

ōriōr, -īrī, ortūs, ōrītūrūs, *to rise*.

ōs, ōrīs, *mouth, face*.

ōs, ossīs, *bone*.

ōtiūm, -ī, *leisure, ease*.

Ovīdiūs, -ī, *Ovid*.

ōvis, -īs, *sheep*.

ōvūm, -ī, *egg*.

Oxūs, -ī, *the Oxus*.

P.

pācō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to subdue*.

pāgūs, -ī, *canton*.

pālūs, -ūdīs, *marsh, bog*.

pālūstēr, -trīs, -trē, *marshy*.

pānīs, -īs, *bread*.

pār, pārīs, *equal*.

pārātūs, -ā, -ūm, *ready, prepared*.

parcō, -ērē, pēpercī, parsī, parcītūm and parsūm, *to spare*.

pārens, -entīs, *parent*.

pāreō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to obey, be obedient*.

pāriēs, -ētīs, *wall (of a house)*.

pāriō, -ērē, pēpērī, partūm, *to beget, bring forth*.

Parmēniō, -ōnīs, *Parmenio*.

pārō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to prepare*.

parrīcidā, -æ, *killer of a father, parricide*.

pars, partis, *part*; unā ex partē, *on one side*.

partīm (acc. of pars), *partly*.

pārūm, minūs, minīmē, *little*.

parvūs, -ā, -ūm, *small, little*.

passūs, -ūs, *pace*; millē passūs, *a mile*.

pastōr, -ōrīs, *shepherd*.

pătēfăciō, -fēcī, -factūm, *to lay open*,
 § 107, *Rem. 1.*

păteō, -ērē, pătuī, *to lie open.*

pătēr, pătrīs, *father.*

păterfămīliās, § 45, *father of a family.*

pātiens, -entīs, *capable of enduring*,
patient.

pătientēr, *patiently.*

pătientiā, -æ, *patience.*

pătīnā, -æ, *dish.*

pătiōr, -ī, passūs, *to suffer, endure*,
permit.

pătriā, -æ, *country.*

paucī, -æ, -ă, *few.*

paulātīm, *by degrees.*

paulūs, -ă, -ūm, *little*; usually in
 the acc. and abl. neuter.

paupēr, -īs, *poor.*

paupertās, -ătīs, *poverty.*

păvōr, -ōrīs, *trembling.*

pax, păcis, *peace.*

peccātūm, -ī, *fault, sin.*

peccō, -ărē, -ăvī, -ătūm, *to do wrong*,
sin.

pectūs, -ōrīs, *breast.*

pēcūniā, -æ, *sum of money.*

pēcūs, -ōrīs, *cattle, flock, herd.*

pēdēs, -ītīs, *footman.*

pēdestēr, -trīs, -trē, *on foot.*

pejōr, -ūs (mălūs), *worse.*

pellis, -īs, *skin, hide.*

pellō, -ērē, pēpūlī, pulsūm, *to beat*,
drive, rout.

pendō, -ērē, pēpendī, pensūm, *to*
cause to hang, weigh, pay.

pēnēs (prep. with acc.), *in the power*
of.

pensūm, -ī, *weight.*

pēnūs, -ūs and -ī, *storehouse.*

pēr, *through.*

per-cūtīō, -ērē, -cussī, -cussūm, *to*
strike through, kill.

perdō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, *to destroy*,
lose.

per-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to*
lead through, extend.

pēr-eō, -irē, -iī, -ītūm, *to perish.*

per-făcīlīs, -ē, *very easy.*

per-fringō, -ērē, -frēgī, -fractūm, *to*
break through.

perfūgā, -æ, *deserter.*

pergō, -ērē, perrexī, -rectūm, *to pro-*
ceed.

pēriculōsūs, -ă, -ūm, *dangerous.*

pēriculūm, -ī, *trial, danger*; pēri-
 cūlūm făcērē, *to make a trial.*

pērindē (adv.), *exactly, precisely.*

pērītūs, *skilled.*

permagnūs, -ă, -ūm, *very great.*

per-mōveō, -ērē, -mōvī, -mōtūm, *to*
move thoroughly, alarm.

perm-ltūs, -ă, -ūm, *very much.*

perniciēs, -ēī, *destruction.*

perpētuo (adv.), *continually.*

perpētuoūs, -ă, -ūm, *unending.*

Persā, -æ, *Persian.*

per-sēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, *to follow*
perseveringly, overtake.

per-suādeō, -ērē, -suāsī, -suāsūm, *to*
persuade.

per-terreō, -ērē, -terrui, -terrītūm,
to frighten thoroughly, terrify.

per-tīneō, -ērē, -tīnuī, *to reach, ex-*
tend, pertain, belong.

per-turbō, -ărē, -ăvī, -ătūm, *to con-*
found.

per-vēniō, -irē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to*
come through, arrive.

pēs, pēdis, *foot.*

peşsimūs, -ă, -ūm (mălūs), *worst.*

pētō, -ērē, -ivī, -ītūm, *to seek, ask.*

phălanx, -gīs, *phalanx*; acc. *sing.*
 -ēm and -ă; acc. *pl.* -ēs and -ās.

Philippūs, -ī, *Philip.*

philōsophūs, -ī, *philosopher.*

Phōcion, -ōnīs, *Phocion*.

piētās, -ātīs, *dutifulness*.

pīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *slow, lazy*.

pīgēt, pīguīt and pīgītūm est, *it disgusts, irks, troubles*; pīgēt mē tuī,

I am disgusted with you.

pīlūm, -ī, *javelin*.

pīrātā, -æ, *pirate*.

piscīs, -īs, *fish*.

Pisō, -ōnīs, *Piso*.

pīūs, -ā, -ūm, *dutiful, pious*.

plāceō, -ērē, -uī, itūm, *to please*.

Plātō, -ōnīs, *a Grecian philosopher*.

plēbēs, -cī and -īs, and plebs, plēbīs, *common people*.

plēnūs, -ā, -ūm, *full*.

plērumquē (adv.), *for the most part*.

plūmā, -æ, *feather*.

plūs, plūris. (§ 72, 7), *more*.

pōcūlūm, -ī, *drinking-cup*.

poēmā, -ātīs, *poem*.

Poenī, *Carthaginians*.

pœnitēt, -uīt, *it repents*; p. mē peccātī, *I repent of my sin*.

poētā, -æ, *poet*.

polliceōr, -ērī, -ītūs, *to promise*.

pollieitātiō, -ōnīs, *promise*.

Pompēiūs, -ī, *Pompey*.

pōmūm, -ī, *fruit*.

pondūs, -ērīs, *weight*.

pōnō, -ērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm, *to put, place*.

pons, pontīs, *bridge*.

pōpūlōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to lay waste*.

pōpūlūs, -ī, *people*.

porrigō, -ērē, porrexī, porrectūm, *to stretch out*.

portā, -æ, *gate of a city*.

portō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to carry*.

portūs, -ūs, *harbor*.

poseō, -ērē, pōposeī, *to demand*.

possum, possē, pōtuī, *to be able*.

post, *after, behind*.

posteā, *afterwards*.

postērūs, postēriōr, postrēmūs or postūmūs, *coming after*; comp., *of less account, inferior*.

postquām (temp. conj.), *after*.

postūlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to demand*.

pōtens, -entīs, *powerful*.

pōtentiā, -æ, *power, ability*.

pōtestās, -ātīs, *power, right*.

pōtiōr, -irī, -itūs, *to get possession of, acquire*.

præ, *before, in comparison with, for*; præ mærore, *for grief*.

præbeō, -ērē, -uī, itūm, *to furnish*.

præ-ceptūm, -ī, *precept*. From præcipiō, -ērē, -cēpī, -ceptūm, *to instruct, order, command*.

præcipitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hurry forward*.

præcipuē, *especially*.

præcipuūs, -ā, -ūm, *especial*.

præclārūs, -ā, -ūm, *very distinguished*.

præcō, -ōnīs, *crier, herald*.

prædā, -æ, *booty*.

præ-dicō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to boast*.

præ-ditūs, -ā, -ūm, *endowed*.

prædōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to plunder*.

præ-ficiō, -ērē, -feci, -fectūm, *to put over*.

præ-mittō, -ērē, -misi, -missūm, *to send forward*.

præmiūm, -ī, *reward*.

præ-pōnō, -pōsuī, -pōsītūm, *to place before, to prefer*.

præsens, -entīs, *present*.

præsidiūm, -ī, *garrison*.

præstans, -antīs, *excellent, distinguished*. [stātūm, *to excel*.]

præ-stō, -ārē, -stīti, -stītūm and præ-sūm, -essē, -fuī, *to be over*.

prætēr, *past, besides, beyond*.

prætēr-eō, -irē, -ivī, -itūm, *to pass by*.

præter-mittō, -ērē, -mīsī, -missūm, *to let slip.*

prætēr mōdūm, *beyond measure, unduly.*

prætōr, -ōrīs, *prætor, chief.*

prāvūs, -ā, -ūm, *crooked, depraved.*

prēmō, -ērē, pressī, pressūm, *to press.*

prētiūm, -ī, *price, value.*

Priāmūs, -ī, *Priam.*

primūs, -ā, -ūm, *first.*

princeps, -īpīs, *chief.*

priōr, primūs, *former, sooner.*

pristinūs, -ā, -ūm, *former.*

priusquā, *before.*

privātūs, -ā, -ūm, *private.*

prō, *for, before.*

prōbitās, -ātīs, *honesty.*

prō-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to go forward.*

prēcūl, *at a distance.*

prō-currō, -ērē, -cūcurri and -curri, -cursūm, *to run forward.*

prōditiō, -ōnīs, *treachery.*

prōdītōr, -ōrīs, *traitor.*

proeliūm, -ī, *battle.*

prōfectiō, -ōnīs, *departure.*

prō-ficiscōr, -ī, -fectūs, *to set out.*

pro-flīgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dash in pieces.*

prō-fūgiō, -ērē, -fūgī, -fūgītūm, *to flee, run away, escape.*

prōgēniēs, -ēī, *offspring.*

progrēdiōr, -ī, -gressūs, *to go forth or forward.*

prō-hībeō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to prevent, keep off.*

prōmissūm, -ī, *promise.*

promptūs, -ā, -ūm, *ready, quick.*

prōnūs, -ā, -ūm, *headlong, bending over.*

prōpē, -iūs, proximē, *near, nearer, next.*

prōpērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hasten.*

prōpinquūs, -ā, -ūm, *near.*

prōpiōr, proximūs, *nearer, next.*

prō-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -pōsītūm, *to set up.*

prōpōsītūm, -ī, *purpose.*

proptēr, *on account of.*

proptērcā, *on this account.*

prō-pulsō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to repel.*

prō-sēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, *to pursue.*

prō-sūm, prōdessē, prōfuī, *to benefit, to do good.*

prōvidentiā, -æ, *foresight, providence.*

prōvinciā, -æ, *province.*

proximē (adv.), *nearest, next.*

proximūs, -ā, -ūm, *nearest, next.*

prūdēns, -entīs, *prudent.*

prūdentiā, -æ, *prudence.*

publicūs, -ā, -ūm, *public.*

pūdēt, pūduīt, *it shames.*

pūdōr, -ōrīs, *shame, modesty.*

puellā, -æ, *girl.*

puēr, -ī, *boy.*

pugnā, -æ, *fight.*

pugnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to fight.*

pulchēr, -ā, -ūm, *beautiful.*

pulchrītūdō, -īnīs, *beauty.*

pulvis, -ērīs, *dust.*

Pūnicūs, -ā, -ūm, *Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -īrē, -īvī, -ītūm, *to punish.*

purgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to cleanse, excuse.*

pūtō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to think.*

Pŷthagōrās, -æ (§ 219), *Pythagoras.*

Q.

quadrāgēsīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā (§ 63), *forty.*

quærō, -ērē, quæsivī, quæsītūm, *to seek, ask.*

quālīs, *of what kind, as.*

quām, *than, as.*

quānuquām, *although.*

quamvīs, *however much, although.*

quantūs, -ā, -ūm, *how great, as;*

tantūs — quantūs, *as great — as.*

quāsi (§ 203), *as if.*

quatrīduūm, -ī, *four days.*

quatuōr (§ 63), *four.*

quērōr, -ī, questūs, *to complain.*

quī, quæ, quōd, *who, which.*

quiā (conj.), *because.*

quicumquē, *whoever.*

quidām (§ 89), *a certain, a certain one, some one, some.*

quidēm, *indeed.*

quīn, *but that, that, but.*

quīndēcīm (§ 63), *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -æ, -ā (§ 63), *five hundred.*

quippē, *surely, since.*

quīs, § 89; quīs, § 88.

quisnām, § 88.

quispiām,
quisquām, } § 89.
quisquē,

quisquis, § 87, 4.

quīvīs, quilibēt, § 89.

quō, *whither.*

quo-ād, *to what point, as long as, until.*

quōd, *because.*

quō-mīnūs, § 193, *Rem. 5.*

quōniām, *since, because.*

quōquē, *also.*

quōt, *how many, as.*

quōtānnīs, *yearly.*

quōtīdiē, *daily.*

quām, *when, since, although.*

R.

rāmūs, -ī, *branch, bough.*

rāpīnā, -æ, *plunder, pillage.*

rāpiō, -ērē, rapuī, raptūm, *to snatch, seize, carry off.*

raptō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to seize violently.*

rātiō, -ōnīs, *plan, reasoning, cause.*

Raurācī, -ōrūm, *a tribe of Gauls.*

rēbelliō, -ōnīs, *rebellion.*

rēcens, -entīs, *recent.*

rēceptūs, -ūs, *retreat.*

rēcīpiō, -cēpī, -ceptūm, *to take back, regain, recover; sē rēcīpērē, to retreat, to recover oneself.*

rectūs, -ā, -ūm, *straight, right.*

rēcūpērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to recover.*

rēcūsō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to object, repudiate.*

red-dō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, *to give back, render, make.*

rēd-eō, -īrē, rēdīi, rēdītūm, *to return.*

rēdīgō, -ērē, -ēgī, -actūm, *to reduce.*

rēd-intēgrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to renew.*

rēdītūs, -ūs, *return.*

rē-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to lead back.*

rē-fērō, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātūm, *to withdraw.*

rē-fert, rētūlīt, *it concerns.*

rēficiō, -ērē, -fēcī, -fectūm, *to repair.*

rēgīnā, -æ, *queen.*

rēgiō, -ōnīs, *region, tract.*

regnūm, -ī, *kingdom.*

rēgō, -ērē, rexī, rectūm, *to rule.*

Rēgūlūs, -ī, *Regulus.*

rēligiō, -ōnīs, *vow, religion.*

rē-linquō, -ērē, -līquī, -lictūm, *to leave.*

rēlīquūs, -ā, -ūm, *the rest.*

rēnunciātiō, -ōnīs, *report.*

rē-nunciō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to carry back word.*

reōr, rēri, rātūs, *to suppose.*

rēpens, -entīs, *sudden.*

rēpentē, *suddenly.*

rēpentīnūs, -ā, -ūm, *sudden.*

rēpēriō, -irē, rēpēri, rēpertūm, *to find out.*

rēpētō, -ērē, -ivī, -itūm, *to seek back.*

rēprēhendō, -ērē, -dī, -sūm, *to rebuke.*

rēpūdiō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to refuse.*

rēs, reī, *thing.*

re-scindō, -ērē, -scīdī, -scissūm, *to cut down.*

rē-sistō, -ērē, -stītī, *to resist.*

re-spondeō, -ērē, -spondī, -sponsūm, *to answer.*

respublicā (§ 49, 5), *commonwealth.*

rētē, -īs, *net.*

rētīnēō, -ērē, -uī, -tentūm, *to hold back, restrain.*

rē-vellō, -ērē, -vellī, -vulsūm, *to tear off.*

rē-vēreōr, -ērī, -ītūs, *to reverence.*

rē-vocō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to recall.*

rex, rēgis, *king.*

Rhēnūs, -ī, *the Rhine.*

Rhōdānūs, -ī, *the Rhone.*

rōbhūr, -ōris, *heart of oak, strength.*

rōgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to ask.*

Rōmā, -æ, *Rome.*

Rōmānūs, -ā, -ūm, *Roman.*

rōsā, -æ, *rose.*

rūbēr, -ā, -ūm, *red.*

rūdēns, -entīs, *rope, cable.*

rūdīs, -ē, *rude, uncivilized.*

rumpō, -ērē, rūpī, ruptūm, *to break.*

rūpēs, -īs, *rock.*

rursūs, *again.*

rūs, rūris, *country.*

rusticūs, -ā, -ūm, *living in the country, rustic.*

S.

Sābīnī, -ōrūm, *Sabines.*

sācēr, -ā, -ūm, *sacred.*

sācerdōs, -ōtis, *priest.*

sæpē, *often.*

sævūs, -ā, -ūm, *savage, fierce.*

sāgittā, -æ, *arrow.*

sāgittāriūs, -ī, *archer.*

sālār, -āris, *trout.*

saltō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dance.*

sālūbēr, -bris, -brē, *wholesome.*

sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety, health.*

sanctūs, -ā, -ūm, *sacred, pure.*

sanguis, -inis, *blood.*

sānūs, *sound, healthy.*

sāpiēns, -entīs, *wise.*

sāpientiā, -æ, *wisdom.*

sātīs, *enough, sufficient, sufficiently.*

sauciūs, -ā, -ūm, *wounded.*

saxūm, -ī, *rock.*

scaphā, -æ, *boat, skiff.*

scēlūs, -ēris, *crime, wickedness.*

sciō, -irē, -ivī, -itūm, *to know.*

Scīpiō, -ōnis, *Scipio.*

scribō, -ērē, scripsī, scriptūm, *to write.*

scriptōr, -ōris, *writer.*

scūtūm, -ī, *shield.*

sē-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to secede.*

sē-cernō, -ērē, -crēvī, -crētūm, *to separate.*

sēcō, -ārē, sēcūi, sectūm, sēcātūrūs, *to cut.*

sēcūm, § 79, 2.

sēcundūm, *following, according to.*

sēcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *following, second, favorable.*

sēcūrīs, -īs, *axe.*

sēd, *but.*

sēdō, -ērē, sēdī, sessūm, *to sit.*

sēdēs, -īs, *seat, settlement.*

sēdīlē, -īs, *seat*.
 sēditiō, -ōnis, *sedition*.
 sempēr (adv.), *always*.
 sempiternūs, -ā, -ūm, *everlasting*.
 sēnatūs, -ūs and -ī, *senate*.
 sēnex, sēnīs, *old*.
 sensūs, -ūs, *feeling*.
 sententiā, -æ, *opinion*; ex sententiā, *satisfactorily*.
 sentiō, -irē, sensi, sensūm, *to perceive*.
 Sēquānūs, -ā, -ūm, *Sequan*. As a noun, *a Sequan*.
 sēquōr, -ī, sēcūtūs, *to follow*.
 sermō, -ōnis, *conversation, talk*.
 serpens, -entīs, *serpent*.
 serviō, -irē, -ivī, -itūm, *to be a slave, serve*.
 servitūs, -tūtīs, *slavery*.
 servō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to preserve*.
 servūs, -ī, *slave*.
 sex (ꝯ 63), *six*.
 sībīlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hiss*.
 sic, *thus*.
 sicūt or sicūtī, *as, just as*.
 sidūs, -ērīs, *star, constellation*.
 signūm, -ī, *sign, signal*.
 sīlentiūm, -ī, *silence*.
 silvā, -æ, *wood, forest*.
 silvestris or -tēr, -ē, *woody*.
 sīmīlis, -ē, *like*.
 sīmūl, *at the same time*.
 sīmūl ac, *as soon as*.
 sīnē, *without*.
 singūlī, -æ, -ā, *single, one at a time*.
 sīnō, -ērē, sīvī, sitūm, *to put, permit*.
 sīnūs, -ūs, *gulf, bay*.
 sītīō, -irē, -ivī, *to be thirsty*.
 sītīs, -īs, *thirst*.
 sītūs, -ā, -ūm (part. sīnō).
 sōcēr, -ī, *father-in-law*.
 sōciūs, -ī, *companion*.

Socrātēs, -īs, *Socrates*.
 sōl, sōlīs, *sun*.
 sōlē, -ērē, sōlītūs, *to be used, wont*.
 sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, *only, alone*.
 solvō, -ērē, solvī, sōlūtūm, *to loose*.
 somnūs, -ī, *sleep*.
 sōnūs, -ī, *sound*.
 sūrōr, -ōrīs, *sister*.
 sors, sortīs, *lot*.
 spātiūm, -ī, *room, space, time*.
 spectātūs, -ā, -ūm, *looked at, approved*.
 spectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to look at*.
 spēcūlātōr, -ōrīs, *scout*.
 spēcūs, -ūs, *den, cave, grotto*.
 spēluncā, -æ, *cave*.
 spērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hope*.
 spēs, -ēī, *hope*.
 spōliō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to spoil, rob, plunder*.
 stābulūm, -ī, *fold*.
 stātīm, *immediately*.
 stātuō, -ērē, stātuī, stātūtūm, *to place, put, determine*.
 stātūrā, -æ, *stature, size, height*.
 stellā, -æ, *star*.
 stīmūlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to goad*.
 stīmūlūs, -ī, *goad*.
 stipendiāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *tributary*.
 stipendiūm, -ī, *tax, tribute*.
 stō, stārē, stētī, stātūm, *to stand*.
 strēnuūs, -ā, -ūm, *nimble, active*.
 stūdeō, -ērē, -uī, *to attend to, be eager for*.
 stūdiūm, *zeal, desire*; pl. *studies*.
 stultitiā, -æ, *folly*.
 stultūs, -ā, -ūm, *foolish*.
 suādeō, -ērē, suāsī, suāsūm, *to advise*.
 sūbeō, -irē, -iī, itūm, *to go under*.
 sūbigō, -ērē, -ēgī, -actūm, *to subdue*.
 sūbitō (adv.), *suddenly*.

sūbītūs, -ā, -ūm, *sudden*.
 sub-lēvō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to relieve*.
 subsēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, *to follow closely*.
 subsidiūm, -ī, *reserve, support, help*.
 sub-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to come to one's assistance, help*.
 succēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to come close up*.
 Suessiōnēs, -ūm, *the Sussions*.
 suī, § 78.
 sum, essē, fuī, fūtūrūs, *to be*.
 summūs, -ā, -ūm, *the highest, the top*,
 § 72, 4, § 128, *Rem. 8*.
 sūmō, -ērē, sumpsī, sumptūm, *to take*.
 sūpellex, -lectīlis, *furniture*.
 sūperbiā, -æ, *pride*.
 sūperbūs, -ā, -ūm, *proud*.
 sūpērō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to overcome*.
 sūperstītiō, -ōnīs, *superstition*.
 sūpērūs, -ā, -ūm, § 72, 4.
 supplicīūm, -ī, *punishment*.
 surgō, -ērē, surrexī, surrectūm, *to rise*.
 sus-cīpiō, -ērē, -cēpi, -ceptūm, *to undertake*.
 suspicōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to suspect*.
 sustīneō, -ērē, -tīnuī, -tentūm, *to sustain*.
 suūs, -ā, -ūm, *his, her, its, their*, § 80,
Rem. 2.
 Sŷphax, -ācis, *Syphax*.
 Sŷrācūsæ, -ārūm, *Syracuse*.

T.

tāceō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to be silent*.
 tædēt, -uīt, *it wearies, disgusts*.
 tālentūm, -ī, *talent*.
 tālis, -ē, *such*.
 tām, *so*.

tāmēn, *nevertheless*.
 tāmetsī, *although*.
 tandēm, *at length*.
 tangō, -ērē, tētiģī, tactūm, *to touch*.
 tanquām or tamquām, *as if*,
 § 203.
 tantūs, -ā, -ūm, *so much, so great*.
 tantūs-dēm, -ādēm, -undēm, *just as much*.
 tardō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to delay, retard*.
 tardūs, -ā, -ūm, *slow*.
 Tarquīniī, -ōrūm, *Tarquinius*.
 Tarquīniūs, -ī, *Tarquin*.
 taurūs, -ī, *bull*.
 tectūm, -ī, *roof*.
 tellūs, -ūrīs, *earth*.
 tēlūm, -ī, *dart*.
 tēmērē, (adv.), *rashly*.
 tempērantiā, -æ, *self-control, temperance*.
 tempestās, -tātīs, *time, weather (good or bad), tempest*.
 templūm, -ī, *temple*.
 tempūs, -ōrīs, *time*.
 tēnax, -ācis, *tenacious*.
 tēneō, -ērē, tēnuī, tentūm, *to hold*.
 tentō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to attempt*.
 tēnuīs, -ē, *slender*.
 tergūm, -ī, *back*.
 terminūs, -ī, *end, limit*.
 terrā, -æ, *earth, ground, land*.
 terreō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to frighten*.
 terrōr, -ōrīs, *terror, fright*.
 tertiūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 63), *third*.
 testīs, -īs, *witness*.
 Thēbæ, -ārūm, *Thebes*.
 Thrax, -ācis, *Thracian*.
 thrōnūs, -ī, *throne*.
 Tībērīs, -īs, *the Tiber*.
 tīmeō, -ērē, tīmuī, *to fear*.
 tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *cowardly*.
 tīmōr, -ōrīs, *fear, panic*.

Tītūs, -ī, *Titus*.
 tōlēřō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to endure*.
 tondeō, -ērē, tōtondī, tonsūm, *to shear*.
 tōnītrūs, -ūs, *thunder*.
 tōt, *so many*.
 tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, *whole*.
 trā-dō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, *to deliver over, hand down*.
 trā-jīciō, -ērē, -jēcī, -jectūm, *to ship over*.
 trāmēs, -ītīs, *by-path*.
 trā-nō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to swim across*.
 trans, *across, beyond*.
 trans-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to lead over*.
 trans-eō, -irē, transī, transitūm, *to go across, pass over, pass away, to spend*.
 transjīciō. *See* trajīciō.
 trēs, triā (§ 63), *three*.
 tribūnūs, -ī, *tribune*.
 tribuō, -ērē, -uī, -ūtūm, *to give, assign*.
 tribūs, -ūs, *tribe*.
 trīduūm, -ī, *three days' time*.
 trienniūm, -ī, *three years' time*.
 trīgintā (§ 63), *thirty*.
 trīpartitō, *in three divisions*.
 trīplex, -īcis, *triple*.
 tristīs, -ē, *sad*.
 Trōjā, -æ, *Troy*.
 trūcidō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to slay, butcher*.
 tūbā, -æ, *trumpet*.
 tueōr, -ērī, tuitūs and tūtūs, *to protect*.
 Tullīā, -æ, *Tullia*.
 Tullīanūm, -ī, *a prison at Rome, built by king Servius Tullius*.
 Tullīus, -ī, *Tully*.
 tūm, *then*.

tūmultūs, -ūs, *tumult, uproar*.
 tūmūlūs, -ī, *mound*.
 tunc, *then*.
 turbā, -æ, *crowd*.
 turbīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *disordered, muddy*.
 turbō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to throw into confusion*.
 turbō, -īnis, *whirlwind*.
 turpīs, -ē, *base*.
 turris, -īs, *tower*.
 tūtōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to defend, protect*.
 tūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *safe*.
 tuūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 80), *thy, thine, your, yours*.
 tŷrannūs, -ī, *tyrant*.

U.

ūbī, *where, when*.
 ūbiquē, *everywhere*.
 ulciscōr, -ī, ultūs, *to avenge*.
 ullūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56, 1), *any*.
 ultēriōr, -ūs (§ 74, 1), *farther*.
 ultimūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 74, 1), *farthest, last*.
 ūlūlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to howl*.
 umbrā, -æ, *shadow, shade*.
 umquām or unquām, *ever*.
 ūnā (partē), *in one place, together*.
 undā, -æ, *wave*.
 undē, *whence, from which*.
 undīquē, *on all sides*.
 ūnīversūs, -ā, -ūm, *all, universal*.
 unquām (adv.), *ever*.
 ūnūs, -ā, -ūm, *one*.
 ūnusquisquē, *each* (§ 89, 7).
 urbs, urbīs, *city*.
 ūrō, -ērē, ussī, ustūm, *to burn*.
 ūsūs, -ūs, *using, use, practice*.
 ūt or ūtī, *that, in order that*.
 ūtēr? -ā? -ūm? *which of the two?*
 ūtērquē, -āquē, -umquē, *both*.
 ūtīlis, -ē, *useful*.
 ūtīnām, *O that!*

ūtrimquē (adv.), *on both sides.*

ūtōr, -ī, ūsūs, *to use.*

uxōr, -ōris, *wife.*

V.

vācō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to be unoccupied.*

vācuūs, -ā, -ūm, *empty.*

vādūm, -ī, *ford.*

vāgōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to wander about.*

vālēō, -ērē, -uī, *to be strong, well.*

vallis, -īs, *valley.*

vallūm, -ī, *rampart.*

vāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *various.*

Varrō, -ōnis, *Varro.*

vastitās, -ātis, *devastation.*

vastō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to lay waste.*

vātēs, -īs, *prophet.*

vectigāl, -ālis, *tax.*

vēhementēr, *excessively.*

vēhō, -ērē, vexī, vectūm, *to carry.*

vēl, *or, even.*

vēlēs, -ītis, *skirmisher.*

vēlox, -ōcis, *swift.*

vēlūm, -ī, *sail.*

vēlūtī (‡ 203), *just as, like.*

vēnātōr, -ōris, *hunter.*

vendō, -ērē, vendidī, venditūm, *to sell.*

vēnēnūm, -ī, *poison.*

Vēnētī, -ōrūm, *the Venetī.*

vēniō, -irē, vēnī, ventūm, *to come.*

ventēr, -trīs, *belly.*

ventūs, -ī, *wind.*

vēr, vēris, *spring.*

verbūm, -ī, *word.*

vēreōr, -ērī, -ītūs, *to reverence, fear.*

vergō, -ērē, versī, *to turn, incline.*

vērītās, -ātis, *truth.*

Verrēs, -īs, *Verres (boar).*

versūs, -ūs, *verse.*

vertō, -ērē, vertī, versūm, *to turn.*

vērūs, -ā, -ūm, *true.*

vērūtūm, -ī, *javelin.*

vescōr, -ī, *to eat.*

vespēr, -ī and -īs, *evening.*

vestēr, -ā, -ūm, ‡ 80.

vestigium, -ī, *footprint.*

vestīs, -īs, *clothing.*

vētūs, -ērīs, *old, ancient.*

vexillūm, -ī, *flag, ensign.*

vexō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to vex, harass, annoy.*

viā, -æ, *way.*

vicēsīmus, -ā, -ūm, *twentieth.*

victōr, -ōris, *conqueror.*

victōriā, -æ, *victory.*

vicūs, -ī, *village.*

videō, -ērē, vidī, vīsūm, *to see; passive, to seem.*

vīgiliā, -æ, *watch.*

vīgīlō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to watch.*

vīgintī (‡ 63), *twenty.*

vinciō, -irē, vinxī, vinetūm, *to bind.*

vincō, -ērē, vicī, victūm, *to conquer.*

vinculūm, -ī, *chain.*

vinūm, -ī, *wine.*

viōlō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to injure, maltreat; (of a law,) to break.*

vīr, vīrī, *man, husband.*

Virgiliūs, -ī, *Virgil.*

virgō, -īnis, *virgin.*

vīridīs, -ē, *green.*

virtūs, -tūtīs, *courage, virtue.*

vīs, *strength, ‡ 45.*

vītā, -æ, *life.*

vītium, -ī, *vice.*

vītō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to shun, escape.*

vitreūs, -ā, -ūm, *made of glass.*

vīvō, -ērē, vixī, victūm, *to live.*

vīvūs, -ā, -ūm, *alive.*

vix (adv.), *scarcely.*

vōcō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to call.*

vōlō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to fly.*

vōlē, vellē, vōluī, *to will.*

vōluptās, -tātīs, *pleasure*.
 volvō, -ērē, vōlvī, vōlūtūm, *to roll*.
 vōrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to devour*.
 vōtūm, -ī, *vow*.
 vōveō, -ērē, vōvī, vōtūm, *to vow*.
 vox, vōcīs, *voice*.

vulgūs, -ī, *common people*.
 vulnērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to wound*.
 vulnūs, -ērīs, *wound*.
 vultūr, -ūrīs, *vulture*.
 vultūs, -ūs, *countenance*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ABILITY

A.

ability, pōtestās.
able (to be), possūm.
abound, ābundō.
about, circītēr, dē.
above, supēr, sūprā.
absent, absens; *to be absent*, ābessē.
abuse, ābūtī (*use amiss*); mālēdicērē (*speak amiss*).
abusive (to be), mālēdicō.
access, ādītūs.
accomplish, conficiō; *for the accomplishment of those things*, ād eās rēs conficiendās.
account (on account of), ōb.
accuse, arguō, accūsō.
accustom, consuescō.
accustomed (to be), sōlēō.
acquire, compārō.
acquit, absolvō.
across, trans.
active, āgilīs.
add, addō.
address, appellārē, compellārē.
Adherbal, Ādherbāl, -ālīs.
admire, mīrōr.

ALL

admonish, mōneō.
adorn, dēcōrō.
advance, progrēdiōr, prōcēdō.
advantage, commōdūm.
advice, consīliūm.
advise, mōneō.
Æduan, Æduūs.
affair, rēs.
afford, præbeō.
afraid (to be), tīmeō, mētuō, vēreōr.
after (prep.), post; (*conj.*), postquām, posteqūām.
afterwards, posteqūā.
against, contrā, ād, adversūs.
age, ætās.
agreeable, acceptūs, grātūs.
agreement, pactūm, -ī; conventūs, -ūs.
agriculture, agrīcultūrā.
ah! heu.
aid (n.), auxīliūm.
aid (v.), subvēniō, auxīliūm fērō.
air, āēr.
alarm, perturbō, permōveō.
Alexander, Ālexandēr.
all, omnis.

allege (as you *allege*, etc.), by the subjunctive, § 190; to *allege*, dicō, prādicō.

allure, illīciō.

already, jām.

also, etiām, quōquē.

altar, ārā.

although, licēt, quamvis, quanquām, etsi, etc.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātūs.

ambassy, lēgātiō.

ambush, insidiā.

among (of things), intēr; (of persons), apud.

ancient, vētūs, antiquūs.

anger, irā.

angry, irācundūs, irātūs.

angry (to be), irascōr.

animal, ānimāl.

announce, nunciō.

annoy, vexō.

another (of two), altēr; (of many), aliūs.

answer, respondeō.

any, § 89.

apiece, expressed by distributive numerals (§ 63, 1 c).

Apollo, Apollō, -inīs.

approach (v.), aggrēdiōr, accēdō; (n.), adventūs.

archer, sāgittāriūs.

Ariovistus, Āriōvistūs, -ī.

arise, ōriōr.

Aristides, Āristīdēs.

arm (v.), armō.

arms, armā.

army, exercitūs.

around, circū.

arrange, constituō.

arrival, adventūs.

arrow, sāgittā.

art, ars.

as (conj.), quām; *as great* — *as*, tantūs — quantūs; *as many* — *as*, tōt — quōt; *just as much* — *as*, tantusdēm — quantusdēm; *such* — *as*, tālis — quālis.

ascend, ascendō.

ascertain, cognoscō.

ashamed (to be), pūdēt, § 135 c.

ask, rōgō, pētō, interrōgō.

asleep (to fall), dormitō.

assault, oppugnō.

assert, confirmō.

assistance, auxiliūm; to come to one's assistance, subvēniō.

atrocious, atrox.

attack (n.), impētūs.

attack (v.), oppugnō, aggrēdiōr.

attempt, tentō, cōnōr.

authority, auctōritās.

auxiliaries, auxiliā, -ōrūm.

avarice, āvāritiā.

avenge, ulciscōr.

avoid, vitō.

await, expectō.

aware (all are), constāt intēr omnēs.

B.

Babylon, Bābylōn, -ōnīs.

back, tergūm.

bad, mālūs.

badly, mālē.

Balbus, Balbūs.

banish, patriā pellō.

barbarian, barbārūs.

base, turpīs.

bathe, lāvō.

battle, proeliūm.

be, essē.

bear, fērō, tōlērō.

beat (defeat), pellō, vincō.

beautiful, pulchēr.

beauty, pulchritūdō.

because, quōd, quīā, quūm.

become, fiō; it becomes, decēt.

bedchamber, cūbīcūlūm.

bee, āpis.

before (*prep.*), antē; (*conj.*), antē-
quām, priusquām.

beg, rōgō, pētō.

begin, cōepī, incīpiō.

behold, conspīciō, aspīciō.

behoove, *it behooves*, ōportēt.

Belgian, Belgā.

believe, crēdō.

benefit, bēnēficiūm.

beseech, obsēcō.

besiege, obsideō.

best, optimūs.

bestow (*labor, pains*), ōpērām dārē.

between, intēr.

beware, cāveō.

Bibrax, Bibrax, -actīs.

big, magnūs, amplūs.

bind, vinciō.

bird, āvis.

birth, nātūs, -ūs; *before one's birth*,
antē ālīquēm nātūm.

bite, mordeō.

biting, morsūs.

blame, rēprēhendō, incūsō.

blind, cēcūs.

blood, sanguis.

boar, āpēr.

boast, prādicō.

boat, scaphā, lintēr.

Bocchus, Bocchūs, -ī.

body, corpūs; *nobody*, nēmō, nullūs;
anybody, q̄ 89.

bold, audax.

boldly, audācītēr, audactēr.

book, libēr.

booty, prāedā.

born (*to be*), nascōr.

both, ambō (*both together*); ūterquē
(*both separately*); *on both sides*,
ūtrimquē; *by both parties*, āb
ūtrisquē.

boundary, finīs.

boundless, infinitūs.

bow, arcūs.

bowl, cātīnūs or -ūm.

boy, puēr.

brave, fortīs.

bravely, fortītēr.

bread, pānīs.

break (*a law*), violō.

break through, perfringō.

bribe (*n.*), largītiō, pēcūniā.

bribe (*v.*), largiōr.

bridge, pons.

bridle (*v.*), infrēnō; (*n.*), frēnūm.

bring, fērō; *bring word*, nuntiō;

bring back word, rēnuntiō.

Britain, Britannīā.

Briton, Britannūs.

broad, lātūs.

brother, frātēr.

build, ædificārē, condō; *build nest*,
nīdificō.

bull, taurūs.

burden, ōnūs.

burn, incendō, exūrō; *burn down*,
be burnt down, deflagrō.

business, nēgōtiūm, rēs (*pl.*).

but, sēd, vērūm, vērō.

buy, ēmō.

by, ā or āb, *with abl.*; pēr, *with acc.*

by far, longē.

bypath, trāmēs.

C.

Cadmus, Cadmūs.

Cæsar, Cæsār.

Caius, Cāiūs.

calamity, cālāmītās.

call, vōcārē; *call together*, convō-
cārē; *call back*, rēvōcārē.

camp, castrā.

can, possūm.

canton, pāgūs.

capital, căpăt.
captive, captivūs.
care, cūră.
cares not a straw, flocci nōn fācīt.
carry, portō, fēřō.
Carthage, Carthāgō.
Carthaginian, Poenūs, Carthāgīni-
 ensīs.
case (this is the), rēs itā sē hābēt.
Catiline, Cātilinā.
Cato, Cātō.
cause, causā.
cavalry, ēquitātūs.
cave, spēluncā.
cease, dēsistō.
centurion, centūriō.
certain, certūs; *a certain one*, quīdām.
certainly (he will certainly come), fiērī
 nōn pōtest quīn.
chain, vinculūm.
champ, mordeō.
chance, cāsūs, fors.
change, mūtō.
*characteristic (it is characteristic of a
 poor man)*, paupēris est.
chariot, currūs.
chief, princeps.
children, libērī.
choose, dēlīgō.
citizen, cīvīs.
city, urbs.
civil, civilīs.
civilization, cultūs, hūmānitās.
claim (v.), postulō.
cloud, nūbēs.
colleague, collēgā.
collect, collīgō, compārō.
combatant, pugnans, -antīs.
come, vēniō.
command, jūbeō, impērō.
commander, impērātōr, prāfectūs.
commence (battle), committō.
commit (to any one), mandō.

common, commūnis; *common people*,
 plebs.
commonwealth, respublicā.
companion, cōmēs, sōciūs.
compel, cōgō.
complain, quērōr.
conceal, cēlō.
concerning, dē.
concerns, rēfert, intērest.
concord, concordiā.
condemn, condemnō.
confer, collōquōr.
conference, collōquiūm.
confess, confīteōr.
conquer, vincō.
conscious, consciūs.
conspiracy, conjūrātiō.
conspire, conjūrō.
consul, consul.
consult, consulō.
contend, contendō, certō.
contest, certāmēn.
continual, perpētūūs.
control (unable to), impōtens, *with gen.*
convenience, commōdūm.
conversation, sermō.
converse, collōquōr.
cook, cōquō.
corn, frūmentūm.
corpse, cādāvēr.
correct, corrīgō.
corrupt, corrumpō.
cost, stārē āliquā rē.
council, conciliūm.
count, nūmērō.
countenance, vultūs.
country, terrā, rēgiō; *finēs*, pl.
courage, virtūs, fortitūdō.
course, cursūs.
covetous, āvārūs.
cow, bōs, vaccā.
cowardly, coward, tīmīdūs.
Crassus, Crassūs.

create, creō.
 crime, scēlūs.
 cross, transeō.
 crown, cōrōnā.
 cruel, crūdēlis, atrox.
 cruelty, crūdēlītās.
 cultivate, cōlō.
 cup, pōcūlūm.
 custom, consuētūdō; according to
 custom, ex consuētūdīnē.
 cut, sēcō.
 cut down, rēscindō.
 cut off, interdict, interdicō.

D.

dance, saltō.
 danger, pēriculūm.
 dare, audeō.
 dart, tēlūm.
 daughter, filiā.
 day, diēs; to-day, hōdiē.
 dead, mortuūs.
 dear, cārūs.
 death, mors.
 debate, dispūtō.
 deceive, fallō.
 declare, confirmō, prædicō.
 decoy, illiciō.
 dedicate, dicō.
 deem, existimō, dūcō, hābeō.
 deep, altūs.
 defend, dēfendō, dēfensō, tueōr.
 defer, diffērō.
 delay, mōrōr.
 delight, dēlectō, jūvō.
 Delphi, Delphi, -ōrūm.
 demand, poscō, postulō, flāgītō.
 dense, densūs.
 deny, nēgō.
 depart, discēdō.
 depraved, prāvūs.
 deprive, prīvō, spōliō.
 depth, altītūdō.

design, consiliūm, consultūm.
 desire (v.), cūpiō; (n.), cūpiditās, cū-
 pidō.
 desirous, āvidūs, cūpidūs.
 despair, despērō.
 destitute, expers, īnops.
 destroy, dēlēō.
 destruction (part. of dēlēō, § 185, 3 c).
 determine, constituō.
 devoid, vācuūs, expers.
 devour, vōrō, dēvōrō.
 dictator, dictātōr.
 die, mōriōr.
 differ (in opinion), dissentiō.
 difference (what difference does it
 make?) quid intērest?
 difficult, difficilis.
 diligence, diligentiā.
 diligent, diligens.
 disagreeable, ingrātūs.
 disagreement, dissensiō, discordiā.
 disaster, cālāmitās.
 discuss, jactō.
 disgrace, dēdēcūs.
 disgusts, pigēt, tædēt.
 dish, cātīnūs, cātīnūm.
 dismiss, dīmittō.
 displease, displiceō.
 dispute, dispūtō.
 distant (to be), absūm.
 distinguished, præstans, præclārūs.
 ditch, fossā.
 divide, dividō.
 do, faciō.
 do good, prōsūm.
 dock-yard, nāvālē.
 dog, cānis.
 double, dūplex; to double, dūpliciō.
 doubt, dūbitātiō; to doubt, dūbitō.
 doubtful, dūbiūs.
 dove, cōlumbā.
 down-hill, deorsūm.
 draw up, instruō.

dread, formidō.
drink, bibō.
drive, pellō.
Druids, Druidēs.
Dumnorix, Dumnōrix, -īgīs.
dust, pulvis.
duty, officiūm, mūnūs; *it is the king's*
duty, my duty, § 133.
dwell, habītō, incolō.

E.

each, quisquē, unusquisquē.
eager, avidūs, cūpiens.
eagle, āquilā.
earth, terrā, tellūs.
earthen, fictilis.
easy, faciilis; *easily*, facīlē; *very easy*,
 perfaciilis.
eat, edō, vescor.
edict, edictūm; *to issue an edict*, edicō.
egg, ovūm.
eight, octō, § 63.
either — *or*, aut — *aut*.
eloquence, eloquentiā.
eloquent, eloquens.
embassy, lēgatiō.
encamp, castrā pōnō, considō.
encourage, hortor, cōhortor.
end, finis.
endeavor, cōnor.
endure, fērō, patiōr, tōlērō.
enemy, hostis.
enjoy, fruor.
enmity, inimicitia.
enough, sātis.
err, errō.
especial, praeīpuus.
especially, praeīpuē.
establish, confirmō, constituō.
esteem, aestimō.
even, etiām; *not even*, nē quidēm.
every, omnis.
evil (*adj.*), mālūs; (*n.*), mālūm.

excellence, praestantiā.
excellent, praeſtans.
exchange, mūtō.
excite, concitō, excitō, instigō.
excuse, purgō.
exercise, exerceō.
exhort, hortor, cōhortor.
expect, expectō.
expel, pellō, expellō.
explain, causām afferre.

F.

face, faciēs.
fact (*in fact*), rē.
faith, fidēs.
faithful, fidūs, fidēlis.
fall, cādō.
fame, fāmā.
family, fāmiliā.
famous, clārūs.
far (*adv.*), longē.
farmer, āgricolā.
farthing, ās, assis.
fasten, figō, destinō.
father, pātēr.
father-in-law, sōcēr.
fault, culpā, delictūm, peccātūm; *it*
is my fault, pēr mē stāt.
favor, fāveō.
favorable, sēcundūs.
fear, tīmōr, mētūs; *to fear*, tīmeō,
 mētūō, vēreor.
feather, plūmā.
feeling, sensūs.
fellow (*that fellow*), istē hōmō.
fertile, fērax.
fever, febrīs.
few, paucī.
field, āgēr.
fierce, ācēr, ātrox.
fiercely, acritēr.
fifty, § 63.
fight (*v.*), pugnō; (*n.*), pugnā.

figure, fīgūrā.
fill, compleō, expleō, impleō.
find, invēniō, rēpēriō.
fine (v.), condemnō, multō.
finish, conficiō.
fire, ignis; *with fire and sword*,
 ferrō ignīquē.
first, prīmūs.
fish, piscis.
fit, aptūs, idōneūs.
five, 5 63.
flag, vexillūm.
flank, lātūs; *on the flank*, āb lātērē.
flattering, blandūs.
attery, ādulātiō.
flee, fūgiō, perfūgiō.
fleet, classis.
flesh, cārō.
flight, fūgā.
flock, grex.
flog, verbērō.
flow, fluō; *flow into*, influō.
flower, flōs.
fly, vōlō.
follow, sēquor.
folly, stultitiā.
fond, āmans, cūpidūs.
food, cibūs.
fool, foolish, stultūs.
foot, pēs; *at the foot of a mountain*,
 sūb montē.
footman, pēdēs.
for (conj.), nām, ēnīm, etc.
for grief (preventing cause), prae
 mārōrē.
for the purpose, causā.
for these things, ōb hās rēs.
forbid, prōhibēō, interdicō.
force, vis.
forces, cōpiāe.
forest, silvā.
forget, obliviscor.
form, formā, fīgūrā.

form a design, consiliūm cāpērē.
fortify, commūniō, mūniō.
fortitude, aequūs ānimūs, fortitūdō.
fortune, fortunā.
four, 4 63.
fratricide, frātrīcidā.
free (adj.), libēr; (v.), libērō.
frequently, sēpē.
fresh, intēgēr.
friend, āmicūs.
friendship, āmicitiā.
fright, pāvōr, tīmōr, terrōr.
frighten, terreō.
from, ā or āb.
fruit, fructūs.
full, plēnūs.
furnish, prābeō.
furniture, sūpellex.

G.

Galba, Galbā, -ae.
garden, hortūs.
gate, portā.
Gaul, Galliā; *a Gaul*, Gallūs.
general, impērātōr.
German, Germānūs.
Germany, Germāniā.
gift, dōnūm.
gird, cingō.
girl, puellā.
give, dō.
glory, glōriā.
glutton, cōmēdō.
go, eō, prōfisciscor; *go out*, exeō.
goad, stīmūlūs.
God, deūs.
goddess, deā.
gold, aurūm.
golden, aureūs.
good, bōnūs; *to do good*, prōsum.
goose, ansēr.
govern, rēgō, impērō.
government, impēriūm.

grammar, grammătică.
grandson, nĕpōs.
great, magnūs.
greatness, magnitūdō.
Greece, Græciā.
green, vīridīs.
grief, dōlōr, mārōr.
ground, terrā, hūmūs.
grove, nēmūs.
grow, crescō.
guard, præsidiūm, custōs.
guest, hospēs.
guidance (e.g. of nature), nātūrā dūcē.
guide, dux.
gulp down, dĕvōrō.

H.

half, dimīdiūm.
hand, mănūs.
happily, beātē.
happy, beātūs.
harbor, portūs.
hard, dūrūs.
haste, prōpĕrātiō.
hasten, prōpĕrō, festinō, mātūrō.
hasty temper, irācundiā.
hatred, ōdiūm.
have, hābeō, eſſē with dative.
he, him, is, ȳ 83, 1.
head, cāpūt.
hear, audiō.
heart, cōr.
heavy, grāvīs; *heavily*, grāvītēr.
heel, calx.
height, altitūdō, stātūrā.
help, auxiliūm.
Helvetian, Helvētiūs.
hide, abdō, lāteō.
high, altūs.
highly (at a high price), magnī, ȳ 137.
hill, collis.
himself, sē, ipsūm.

hinder, impĕdiō, obstō.
hindrance, impĕdimentūm.
hold, tĕneō, hābeō; *hold in*, continēō.
home, dōmūs.
honesty, prōbitās.
honor, hōnōr.
honorable, hōnestūs.
hope, spēs; *to hope*, spĕrō.
horn, cornū.
horned, cornīgēr.
horse, ĕquūs; *on horseback*, ex ĕquō, ex ĕquīs.
horseman, ĕquēs.
hostage, obsēs.
hour, hōrā.
house, dōmūs.
howl, ūlŭlō.
huge, ingens.
human, hūmānūs.
hunger, fāmēs.
hungry, ĕsūriens.
hunter, vĕnātōr.
hurl, conjiciō.
hurt, nōceō.
hurtful, noxiūs.

I.

I, ĕgō.
if, sī.
ignorant, ignārūs, insciūs, impĕritūs.
image, effigiēs.
imitate, imitōr.
immediately, stātīm.
immortal, immortalīs.
immortality, immortalitās.
impatient, impātiens.
implore, obsĕcrō.
import, importō.
important (it is), intĕrest.
impossible (it is), fiĕrī nōn pōtest.
in, into, in.
incapable of restraining, impōtens.
increase, augeō, crescō.

incredible, incrēdībīlis.
indulge, indulgēš.
infant, infans.
infantry, pēditēs.
inferior (of less account), infēriōr.
infinite, infinītūs.
inflict, inferrē.
inform, certīōrēm fācērē.
inhabit, incōlō.
inhabitant, incōlā.
injure, nōcēš, injūriā lācessō.
injury, injūriā.
innocent, insons, innōcuūs.
insolence, insōlentiā.
instigate, incītō, instīgō.
instruct, instītuš, prācīpiš.
instructions were given, prāceptūm est.
integrity, prōbītās.
intellect, ingēniūm.
intimacy, conjunctiō.
into, īn.
introduce, intrōdūcō.
intrust, mandō.
invade, invādō.
inventor, inventōr.
invincible, invictūs.
invite, invitō.
Ireland, Hiberniā.
iron, ferrūm.
island, insulā.
issue (an edict), ēdicō.

J.

javelin, pilūm.
journey, ītēr.
joyful, lētūs, jūcundūs.
judge, jūdex.
Jugurtha, Jūgurthā, -æ.
Jupiter, § 45.
Jura, Jūrā.
just, justūs, æquūs; *just as*, tanquām; *just as if*, pērindē quāsī.

K.

keep, servō; *keep in*, contīnēš; *keep off*, prōhibēš.
key, clāvīs.
kid, hādūs.
kill, occīdō, trūcīdō, nēcō.
kind, bēnignūs.
kindness, bēnēficiūm.
king, rex.
kingdom, regnūm.
knife, cultēr.
know, noscō, sciō; *not to know*, nesciō.

L.

Labienus, Lābiēnūs.
labor, lābōr.
lake, lācūs.
lamb, agnūs.
lame, ægēr pēdībūs.
land, terrā, āgēr.
language, linguā.
last, ultīmūs.
law, lex, jūs.
lawful (it is), licēt.
lay waste, vastō.
lazy, pīgēr.
lead, dūcō; *to lead on*, addūcō, indūcō; *to lead over*, transdūcō; *to lead against*, addūcō; *to lead back*, rēdūcō.
leaf, fōliūm.
leap (v.), sāliš; *leap upon*, insīliš.
learn, discō.
learned, doctūs.
leave, rēlinquō.
legion, lēgiō.
Leman, Lēmānūs.
length, longītūdō.
less, mīnōr.
let (him), third person, imperative.
let (us), first person plural, subjunctive, § 183, Remark.

letter (of the alphabet), lītērā;
(*epistle*), ĕpistōlā.

levy, conscribē.

liar, mendax.

liberty, libertās.

lie (falseness), mendāciūm; to lie,
mentiōr.

lie (to lie hid), lāteš.

lieutenant, lēgātūs.

life, vītā, ānīmā.

light (adj.), lēvis; (n.), lux.

like, sīmīlis.

limbs, membrā.

line of battle, āciēs.

lion, leš.

Liscus, Liscūs, -ī.

little, parvūs.

live, vīvš, hābītš.

liver, jēcūr.

load, ōnūs; to load, ōnērš.

lock (of wool), floccūs.

long (adj.), longūs; (adv.), diū.

look at, aspiciš.

look to, consulš (with dative).

lose, āmittš.

love, āmšr; to love, āmš.

lover, āmans.

low, hūmīlis.

lurk, lāteš.

lust, cūpīdš, libīdš.

lute, fīdēs, -iūm.

Lycurgus, Lŷcurgūs, -ī.

M.

magnanimous, magnānīmūs.

maid-servant, ancillā.

make, fāciš, reddš.

maltreat, viōlš.

man, hōmš, vīr.

Manlius, Manliūs.

manner, mōdūs.

many, multī; how many, quōt.

marble, marmšr.

Mark, Marcūs.

marriage, matrīmōniūm.

marry, īn matrīmōniūm dūcērš.

mast, mālūs.

master, māgistēr, dōmīnūs.

means, fācultās.

measure, mētišr.

medicine, mēdīcinā.

memory, mēmōriā.

merchant, mercātšr.

Mercury, Mercūriūs.

messenger, nuntiūs.

Micipsa, Micipsā, -æ.

mile, millš passūs.

Miletus, Milētūs.

milk, lāc.

mind, ānīmūs, mens.

mindful, mēmšr.

miserable, mīsēr.

money, pēcūniā, nummūs.

month, mensīs.

moon, lūnā.

morals, mōrēs.

more, plūs, ampliūs, māgīs.

*mother, mātēr; of a family, mātēr-
fāmīliās.*

mountain, mons.

move, mōvēš.

much, multūs.

mullet, mūgīlīs.

multitude, multītūdš.

murder, nēcš, occīdš.

music, mūsīcā.

must, š 178.

my, meūs.

N.

naked, nūdūs.

name, nōmēn.

nation, nātiš, gens.

nature, nātūrā.

navigation, nāvīgātiš.

*near (prep.), pršpš; (adj.), pršpin-
quūs.*

necklace, mōnilē.

need, ōpūs.

neglect, neglīgō.

neighboring, fīnītīmūs.

neither (of two), neutēr.

neither — nor, nēquē — nēquē, nēc
— nēquē.

Neptune, Neptūnūs.

nest, nīdūs; *to build a nest*, nīdīfīcō.

net, rētē.

never, nunquām, nē unquām, †
194.

new, nōvūs.

next, proximūs.

night, nox.

nine, † 63.

no, nullūs.

no one, nēmō, nē — quisquām, † 194.

nobility, nobilitās.

noble, nobilis.

noise, clāmōr, strēpītūs.

none, nullūs.

not, nōn.

nothing, nīhīl.

Numantian, Nūmantīnūs.

number, nūmērūs.

Numidia, Nūmīdiā.

Numidian, Nūmīdā.

O.

O! O! ōh!

O that! ūtīnām.

oath, jusjūrāndūm.

obedient, dictō audiens.

obey, pārēō.

obscure, obscurō.

obtain, pōtīōr, nanciscōr.

occupy, occūpō.

off, — *two miles off*, ā duōbūs millī-
būs.

often, sæpē.

old, sēnex; *five years old*, quinquē
annōs nātūs.

oldest, maxīmūs nātū.

on, īn.

on horseback, ex ēquō or ēquīs.

one, ūnūs; *one of two*, altēr; *one of
many*, āliūs (*when followed by
another*).

opinion, sentiētiā.

opportunity, faciētās, pōtestās.

oppress, opprīmō.

or, vēl, vē, aut, † 123, 2.

oracle, ōrāculūm.

oration, ōrātiō.

orator, ōrātōr.

order, impērō, jūbeō.

origin, ōrīgō.

ought, ōportēt, *gerundive with esse*,
† 178.

our, nostrēr; *our men*, nostrī.

out of, ē, ex.

over, trans.

overcome, sūpērō, vincō.

overtake, consēquōr.

ox, bōs.

P.

pace, passūs.

pain, dōlōr.

pains, ōpērā.

panic, tīmōr.

paper, chartā.

parent, pārens.

parricide, parrīcidā.

part, pars; *for the most part*, plē-
rumquē.

parties (by both), āb utrisquē.

partly, partīm.

pass away, transeō.

pass by, prætēreō.

patiently, æquō ānīmō.

pay, pendō.

peace, pax.

people, pōpūlūs; *common people*,
plebs, plēbēs.

perceive, intelligō, ānimadvertō.
perish, pērcō.
persuade, persuādeō.
philosopher, philōsōphūs.
pirate, pīrātā.
pitch camp, castrā pōnērē.
pity, mīserēcōr, mīserēt, § 135.
place, lōcūs.
plan, consiliūm.
play (v.), lūdō.
pleasant, grātūs.
please, plăceō.
pleasure, vōluptās.
plough, ārō.
plunder (v.), prædōr, dirīpiō; (n.),
 prædā.
poet, poētā.
point, āciēs.
poison, vēnēnūm.
Pompey, Pompēiūs.
poor, paupēr.
post, lōcūs.
poverty, paupertās, ēgestās.
power, pōtestās, vīs.
powerful, pōtens.
praise (v.), laudō; (n.), laus.
pray (who, pray?), quisnām?
precept, præceptūm.
prefer, præpōnō.
prepare, pārō.
presence (in the presence of many),
 multis præsentibus.
present, præsens.
preserve, servō, conservō.
prevent, impēdiō, obstō, dēterreō.
prey, prædā.
Priam, Priāmūs.
price, prētiūm.
pride, sūperbiā.
priest, sācerdōs.
prison, carcēr.
prisoner, captivūs.
private, privātūs.

productive, fērax.
promise (v.), polliceōr; (n.), prōmis-
 sūm, fidēs.
property (wealth), rēs fāmiliāris.
protect, tūtārī.
proud, sūperbūs.
providence, prōvidentiā.
province, prōvinciā.
provoke, lācessō.
prudence, prūdentiā.
prudent, prūdēns.
public, publicūs.
punish, pūniō.
punishment, supplicium.
purpose, prōpōsītūm; on purpose,
 consultō.
pursue, persēquōr.
put, pōnō; put into winter quarters,
 in hibernā collōcārē.
put over, præficiō.
Pythagoras, Pŷthāgōrās.

Q.

queen, rēginā.
quickly, cēlēritēr.

R.

race, cursūs.
rain, imbēr.
ram, āriēs.
rampart, vallūm.
rank, ordō.
reach, ād lōcūm pervēnirē.
read, lēgō.
ready, promptūs, pārātūs.
reason (mental faculty), rātiō.
rebellion, rēbelliō.
rebuke, rēprēhendō.
recall, rēvōcō.
receive, accipiō.
recent, rēcens.
recollect, mēmīnī.
redress (to ask), rēs rēpētōrē.

refinement, hūmānītās.
refrain, sībī tempērārē quīn.
reign (in the reign of), āliqūo reg-
 nantē.
reject, rēpūdiō.
rejoice, gaudeō.
relieve, lēvō.
religion, rēlīgiō.
remain, māneō.
remember, mēmīnī, mēmōriā tēneō.
remind, mōneō, admōneō.
render, reddō.
renew, rēdintēgrō.
repair, rēfīciō.
repent, poenītēt, § 135.
reply, rēspondeō.
report, rēnuntiātiō.
reprove, reprēhendō.
republic, respublicā.
resolve, stātuō.
respect, rēvēreōr.
rest, rēlīquūs, § 128, Rem. 8.
retard, tardō.
retire, excēdō, sē rēcīpērē.
retreat, rēcīpiō.
return, rēdeō, reddō.
reverence, rēvēreōr.
reward, præmiū.
Rhine, Rhēnūs.
Rhone, Rhōdānūs.
rich, dīvēs.
riches, dīvītiæ.
ride, ēquītō.
river, flūmēn, amnīs.
road, viā, ītēr.
robber, prædō, latrō.
rock, rūpēs, saxū.
Roman, Rōmānūs.
Rome, Rōmā.
rape, rūdens.
rose, rōsā.
rough, aspēr.
rout, fūgō, proflīgō.

rule, rēgō.
run, eurrō.
run forward, prōcurrō.

S.

sacred, sēcēr, sanctūs.
sacrifice, mactō.
safe, tūtūs.
safety, sālūs.
sagacious, argūtūs.
sail, vēlūm; to sail, nāvīgō.
sailor, nautā.
sail-yard, antennā.
sake, causā.
same, īdēm.
satisfactorily, ex sententiā.
satisfy, expleō, sātīfāciō.
savage, ātrox, fērūs.
save, servō.
say, dicō, inquām.
scout, explōrātōr.
sea, mārē.
search out, explōrō, investīgō.
seat, sēdilē.
secede, sēcēdō.
second, sēcundūs.
see, vīdeō.
seek, pētō, quærō.
seem, vīdeōr.
seize, occupō, rāpiō, arrīpiō.
select, dēlīgō.
self, ipsē.
sell, vendō.
senate, sēnātūs.
send, mittō; send forward, præmittō
sense, sensūs.
separate, dīvidō, sēcernō.
Sequan, Sēquānūs.
serpent, serpens.
servant, servūs.
serve, serviō.
service, officiū.
set, pōnō; set up, collōcō, prōpōnō.

seven, ž 63.
severe, grāvīs.
severely, grāvītēr.
shade, umbrā.
shame, pūdōr.
sharp, ācēr, ācūtūs.
sheaf, mergēs.
shear, tondeō.
sheep, ōvis.
shepherd, pastōr.
shield, scūtūm.
ship, nāvīs.
shore, litūs.
short, brēvis.
shortness, brēvītās.
shout, clāmōr; *to shout*, clāmō.
show, monstrō.
side, lātūs, pars.
signal, signūm.
silver, argentūm.
sin, peccātūm.
since, quūm, quōniām.
sing, cantō.
singing, cantūs.
sister, sōrōr.
sit, sēdeō.
six, ž 63.
size, magnītūdō.
skirmisher, vēlēš.
slave, servūs.
slavery, servītūs.
slay, trūcīdō, occīdō.
sleep, dormiō.
slight, lēvis.
slinger, fundītōr.
slow, tardūs, pīgēr.
small, parvūs, exīguūs.
snares, insīdiā.
snatch up, arripīō.
soldier, milēs.
some, āliquīs, quīdām, etc., ž 89.
son, filiūs.
son-in-law, gēnēr.

soon, mātūrē.
soul, ānīmūs.
space, spātiūm.
spare, parcō.
speak, lōquōr.
speech, ōrātiō.
spend, consūmō; *to spend time*, āgō.
spoil (booty), prædā.
spur, calcār.
stag, cervūs.
stand, stō; *to stand out*, existō.
state, cīvītās.
stature, stātūrā.
stay, māneō.
still (as yet), ādhūc.
stir up, excitō, concītō.
stone, lūpis.
storm, tempestās; *to storm*, expugnō.
strength, rōbūr, vīs.
stretch (out), porrīgō.
strike, percūtiō.
strip, nūdō.
strong, firmūs, vālīdūs.
strongly, vēhementēr.
study, stūdiā, pl.
subdue, pācō, dōmō.
subjugate, sūbigō.
such, tālis.
sudden, sūbītūs, rēpentīnūs.
suddenly, rēpentē, sūbītō.
sue for, pētō.
suffer, pātiōr.
sufficiently, sātīs.
suitable, aptūs, īdōneūs.
summer, æstās.
sun, sōl.
sunset, sōlis occāsūs.
sup, cœnō.
superior, præstantiōr.
superstition, sūperstītiō.
support, sustīneō.
suppose, arbitrōr, ōpīnōr, existīmō.
suppress, opprimō.

surrender, dēdītið; *to surrender*,
trādō, dēdō.
surround, circumdō, circumfundō.
suspect, suspīcōr.
sustain, sustīneð.
sweet, dulcīs.
swell, augeð.
swift, cēlēr, vēlox.
swiftly, cēlērītēr.
swiftness, cēlērītās.
swim across, trānð.
sword, glādiūs; *the sword*, ferrūm.

T.

table, mensā.
take, sūmð, cāpið; *take possession*
of, occupō.
talent, tālentūm.
talk, lōquōr, collōquōr.
tame, dōmð.
teach, dōceð.
teacher, doctōr, māgistēr.
teaching, doctrīnā.
tear, lacrimā.
tear to pieces, lānið.
temper (hasty), irācundiā.
tempest, tempestās.
temple, templūm.
ten, ð 63.
tenacious, tēnax.
tenth, dēcīmūs, ð 63.
terrible, ātrox, terrībilīs.
terrify, perterreð.
than, quām.
their, suūs, eōrūm, ð 83, 2.
then, tūm.
thick, densūs.
thief, fūr.
thing, rēs. — [more of, plūrīs fācið.]
think, reōr, cōgītð, existīmð, pūtð. —
third, tertiūs, ð 63.
thirst, sītīs; *to thirst*, sītið.
thirty, ð 63.

this, hīc.
though, ð 200.
thousand, millē.
Thracian, Thrax.
threaten, mīnōr.
three, trēs, ð 63.
through, pēr.
throw, jācið, jactð; *throw across*,
transjīcið.
thrust through, transfigð.
thunder, tōnītūr.
till, dūm, dōnēc, quoad.
time, tempūs.
to, ād, īn.
together, ūnā, con-
too, ð 68, Rem. 3.
too much, nīmiūm.
tooth, dens.
top, summūs (mons, etc.).
torture, crūciātūs.
towards, ād, adversūs.
tower, turris.
town, oppidūm.
townsman, oppidānūs.
traitor, prōdītōr.
transport, transportð.
treachery, prōdītið.
treaty, fōdūs.
tree, arbōr.
tribune, tribūnūs.
tribute, stipendiūm.
triple, triplex.
trouble, ōpērā, lābōr.
true, vērūs.
trumpet, tūbā.
trust, confidð.
trusting, frētūs.
truth, vērītās.
Tullia, Tulliā.
Tully, Tullīūs.
tumult, tūmultūs.
turf, cāspēs.
turn, vertð.

twelve, twelfth, § 63.
twenty, two, etc., § 63.

U.

unable, impōtens; to be unable, nōn possē.

unaccustomed, insuētūs.

unarmed, ĩnermīs.

uncertain, incertūs.

under, sūb.

understand, intelligō.

undertake, suscipiō.

unduly, prætēr mōdūm.

undutifulness, impiētās.

uneasy, anxiūs, sollicitūs.

unfortunate, infelix.

ungrateful, ingrātūs.

unhurt, intēgēr.

unjust, ĩniquūs.

unknown, ignōtūs.

unless, nīsī.

unlike, dissimilis.

unmindful, immēmōr.

until, dūm, dōnēc, quoad.

unwilling, invitūs; to be unwilling, nōlō.

uproar, tūmultūs.

urge on, concitō, incitō.

use, ūsūs.

useful, ūtilīs.

useless, ĩnūtilīs.

V.

vacant (to be), vācō.

valor, virtūs, fortitūdō.

value, prētiūm.

vast, ingens, immānis.

very, valdē, maxīmē (superlative).

vex, vexō.

vice, vitium.

victory, victōriā.

village, vicūs.

violate, violō.

violence, vīs.

virgin, virgō.

virtue, virtūs, prōbitās.

voice, vox.

vow, vōtūm.

vulture, vultūr.

W.

wage, gērō; wage upon, infērō.

wait for, exspectō.

walk, ambulō.

wall, mūrūs.

wander, errō, vāgōr.

want (to be in want of), ēgeō.

war, bellūm.

warlike, fērox, ācēr.

warn, mōneō, admōneō.

watch, vīgiliā; to watch, vīgilō.

water, āquā.

wave, fluctūs.

way, viā, ĩtēr.

weak, ĩfirmūs.

weary, fessūs, dēfessūs.

weep, lacrimō, fleō.

weight, pondūs.

well, bēnē; to be well, vāleō.

what? quid? quī? what, quōd

when, quūm.

whence, undē.

where, ūbī.

where in the world, ūbī gentiūm.

whether, nūm, utrūm, ān.

which? quīs? ūtēr (of two).

whirlwind, turbō.

white, albūs.

whither, quō.

who? quī? quīs?

whole, tōtūs.

why? cūr? quārē?

wicked, ĩmprōbūs.

wide, lātūs.

wife, uxōr, conjux.

wild boar, āpēr.

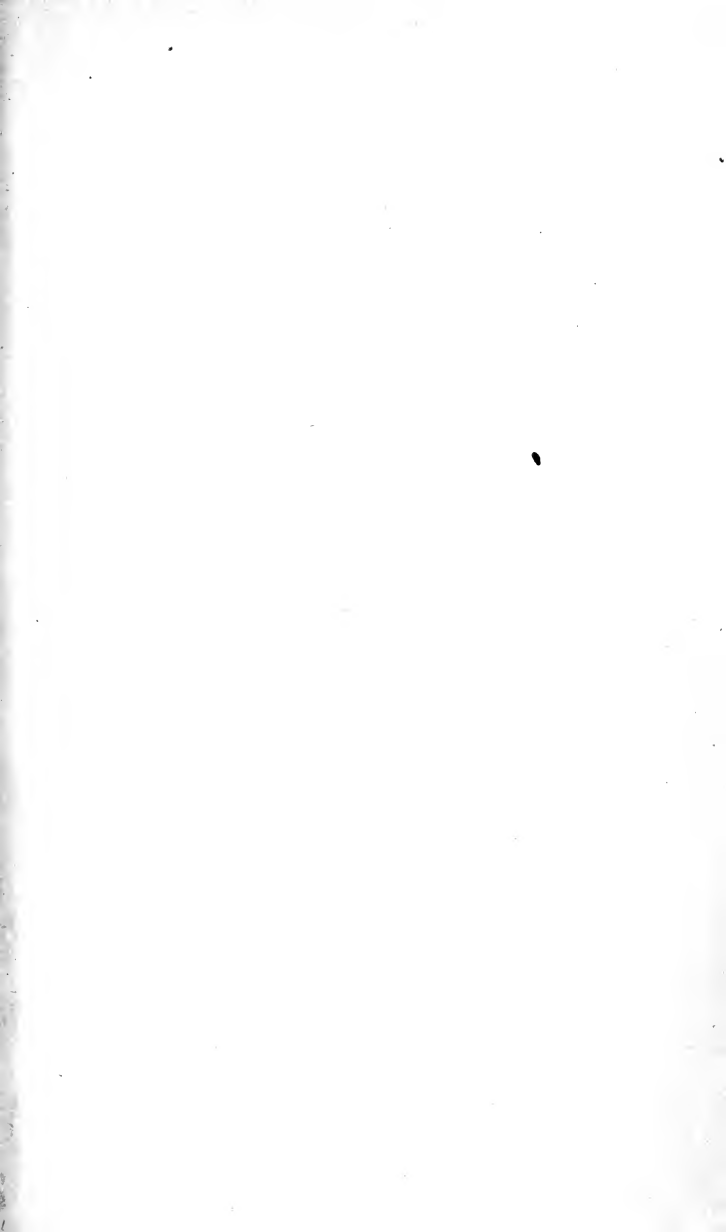
willing (to be), vólǫ.
wind, ventūs.
wine, vīnūm.
wing, ālǫ.
winter, hiems; *to winter* (spend the winter), hiēmǫ.
winter quarters, hibernǫ.
wisdom, sǎpientiǫ.
wise, sǎpiens.
wish, vǫlǫ.
with, cūm.
without, sīnē.
witness, testīs.
wolf, lūpūs.
woman, mūliēr.
wonder, mīrǫr.
wonderful, mīrūs.
wood, silvǫ.
word, verbūm; *bring word*, nuntiǫ.
work, ōpūs.
work-horse, jūmentūm.
world, mundūs, orbīs terrārūm.

worse, *worst*, pejǫr, pessīmūs.
worship, cǫlǫ.
worthy, dignūs.
wound, vulnūs; *to wound*, vulnērǫ.
wrath, irǫ.
wretched, mīšēr.
write, scribǫ.
writer, scriptǫr.
wrong (to do), peccǫ, mǎlē fǎciǫ.

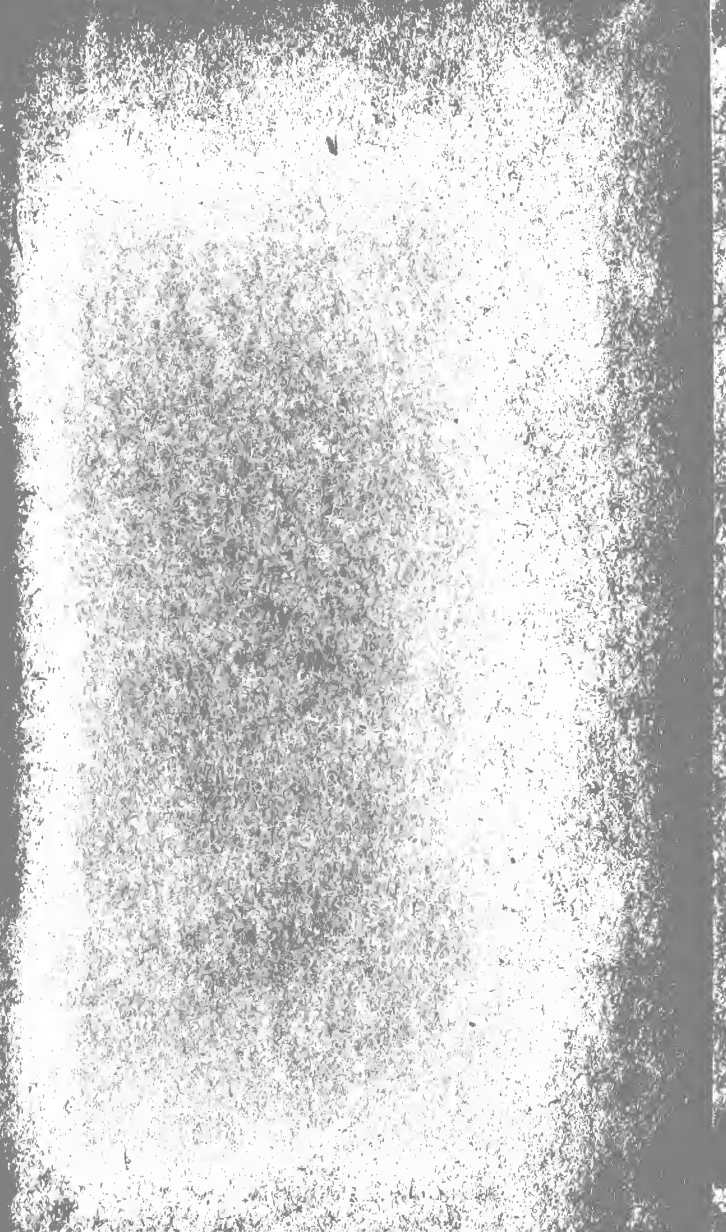
Y.

yard, antennǫ.
year, annūs.
yearly, quǫtannīs.
yesterday, hērī.
yet, tǎmēn.
yield, cēdǫ, concēdǫ.
yoke, jūgūm.
you, tū, vǫs.
young, jūvēnīs, ādǫlescens.
your, tuūs, vestēr.
youth, jūventūs.

THE END.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
84



THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

DEC 29 1934

APR 19 1935

FEB 7 1941 A

29 May '53 LD

Winkler

JUN 18 1953

JUN 18 1953 LD

29 Jan '63 RA

REC'D LD

JAN 25 1963

YB 00136

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C045912413

25

760
B613

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

